

**EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA**



**COURSE NOTES – THEOLOGY 111**

**DIPLOMA IN THEOLOGY.**

by

**DR JOHN CAMERON McEWAN**

**[BOOK 2 of 13]**

**Revised 4 July 2020**

**WHO IS JESUS CHRIST?**

Professor Simon Greenleaf was one of the most eminent lawyers of all time. His "Laws of Evidence" for many years were accepted by all States in the United States as the standard methodology for evaluating cases. He was teaching law at a university in the United States when one of his students asked Professor Greenleaf if he would apply his "Laws of Evidence" to evaluate an historical figure. When Greenleaf agreed to the project he asked the student who was to be the subject of the review. The student replied that the person to be examined would be Jesus Christ. Professor Greenleaf agreed to undertake the examination of Jesus Christ and as a result, when he had finished the review, Simon Greenleaf personally accepted the Lord Jesus Christ as his Saviour.

Professor Greenleaf then sent an open letter to all jurists in the United States jurists saying in part "I personally have investigated one called Jesus Christ. I have found the evidence concerning him to be historically accurate. I have also discovered that Jesus Christ is more than a human being, he is either God or nothing and having examined the evidence it is impossible to conclude other than he is God. Having concluded that he is God I have accepted him as my personal Saviour. I urge all members of the legal profession to use the "Laws of Evidence" to investigate the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and if you find that he is wrong expose him as a faker but if not consider him as your Saviour and Lord"

**HOW CAN I BE SAVED?****Salvation is available for all members of the human race.**

Salvation is the most important undertaking in all of God's universe. The salvation of sinners is never on the basis of God's merely passing over or closing His eyes to sin. God saves sinners on a completely righteous basis consistent with the divine holiness of His character. This is called grace. It relies on God so man cannot work for salvation neither can he deserve it. We need to realise that the creation of this vast unmeasured universe was far less an undertaking than the working out of God's plan to save sinners.

However the acceptance of God's salvation by the sinner is the most simple thing in all of life. One need not be rich, nor wise nor educated. Age is no barrier nor the colour of one's skin. The reception of the enormous benefits of God's redemption is based upon the simplest of terms so that there is no one in all this wide universe who need be turned away.

**How do I become a Christian?**

There is but one simple step divided into three parts. First of all I have to recognise that I am a sinner (Romans 3:23; 6:23; Ezekiel 18:4; John 5:24).

Secondly, realising that if I want a relationship with Almighty God who is perfect, and recognising that I am not perfect, I need to look to the Lord Jesus Christ as the only Saviour (1 Corinthians 15:3; 1 Peter 2:24; Isaiah 53:6; John 3:16).

Thirdly, by the exercise of my own free will I personally receive the Lord Jesus Christ as my Saviour, believing that He died personally for me and that He is what He claims to be in an individual, personal and living way (John 1:12; 3:36; Acts 16:31; 4:12).

**The results of Salvation**

The results of this are unbelievably wonderful:

My sins are taken away (John 1:29),

I possess eternal life now (1 John 5:11,12),

I become a new creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17),

The Holy Spirit takes up His residence in my life (1 Corinthians 6:19),

And I will never perish (John 10:28-30).

This truthfully is life's greatest transaction. This is the goal of all people; this is the ultimate of our existence. We invite and exhort any reader who has not become a Christian by trusting in the Lord Jesus Christ to follow these simple instructions and be born again eternally into God's family (Matthew 11:28; John 1:12; Acts 4:12; 16:31).

**© Evangelical Bible College of Western Australia 2020**

Many other Christian resources are available freely from our internet web site: [www.ebcwa.org.au](http://www.ebcwa.org.au) and [www.http://ebcwa.free.org.nz](http://www.ebcwa.free.org.nz) for weekly messages.

For further information contact Dr Peter Moses at [pjmoses@bigpond.com.au](mailto:pjmoses@bigpond.com.au) or email Brian Huggett [brianhuggett@bigpond.com.au](mailto:brianhuggett@bigpond.com.au) or Dr John McEwan at [john.mcewan@xtra.co.nz](mailto:john.mcewan@xtra.co.nz)

We encourage you to freely copy and distribute these materials to your Pastor and friends. You only, need written permission from EBCWA if you intend using the materials in publications for resale. We encourage wide distribution freely!

**THEOLOGY 1 CONTENTS**

LESSON	SUBJECT	PAGE
	<b>SECTION A – BIBLIOLOGY</b>	<b>3</b>
1	Introduction	3
2	Bible – God’s Word	7
3	Bible – Inspiration	12
4	Bible – Inerrancy	16
5	Bible – Interpretation	19
6	Bible – Canonicity	25
7	Bible – Subject and Purpose	31
8	Bible – God’s Revelation	35
	<b>SECTION B – THEOLOGY</b>	<b>40</b>
9	Trinity	40
10	Character of God	44
11	The Fatherhood of God	48
	<b>SECTION C – CHRISTOLOGY</b>	<b>53</b>
12	Deity of Christ	53
13	Incarnation of Christ	56
14	His Ministry and Character	61
15	His Substitutionary Death	67
16	Resurrection of Christ	70
17	His Ascension and Ministry Now	75
18	His Coming for His Saints	79
19	His Coming with His Saints	83
	<b>SECTION D - PNEUMATOLOGY</b>	<b>87</b>
20	Holy Spirit – Ministry in the Old Testament	87
21	Holy Spirit – Transitional Ministry	90
22	Holy Spirit – Ministry in the New Testament	93
23	Holy Spirit – Regeneration	96
24	Holy Spirit – Indwelling and Sealing	98
25	Holy Spirit – Baptism	101
26	Holy Spirit – Filling	104
27	Holy Spirit – Ministries	108
	<b>SECTION E – AGES IN WORLD HISTORY</b>	<b>112</b>
28	Dispensations	112
29	Covenants	118
	<b>SECTION F – ANGELOLOGY &amp; SATANOLOGY</b>	<b>124</b>
30	Angels and their Role	124
31	Angels and their Role	126
32	Satan – Personality and Power	133
33	Satan – His Work and Destiny	141
34	Satan – His Strategies	144
35	Demons – Satan’s Troops	148
	<b>SECTION G – STUDY OF MAN</b>	<b>152</b>
36	Man – His Origin and Creation	152
37	Man – His Origin and Creation [continued]	160
38	Man – His Fall	163
	<b>Index of Doctrines</b>	<b>170</b>

**SECTION A – BIBLIOLOGY – A STUDY OF THE BIBLE**

**LESSON 1 – PRELIMINARY REMARKS (PROLEGOMENA) TO THEOLOGY**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
1	Introduction	Acts 17:22-34 John 2:22 James 1:19-27, 2:12-26 2 Tim 3:12-17	Philosophy Bible And Believer

**Note to mentors – pause and read fully all of the bold typed verses in the text.**

**CHRISTIAN LIVING**

Many act as if they have no accountability to God, but the Bible is very clear that we all must give an account of our life. All believers must give account of the way we have used our time here, and every person who rejects the claims of Jesus upon their life must answer for their rejection of God’s grace, love, and mercy. Theology is the study of the nature, purposes, and plans of God, as God has revealed these things in his work of redemption through the ages, and his words through his chosen servants, the prophets, and apostles. **Jude 1-3.**

All study that is useful has an output in daily life, and all study of theology has an output, either good or bad in this life and in eternity. In his last letter Peter notes that there are many things which are “hard to understand” in God’s Word, but that doesn’t mean we shouldn’t study them, it just means we must study harder. **2 Peter 3:10-18.** God’s required “output” of this study is a Holy Spirit filled, and powerful life of service and worship. We are left here to worship and work!

As you advance in your study of the things of God provide for yourself what I call a “promise and problem notebook”, so that as you come across promises and problems you should note them down in the front and back of the notebook, so that you have a place to record answers to problems and application of promises. Date the entries and record when God provides an answer to each problem so you can see the way the Lord works with you through the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit.

The prime reason for studying theology is to conform our lives to the standard of the person of Christ, not other people. **Romans 8:29, Ephesians 4:13, 5:18.** Only God can do that through the Holy Spirit working within, which is why we begin all study in prayer and confess any sins to clear our lives of anything that will hinder the Filling of the Holy Spirit.

Who should understand theology? - **Everybody!** The enemy has his false theologies, and so we must be careful and biblical in our study discerning the truth, for our eternal destiny depends on getting this right.

**ACCOUNTABILITY**

We are accountable:- [a] To Ourselves – Conscience, [b] To Society – Law, [c] To Family, Employers etc. [d] To God - As Creator

We may believe that we can escape accountability but the Bible tells us that we are accountable to Him.

- [a] Believers - 1 Corinthians 3:10-17, 2 Corinthians 5:9-15.
- [b] Unbelievers - Revelation 20:11-15.

We require sound doctrine and Holy Spirit filled discernment - 2 Timothy 4:3, Titus 1:9.

Application into life of biblical doctrines (Theology) will always lead to Holy Living and service. James 2:12-26.

Paul prayed for an increase in this “Working Knowledge” – that is, like James he prays for knowledge of bible doctrines that will “work out” in the lives of all believers for the glory of the Lord Jesus Christ. Philippians 1:9-11, Colossians 1:9-10.

The ultimate goal of all biblical and other knowledge gained is that we are transformed by it; from a Christian perspective this means to have our character and behaviour conformed to the standard of the Person of Christ.

What is theology? - Theology is the discovery, systemizing and presentation of the truths about God. It is made up of two words “*Theos*” meaning God, and “*logos*”, meaning logical, systematic study. This is therefore the study of the mind, plan and actions of God as far as they can be known in our present time and space universe.

“*Prolego*” in Greek means “before we speak”, and so we talk of a “prolegomena” to theology, for there are certain things that need to be clarified before we study theology. Empiricists say that you cannot speak about God at all. The reality is

that men have always spoken of the creator, and there is a deep felt need to talk about and relate to God. The issue of Christian theological study however is getting to know God biblically, and specifically getting to know the person and work of the Father, the Holy Spirit, and Jesus Christ better. Our aim is to be like Jesus, not like any other person!

We will not allow ourselves to get side-tracked by partisan theological disputes, such as that between the viewpoint of Calvin and Arminius. (This will be a degree level assignment). We are going to stick to the biblical study of each subject, and you will discover that we can know the Plan of God well enough to thank God for election as well as free will. **Acts 17: 22-34**. As we go through we will see most disputes have a solution between the extremes of “human viewpoint”.

The response to Theology by men varies depending upon their humility and desires. A good case to study is Paul's encounter with the philosophers on Mars Hill in Athens, where after hearing Paul speak some mocked whilst others believed. The various responses in the crowd of philosophers showed who had been prepared by the Holy Spirit to accept, and those who would resist any calling of God. Paul simply tells them about the Lord and His resurrection, and by this time they are either thinking and accepting, or they are rejecting and moving away. **John 16: 8-11**.

The Holy Spirit - The Holy Spirit is the agent of conviction of sin and regeneration. Do not think that you can argue people into the kingdom of heaven, or that the truth alone will convince all people. The Holy Spirit does the work of conviction, the Lord Jesus Christ gets the glory. You give the facts and get the blessing of seeing some people saved, but you cannot take the credit. Remember also that the demons know the truth, and they tremble at it, but will still not bow their knees to the Lord and worship Him. Sadly many men and women will be the same. **James 2:19**.

In the person of the Lord Jesus Christ God has stepped into history – the Creator has visited the Creation. As we go through this study we will be looking at the person and work of The Lord and the Holy Spirit.

Theology is the study of the person, plan, and work of the triune God, the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, and the character of each. It is also a study of man as a creature of the Creator and a study of God's plan for man.

**WHERE DO WE START?**

**HOW DO WE START?**

The student of theology. It is a nonsense for an atheist to study theology – it is the study of God.....

- [a] Must believe - 1 Corinthians 2:10-16.
- [b] Must think - a combination of philosophy/theology and careful exegesis of each text we study.
- [c] Must depend on the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit - John 16:12-15.
- [d] Must worship and have an increasing reverence for God. If Theology doesn't make you want to worship = wrong!

Let us understand some terms used in theological discussions

The “**Conservative**” Biblical Viewpoint (Our own at EBCWA) - As Bible believing people we believe that God has spoken to us. We hold the premise of revelation. We hold that the Bible is God's revealed words to us, and knowledge of His Word will give knowledge of God, because in it God has revealed Himself. We will use male reference to God, not because God has gender, but because that is the way the holy prophets and apostles spoke, and we are captive to Scripture. We are people of the book, as our Moslem friends call us, and like them we stand upon our received text.

The “**Liberal**” Viewpoint - To the liberal however the premise is that the Bible is not revelation but that the Bible is philosophy. They hold that Genesis is not history, that the Flood did not occur, they hold to evolution rather than creation. Some are not happy with the miracles and the resurrection. They however are often orthodox on salvation and get living in the Spirit right. Their premise is wrong therefore their conclusions will often be wrong, and they face life with uncertainty. They may stumble in doubts and falter with uncertainty as they face the trials of life.

Subjectivism is the hall mark of the liberal because arguments about what is “reason” and what is experiential has always dominated their theology; but it is not simple reason, for we also believe in being “reasonable”. They have defined “reason” in such a way that revelation is denied before it has a chance to produce evidence. Schleiermacher [1768-1834] began this trend when he emphasized analysis of religious experience based on feelings, whilst Kant [1724-1804] relied on conscience as the basis for truth. In all liberalism they separate the Jesus of history from the Christ of faith, rejecting the reality of historical revelation, stressing that faith is experiential and needs no evidence as such, as long as it transforms you. This we believe is **dangerously false, for our faith is historical – it stands or falls upon history**.

The “**Neo Orthodox**” - There is also another school (with some more modern variations) called the neo orthodoxy group who insist that God not man initiates revelation, but they also set limits to the nature of that. The Bible they say witnesses to the Logos/Word but does so fallibly as it comes through limited human beings. The Bible therefore has no absolute authority. This viewpoint masquerades as a biblical viewpoint but is based upon intellectual arrogance. We believe that as limited creatures of space and time we need to be very careful that we do not push our claim to ability to understand things beyond the boundary of what is possible – and we believe the Conservative position is more sensible than the academic arrogance of liberalism or the false humility of neo-orthodoxy. Both commit the philosophical “category mistake” of speaking of eternity in terms of time and drawing false conclusions from their ignorance. We will see in the BTH course that this is also the foundational error behind many of the debates about election.

**Catholicism** - Combines the authority of the Bible with Church tradition with the ultimate authority resting with the church and its leader the Pope and historic Church Councils. Tradition has been binding on the church since the Counter-Reformation, at times as if it is equal to divine revelation, but this has been seriously modified since Vatican II. In most areas of theology we will discover that we stand where the Roman Catholic Church stands, and there will be very little difference between us.

**Protestantism** – Historically this group of churches eliminated the authority of the leadership of the church and made the Bible the grounds of spiritual authority. The historic Protestants believe that each church has a divine mandate to set authoritative guidelines for its members in accordance with what they believe the scriptures teach - Hebrews 13:7,17. What this means in practice is beliefs change with their annual general meetings at times....

**Independents/Conservatives** who make experience authoritative, such as some amongst the modern Charismatic and Pentecostal movements, can make the same error as liberalism, and the liberals will often seek alliances with the Charismatics to provide warmth to their otherwise dead churches. Emotion without firm biblical evidence for behaviours can lead to strange alliances and even stranger practices.

Our Premise at EBCWA - The premise we hold is that the Bible is the Word of God without error in the original. It is inerrant and is given by God and miraculously preserved through the centuries. Accurate theology is based on accurate exegesis and Scripture is always to be compared with Scripture, and a biblical interpretation of a passage is to be heard before any other opinion is expressed. We believe God communicates in a normal, plain, and literal manner in accordance with the normal rules of grammar. When the plain sense makes common sense, we seek no other sense, lest we create nonsense! We don't demand you hold our position, but be clear that this is it!

**Priority** of the New Testament - While all Scripture is inspired and profitable, the New Testament has greater priority as a source of doctrine, and we allow the Lord's and the apostolic interpretation of the Old Testament to be normative for us. The Old Testament was preparatory and partial, while New Testament theology is climactic and completes the Old, and by it we see the Old Testament's true meanings. The Later defines/explains/expounds the Former.

**Proof Texts** - Use of proof texts, providing they are stated accurately **in their context** give conservative conclusions. Texts must be quoted in their context. A text out of context can become a "pretext" for anything.

**Systematic Theology** - This is the means by which we seek out the system behind Theology. We should however realise that none of us have all the truth and good people differ on all non essentials for salvation. In essential doctrines for salvation we must have unity, but in all else we must have charity and humility! Beware of those who state they have all truth. Pride and arrogance was Satan's sin and we are all mere creatures and all we know is incomplete and limited by our space-time brain. Let us join together in shared faith with all who love and serve the Lord Jesus Christ and "agree to differ" on things that do not affect our eternal salvation.

### **THREE FORMS OF THEOLOGY**

There are three forms of theological study.

[a] **Historical Theology** - What great theologians and church historians in the past have thought, the contributions and mistakes of the Church.

[b] **Biblical Theology** - which looks at the specific teaching of each book of the Bible.

[1] Must be presented in a systematic form.

[2] Looks at the background and circumstances of the writer,

[3] The unfolding in progressive stages - e.g. see Topic - The Lamb

[4] Takes its material from the Bible.

[c] **Systematic Theology** - which tries to see the whole counsel of God in the form of topics in a systematic way.

The limitation of a theological system must coincide with the limitation of Biblical revelation, which means that it must be understandable to man as a creature of the creator. After all shouldn't we expect this? If God has given us a mind then we ought to expect to use it systematically, but also accept its limitations – for we are creatures stuck in a space-time universe and that sets to limitations to our thinking.

Theology - Should Be Systematic Theology - Theology can be understood, for God can be understood, and God has made us with understanding, although some things will require explanation, but that will always be Bible based.

Beliefs - Everyone has a belief system:- ATHEIST - believes there is no God, AGNOSTIC - believes she/he cannot know about God, THEIST - Believes in God, TRINITARIAN - believes God is a Trinity As our information about God comes from the Bible our belief in the Truthfulness of the Bible is critical. God gave information to be understood. This means that even a lie is at times communicated as such in a literal manner. We saw this in the introductory lectures with reference to the book of Job, the end of which tells us that all the friends have said was false! It is recorded as such to

warn us about false theology. Do not quote from Job without understanding this, for the words of the friends are all lies!  
**Job 42:7-9.**

## **DOCTRINES**

### **PHILOSOPHY**

1. Philosophy does not lead to wisdom. (Job 28:12-13,20-21).
2. It is a futile exercise. (Ecclesiastes 8:17; 1 Corinthians 3:19,20)
3. It does not produce happiness. (Ecclesiastes 1:13-18)
4. It leads to death. (Proverbs 14:12; 1 Corinthians 1:18-22)
5. We can only find the existence of God through it. (Matthew 11:25; 16:17; 1 Corinthians 1:20,21, 2:13, James 2:19)
6. Philosophy is useless in preaching (1 Corinthians 1:20,21; 2:1) as it will rob the gospel of its power. (1 Corinthians 1:17). Basic doctrines are then doubted or even denied, as is done in liberal theology.
7. Philosophy is often a hindrance in coming to faith. (Acts 17:32; 1 Corinthians 1:23; 1 Timothy 6:20-21)
8. It has to be avoided. (Proverbs 3:5,7; 1 Corinthians 3:18; Colossians 2:8; 1 Timothy 6:20,21).
9. Real wisdom is to know and worship God. (Job 28:28; Psalm 11 1:10; Proverbs 3:1-7; 9:10; 14:12-16)
10. Philosophy creates "mental blocks" in the mind. Job 19:25-27. This makes it hard for someone who has been trained in it to understand and accept Biblical truths.
11. A few examples as illustration-
  - a) Evolution: Leaves no room for a Creator, that is, for the Biblically revealed God.
  - b) Humanism: Denies the existence of God, human soul, life after death, heaven, hell, of absolute values in morals or otherwise.
  - c) Psychiatry: Does not keep man responsible for his deeds. It denies the root of all man's problems: sin.
  - d) Anthropology: Teaches evolution in human society. What is called "primitive man" or "stone age man" is, in reality, the end product of degeneration through sin.

### **BIBLE AND THE BELIEVER**

1. The Scriptures are designed to have the following effect on the believer.
  - a) Illuminating. (Psalm 119:105, 130)
  - b) Making wise the simple. (Psalm 19:7)
  - c) Producing faith (John 20:31), hope (Psalm 119:49, Romans 15:4), and obedience. (Deuteronomy 17:19-20)
  - d) Cleansing the heart (John 15:3, Ephesians 5:26) and the ways. (Psalm 119:9)
  - e) Keeping us from destructive paths. (Psalm 17:4)
  - f) Supporting life. (Matthew 4:4 cf Deuteronomy 8:3)
  - g) Building up in the faith. (Acts 20:32)
  - h) Comforting. (Psalm 119:82, Romans 15:4)
  - i) Promoting growth in grace. (1 Peter 2:2)
  - j) Admonishing. (1 Corinthians 10:11)
  - k) Rejoicing the heart. (Psalm 119:18,111)
  - l) Sanctifying. (John 17:17, Ephesians 5:26)
2. The Complete Scriptures should be:-
  - a) Believed (John 2:22) and obeyed. (James 1:22)
  - b) The standard for teaching. (1 Peter 4:11)
  - c) Appealed to. (1 Corinthians 1:31, 1 Peter 1:16)
  - d) Read publicly to all. (Acts 13:15)
  - e) Known. (2 Timothy 3:15)
  - f) Received as the Word of God (1 Thessalonians 2:13) with meekness. (James 1:21)
  - g) Searched. (John 5:39, Acts 17:11)
  - h) Used against our spiritual enemies. (Ephesians 6:11,17)

- i) Taught to everyone including children. (Deuteronomy 6:7, 11:19, Nehemiah 8:7-8)
- j) Talked about continually. (Deuteronomy 6:7)
- k) Not handled deceitfully. (2 Corinthians 4:2)

3. For the unbeliever the Scripture should be for:-
- a) Regeneration. (James 1:18, 1 Peter 1:23)
  - b) Quickening. (Psalm 119:50,93)
  - c) Converting the soul. (Psalm 19:7)

**LESSON 2 – THE BIBLE AS THE WORD OF GOD**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
2	Bible – Gods Word	John 1:1-18 John 14:16,17 John 16:7-15 Hebrews 1:1-3 1 Corinthians 13:8-13	Lamb Holy Spirit Teacher Maturity

**GOD REVEALS HIMSELF**

Bible is from the Greek word ‘biblos’ meaning a book.

Christianity teaches that God has deliberately stepped into history and revealed himself to mankind in the unique person of Jesus – who is God-Man. Christianity is different to any other religion because of this. This revelation of God reached its peak with the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ as shown in **John 1:1-18**. Later in **John 14:16-17, 16:7-15**, he states that the Holy Spirit will inform us of more things when he becomes fully active after the day of Pentecost.

Much of the knowledge of God was given when Jesus Christ was on earth, and after his return to heaven through the Holy Spirit to the apostles; all this complementing and amplifying material already given in the Old Testament. We have now what revelation God wishes us to have this side of eternity. There was an unfolding of Gods Word with the unfolding of doctrine in the Old Testament, unfolding of doctrine in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and the unfolding of doctrine by the Holy Spirit through people such as Paul.

**Hebrews 1:1-3**

Hebrews 1:1-3 reminds us that the Lord Jesus Christ is now seated at the right hand of God from where he sent the Holy Spirit to complete the canon of Scripture.

*"God in sundry times and in many ways [polumeros]" indicates the progressive nature and fragmentary ways in which God's Word came into being. Under His guidance they were all brought together in diverse manners,[proutropos].*

Methods - The many various ways through which revelation was put into the canon in the Old Testament :- they cast lots, they used the urim and thummim in conjunction with the High Priest's breastplate, visions, dreams, theophanies - the pre-incarnate appearances of the person of the Lord Jesus Christ, prophets, angels and events.

However when the Lord Jesus Christ steps into time as Emmanuel the other methods faded into less significance. Some dreams and visions occurred during the period of the Acts, and we do have resurrection appearances of the Lord, and some appearances of angels with specific messages. Revelation “zeros” in on the person, work and words of The Lord, but there are some exceptional revelations directly by angelic means.

In Hebrews 1:2 we note that in the “recent days” God has spoken to us through His Son. The word "by" is a poor translation of a Greek preposition which can be rendered "in" or "through".

The Bible as the Word of God. - The Bible claims to be the Word of God and if you adopt any other position on it's nature you have it's own verses challenging you.

It is the internal and external evidence regarding the Bible, which proves to the open minded person that we are dealing with a book that is clearly claiming to be God's Word. It is written over a period of nearly 2000 years yet it all ties together. All the so called contradictions melt away if you look at the subject in historic context and the total content of the Word. There may be a language problem or a problem of comprehension but no contradictions will stand up to thorough study.



**TWO LINES OF EVIDENCE**

**Internal** – the facts in the Bible and its own claim as to its divine origin. Joshua 1:8, 2 Samuel 22:31, Psalm 1:2, Luke 16:17, 2 Timothy 2:15, Revelation 1:2.

There is a constant claim from the Old and New Testament writers as well as the Lord Himself about the divine nature of the Bible. Psalm 19:7-11. Jesus Christ claimed that the Law of God was to be fulfilled to the letter. Matthew 5:17,18. See also Hebrews 1:1-2.

**External** - The nature of the facts and fulfilled prophetic truths given in Scripture - which supports its supernatural character.

[a] Continuity - Written over a period of 2000 years by over 40 authors. There is amazing continuity in the story it tells. Different backgrounds, different cultures, different characters. Subjects ranging from Creation to Eternity Future.

Progress from less complex to more complex – the Lamb is sacrificed, but it stands for the ultimate “lamb”. Types are used, prophecies is given and later fulfilled.

Guidance to the writing of the Bible given by the Holy Spirit.

[b] The extent of revelation – Like a telescope it sweeps the universe from the height of heavens to the depths of hell, like a microscope it looks into the minutest details of the plan of God, like a stereoscope it brings all items into harmony.

It presents information from eternity past to eternity future. We need not fear what archaeologists may dig up because if the Bible says something happened it did.

[c] The Influence and Publications of the Bible – it is far more widely published in more languages than any other book. It was among the first books to be printed in the West. It continues to be printed in ever increasing numbers.

It is classified as the sword of the spirit, Eph 6:17, it also has other features in John 17:17, 2 Cor 3:17,18, Eph 5:25-26

[d] Subject matter of the Bible – the supernatural character of the Bible is seen in the treating of unknown and otherwise unknowable matters in exactly the same way as that which is known. In all subjects presented its statements are final, accurate and timeless. Its contents allow the reader to be wise in the truth both in time and eternity.

[e] The Bible as literature – considered from this viewpoint the Bible is supreme from history to poetry, stories of love and war, speculations of philosophy versus the truth.

[f] Unprejudiced Authority – the human authors have not prejudiced the Bible in favour of man as it deals with his sin and weaknesses. Some of the authors themselves such as Solomon in Ecclesiastes show themselves as frail.

It reveals with authority things from heaven, things seen and unseen revealing facts about God, human nature, angels, time and eternity, life and death, sin and salvation, heaven and hell.

Supreme Character – it is a supernatural book revealing the person and glory of God as shown in His Son Jesus Christ. It could not have been an invention of any mortal man or woman operating alone, as God’s perfect character could not have been comprehended by those on earth without Divine assistance.

We therefore see the relation between the written Word and the Lord Jesus Christ as the living Word. They both are supernatural and they transform the lives of those who believe. The revelations are understandable by the child and yet are as complex as the divine wisdom and knowledge, and as enduring as the God whom they reveal.

**THE SCOPE OF THE BIBLE**

God's hand is clearly in this book as you do not get so many people writing 66 books over such a length of time with complete compatibility without Divine inspiration. The Bible looks at everything. No other book has been published so widely or has come under such great scrutiny. This subject matter has a supernatural stamp on it. It is the greatest literature in the world. It is completely authoritative. It has supreme power, beauty and uniqueness of God's Word.

**1 Corinthians 13:8 –10.** In verse 8 we see the words of knowledge as a means of obtaining God's Word before it was completed with the Book of the Revelation around 96AD, so all received after that point must not contradict revelation.

Whilst God's revelation is complete now for this side of eternity since the “last words” (Revelation, Gospel of John, 1<sup>st</sup> Letter) completed by the Apostle John, God is still speaking to His people through His Word through means such as divine guidance. Anyone who says that they are guided by the Lord today however must be guided in accordance with the written Word. We believe that we now have a closed canon of Scripture and have not had any further new inspired

authoritative revelation since the closing of the Canon. This does not mean there is no prophetic word today, but that the prophetic word is to be always compared with and judged by already revealed Scripture. (“Sola Scriptura”.)

Revelation and guidance are completely different as are the ways in which the Old Testament saints were guided by means of dreams and visions before the completion of the canon. Many of the problems in the extremes of the Charismatic movement are caused by an open ended canon, to which some believe their experiences and prophecies can still be added. This potentially leads them into error, unless they allow the prophets to be corrected by the prophets. **1 Corinthians 14:32.** We do not worship mystical experiences or dreams, for they have many sources.

If you want to hear voices, all you do is go without food and sleep for 72 hours. You will have a mystical experience but it will be without any positive spiritual reality, even though there may be spiritual things experienced. Can you see, that if any unbeliever can do it, then it is not spiritual in any biblical sense! Visions and voices, when based in deprivation, may actually be very dangerous. Medical practitioners see patients who are unbelievers, especially alcoholics, drug users, or people with mental illness, who see things or hear things due to their condition, and they may even have the religious imagery but the cause is not the Holy Spirit, it is the “spirit” in the substance, demonic, or their altered brain chemistry.

There is therefore a difference between revelation, which is the basis of God's Word, and personal guidance by God, which always has to be judged against the Word of God. At the time Paul was writing 1 Corinthians in 55 AD there were dramatic gifts that would draw attention to the legitimacy of the authors of the written Word. They were also there to aid evangelism and to get the church started very quickly. These dramatic gifts included miracles, prophecy, special knowledge, and the true gift of tongues. The gift of tongues was also a sign to the nation Israel that their time as custodians of the Word of God was coming to an end, and that the Church was now taking over. **Isaiah 28:11-12, 20-28.**

These dramatic sign gifts were to indicate that something dramatically new was happening, and that once the Church was fully established they would be unusual and occasional. Church history records the fact of this. There are permanent and regular gifts as well, such as administration, helps, prayer, giving, pastor-teacher.

That the temporary gifts were going to cease, or at least drop away significantly in occurrence, is indicated in 1 Corinthians 13:8. The gift of tongues would cease [tousontai] is in the future middle indicative. This would mean to cause to cease, or rest, or to cease to function when its done is job. Future tense indicates that in 55 AD this ceasing would be in the future. The Greek word used does not mean that the function was bad but that the job for which it had been created would be completed at some future point. The indicative mood shows the reality of it ceasing. The restarting of the modern “tongues phenomena” within a few years of the Balfour Declaration may have significance.

The other two gifts mentioned in verse 8 those of prophecy that adds to scripture, and special knowledge, are said to fail [katergeo]. These are in the future passive indicative. The passive voice shows that each will be rendered inoperative; they will receive ceasing. No one will need to have the gift of biblical prophecy or special knowledge when all the information which God wants revealed is in the completed written canon of Scripture.

This does not mean that God cannot give a word of knowledge or prophecy now, but that it will not add to Scripture, rather each is to be tested by it. When God needs to use these gifts they will be used, and believers will be blessed by them, but no-one with these gifting now is adding to scripture through their use, and they are at a lower level than that of the apostles who wrote the new scriptures through their use of them in the first century.

1 Corinthians 13:9 gives refers to the desire for the completed canon of Scripture which is slowly replacing these most dramatic of gifts. We do not go out to seek a prophet today, as we already have the whole counsel of God. We now seek a pastor teacher who now evaluates from the Bible and each believer has the Holy Spirit to work within as their prophet/teacher to bring all knowledge directly as it is needed by that person. If a person has a prophetic gifting today all they, and all they say is to be tested by the Scriptures to ensure it's origin is of God. It will be a prophetic word, very specific to the individual/situation.

Paul says, “for we know in part and prophecy in part”, which was the case in 55 AD. There are three sections involved here. What the situation was in 55 AD, what it was when the canon was completed around 96 AD, and what it will be like in eternity. Often you will find that with a prophecy there will be an initial fulfillment, with a future complete fulfillment yet to come, and is not unlike this concept. Explore a fuller study of this section in the website/CD study of Corinthians and Acts. Also read Augustine's book “The City of God”, for he notes all the miraculous gifts still occurring at times in his day.

Remember, speaking in tongues as presently practiced in Pentecostal churches is not restricted to Christians, with non Christian psychologists, anthropologists and historians reporting many unbelievers in various cultures doing the same. What we see today is not exactly what occurred in Acts, and while it may be bone fide we must pause and reflect, if unbelievers are doing it, we must be cautious. Some spiritual phenomena can only be assessed by the “fruit” test. Matthew 7:13-23 (if the person is not manifesting the fruit of the Spirit in their life then the “gifts” they manifest are probably fake). Other things will only be finally seen 100% when we see Jesus. Until we see him face to face and have all our questions answered we are to take all doubtful things to the Scriptures and check them out for truth against the biblical model. Jude 3.

ALWAYS remember that the gifts of the Holy Spirit are verified by the fruit of the Holy Spirit in the “gifted” person’s daily life. If there is no spiritual fruit of the Holy Spirit in their life then we must suspect that their so called “gifts” do not have a Holy Spirit origin. By “their fruits you know them” – not by gifts claimed and exercised. **Matthew 7:13-23.**

**DOCTRINES**

**LAMB**

The lamb is a central feature of typology in the Bible as a symbol of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Here we see the developing topic of the Lamb from the sacrifice by Abel to the Lord of Glory.

It shows the importance of a word study when examining the Scriptures.

1. Genesis 4:3-5a
  - a) Abel brought a lamb from his flock.
  - b) Propitiation emphasised - covering.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for sin.
  
2. Genesis 22:7-14
  - a) Abraham was provided with a ram.
  - b) Substitution emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for one person.
  
3. Exodus 12:3-7
  - a) The lamb had to be slain.
  - b) Protection emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for one family.
  
4. Leviticus 1:10-13, 16:15
  - a) The lamb without spot or blemish.
  - b) Character of the lamb emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for the nation Israel.
  
5. Isaiah 53:4-8
  - a) Shows that the lamb to be provided is a person.
  - b) Expiation emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for the elect.
  
6. John 1:29
  - a) Shows that the lamb was Jesus.
  - b) Complete removal of sin emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for the whole world.
  
7. Acts 8:30-37
  - a) Shows that Jesus is the Christ the promised Messiah.
  - b) Individual salvation emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for whosoever.
  
8. 1 Peter 1:18-21
  - a) Shows the resurrection of the lamb.
  - b) Redemption emphasised.
  - c) The lamb was an offering for all generations.
  
9. Revelation 5:6-10
  - a) Shows the glorification of the lamb.
  - b) Government of the lamb emphasised.
  - c) The lamb of the whole universe.
  
10. Revelation 22:1-5
  - a) Shows the everlasting kingship of the lamb.
  - b) Eternal glory of the lamb emphasised.
  - c) The lamb for all eternity.

The developing topic of the lamb shows how Jesus Christ is the central figure in all the Scriptures and how the inspired writers of the Bible gradually developed the revelation of his character, work and glorification from a lamb to the King of Kings and Lord of Lords.

HOLY SPIRIT: TEACHER

1. He is the Spirit of Wisdom. (Isaiah 11:2, 40:13-14)
2. He reveals the things of God. (1 Corinthians 10:13)
3. He reveals the things of Christ. (John 16:14)
4. He guides into all truth. (John 14:26, 16:13)
5. He enables ministers to teach. (1 Corinthians 12:8)
6. He teaches the saints to answer persecutors. (Mark 13:11, Luke 12:12)
7. He directs in the way of godliness. (Isaiah 30:21, Ezekiel 36:27)
8. He brings the words of Christ to remembrance. (John 14:26)

MATURITY

**CATEGORIES OF BELIEVERS**

1. Standpoint of Spirituality:

- a) Spiritual believer - the Holy Spirit controls the inside of the believer (Romans 8:6b).
- b) Carnal believer - the sinful nature controls the inside of the believer (Romans 8:6a).

2. Standpoint of Growth:

- a) Baby - one who has just received Christ as Saviour.
- b) Adolescent - one who has learned some doctrine but is not yet in the application state.
- c) Mature - one who knows and applies doctrine and spends a maximum amount of time in the filling of the Holy Spirit.

3. Relationship of Maturity and Spirituality:

- a) Spirituality is an absolute. The Holy Spirit either controls or He does not. One cannot be a little bit carnal. If he is carnal he is NOT spiritual.
- b) Maturity is speeded up by spirituality, but a baby believer can be either carnal or spiritual, and a mature believer can be carnal or spiritual.

**MATURITY: CROSS TO THE CROWN**

1. Salvation is only the beginning of the plan for man. After salvation the believer's objective is to advance in stages of spiritual growth on the path from the Cross to the Crown.

2. At each stage the believer faces increasing intense tests that can only be passed by faith. Paul in Romans 1:17 says believers progress from faith to faith. The five Hebrew words for faith illustrate the five stages of growth described in the New Testament.

- a) The Babe - 1 Peter 2:2 - AMEN - the leaning faith of Genesis 15:6

All believers enter the family of God as infants when they exercise faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. After the tremendous stress of birth, of coming from darkness into the light the infant's impulse is to nurse. The objective is nourishment but the baby also receives great comfort in feeding. God's objective for the spiritual infant is for growth, but He commences this with comfort. Not much is expected of a baby in his first few years, he cannot feed or change himself. Spiritual infants are just as helpless and need a great deal of nurturing, encouragement and patient encouragement and patient instruction.

- b) The Adolescent - 1 John 2:13-14 - BATACH - the wrestling faith of Psalm 37:3

Adolescents young, strong and eager believers. This is the stage where people have grown to the point at which they understand some of the principles of truth and are beginning to apply them to their lives. But like most adolescents, they have the growing pains of arrogance and rebellion against authority; they are sometimes too eager to act on their own, and this often gets them into trouble. They have knowledge which they mistake for wisdom, but they lack the experience. Their tendency is to want to apply the truth to other people's lives. Adolescents may be troublesome, but at least they

are not apathetic. They must be patiently trained and encouraged to channel their energies. No one makes it to maturity without passing through adolescence.

c) The Mature - Hebrews 5:14, 6:1 - CHASAH - the confident faith that takes refuge in the Lord - Psalm 57:1

The mature believer is able to take meat, the advance doctrine of the Word. A believer who has arrived at spiritual maturity knows enough about the Bible to take responsibility for his own life. He knows how to apply the Word of God to himself so rather than airing all his problems he knows how to solve them. He is not ready to take on every one else's problems but he can take control of his own life. He understands that God has a plan for his life and sets about fulfilling that plan. He gives himself to training and discipline, exercising himself and building spiritual muscle.

d) The Hero of Faith - Isaiah 53:12, Hebrews 11 - YACHAL - the healing faith of Job 13:15

Heroes of faith are men and women who have gone beyond maturity and have learned to fight the good fight. They have advanced beyond simply taking responsibility for their own lives to becoming responsible for the lives of other people. They are always willing to pick up fallen comrades, to treat their wounds, to encourage them and supply their needs. Heroes of the faith still make mistakes, they still fail but they always stand back up and go back into battle.

e) The Friend of God - James 2:23-25 - QAWAH - the enduring faith of Isaiah 40:31

The highest of all possible achievements in life is to become a friend of God. Every believer has the potential and the assets necessary to reach this point, but very few Christians do. It takes persistency and tenacity. The only people who make it this far are those who absolutely refuse to quit.

**LESSON 3 – INSPIRATION**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
3	Bible – Inspiration	2 Timothy 3:14-17 2 Peter 1:16-21 1 Corinthians 2:13-16 Matthew 5:14-20 1 Timothy 5:18 2 Peter 3:15-18	Knowledge Of God's Word Inspiration

**THE BIBLE AND INSPIRATION**

The concept of Inspiration is not something that theologians have forced on the Bible, it is the teaching of the Bible itself. The Bible testifies to its own inspiration and while this may not be conclusive for some people, it should be listened to.

The Problem of Inspiration - About 200 years ago it was sufficient for a person to say that the Bible was the inspired Word of God to mankind. However with the attack of the liberals and the Higher Criticism group it has become very important for each of us to be very specific with our definition and understanding of inspiration.

Many liberals and Neo-Orthodox will say that they believe the Word of God is inspired but then define it in such a manner as to indicate that they do not believe in many of the things which Bible believing Christians do; they pick and choose.

It is therefore of critical importance that students who desire to honour God's Word study at a place where the staff and governors of the College believe that the Bible is the Word of God and have a conservative view of things. This is where the liberals make their first attack upon people of real faith, so it is here that we need to have our defences up.

**THE USE OF SCRIPTURE IN THE BIBLE**

The New Testament uses the word Scripture 51 times and always refers to part of the Bible.

- [a] Entire O T - **Luke 24:45, John 10:35**
- [b] OT passage **Luke 4:21**
- [c] NT passage **1 Timothy 5:18**
- [d] NT larger portion **2 Peter 3:15-18**

1 Timothy 5:18 combines both OT and NT regarding them both as Scripture. OT quotation Deuteronomy 25:4, NT quotation Luke 10:7 with the sentiment found in **Leviticus 19:13 and Deuteronomy 24:15**.

**THE SCRIPTURE IS “GOD BREATHED”**

In 2 Timothy 3:16 the Word of God is said to be God breathed [theopneustos]. Theo – God, Pneustos - Breathed  
 Note that all Scripture, not just part of Scripture is God breathed.

The verbal form of the Greek word used here is in the passive voice, which means that the Bible was received from God. The English word “inspire” carries the concept of breathing into something however God breathed out Scripture and human authors wrote the text.

The Bible is not a museum piece, nor library object, but is to be used for application to daily life, as shown in this verse.

From Genesis to Revelation the Bible is inspired by God and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction and for instruction in righteousness.

Doctrine	didaskalia	that which is taught – Bible Topic Books
Reproof	elegmos	conviction, rebuke
Correction	epanorthosis	a restoration to an upright state – epi – to, ana – up, orthosis - upright which refers to an improvement of character.
Instruction	paideia	training, instruction in righteousness. School slave – to teach/correct.

Does this study of the Word do this to you? If not, pause and pray for the Holy Spirit to deal with any road blocks within.

**WHO IS THE AUTHOR OF THE BIBLE? - THE HOLY SPIRIT**

**2 Peter 1:21** uses the word "phero" where it states that the writers of Scripture were “moved” or carried along by the wind of the Holy Spirit. This was used for a ship in Acts 27:17. [Acts 27:14-20]

As they were moved along the prophets were guided in what they wrote by the Holy Spirit as the winds in their sails. Men spoke but they wrote what God wanted them to do. It was therefore God’s words through men. This shows that God used men and gave us a completely truthful and dependable Bible.

The sailors in the boat in Acts let the boat go along but were still active. In a similar way the Holy Spirit as author of the Scripture uses the active participation of the human authors to write the Scripture.

The boat and passenger analogy can also be used to show that while the passengers on the boat have some freedom, it is the boat which is going to bring them to their destination.

This passage shows that no prophecy ever came from a person, which therefore asserts that the source was God.

In summary this verse states that God used men and women, and gave us a completely truthful Bible.

Inspiration Came in Words that men and women could understand and apply.

**1 Corinthians 2:13-16** shows that God's revelation came to man in words. This counters the claim that inspiration only relates to the thoughts of God and shows it is the literal words in the original that are inspired.

It could be construed that the writers of Scripture had thoughts from God, which were interpreted erroneously by man, but Paul says that it is the words themselves that were given.

This therefore teaches that the actual words given to the writers as they wrote the Bible were inspired.

**THE DATA FROM WHICH THE BIBLE WAS PROVIDED**

- [a] Material that came directly from God – Deuteronomy 9:10 Jonah 1:1
- [b] Researched material – Luke 1:1-4. Here Luke consulted eyewitnesses, he used available written accounts, he carefully sifted through all the sources, he planned the orderly arrangement of the material and then the Holy Spirit bore him along so that the writing was accurate and truthful.
- [c] Prophetic Material – which comprises 25+% of the Bible had to be 100% true and no human writer could devise that hundreds of years before events were fulfilled.
- [d] Historical material – many wrote what they lived through. Luke in Acts 16:10-13, Joshua with the conquest of Canaan. Some things like creation had to be revealed by God to Moses as God was the only eyewitness.

[e] Other passages involve the true quoting of the lies of Satan or the thoughts of unsaved or carnal people. Titus 1:12, or vividly personal and emotional material, Romans 7:1ff, 9:1-3, as well as Job.

Summary – this shows that God sometimes revealed things supernaturally and directly, sometimes he allowed the human writer to compose the message using their freedom of expression but He breathed out the total product carrying along the authors in various ways to give us His message in the words of the Bible.

### **DEFINITION OF INSPIRATION**

Definition – “God superintended the human authors of the Bible so that they composed and recorded without error His message to mankind in the words of the original writings”. This is my definition – think of one that you are happy with....

[a] Superintend allows for a variety of relationship between God and the writers, sometimes direct, sometimes less so.

[b] Composed show that the writers were not passive secretaries to who God dictated the material but active writers.

[c] Without error reflects the Bible’s own claim to be the truth – John 17:17

[d] Inspiration is only in the original writings not to copies and translation however accurate they may be.

God breathed it, man wrote it, but we possess it, and it changes us through the teaching ministries of the Holy Spirit.

Different viewpoints about Inspiration need to be understood by you as a student of the Word.

Many so called “liberals” are not genuine believers at all. They take the truth and twist it subtly so that the believer thinks they are talking to a Christian, but actually they have no faith in the real Jesus. Their view of Jesus is totally false and they have no relationship with the real Jesus of history and eternity at all. Remember Jesus words in Matthew 7:13-23.

Most of the people coming out of the liberal colleges do not believe that the Bible is the Word of God as we do.

[a] Natural Inspiration - Some say that the Bible was written by geniuses, yet in Scripture we see ordinary men and women made great by the work of God on and through them.

[b] Dynamic or Mystical Inspiration - Others say that in addition to them being geniuses they were supernaturally inspired in an almost mystical way.

This allows the same sort or level of inspiration to other great works of literature. The question then needs to be asked that if this is true why can we not find people to write similar books today?

[c] Degree or Partial Inspiration - are those who hold to degree inspiration state that certain parts of the Bible are more inspired than other parts.

[d] Concept Inspiration - this is the belief that the concepts in the Bible are inspired but the words are not.

This is a false concept as it is necessary for the concepts to be inspired that the words need to be as well

[e] Barthian Inspiration - has come from the German theologian Karl Barth [1886 - 1968]. His concept has taken over most of the Neo-Orthodox colleges. He states that the Bible becomes the Word of God when the Word of God [Christ] talks to us through its pages. Basically he says the Bible is inspired when you feel it is inspired. When Christ is seen in the Bible that is inspired, when He is not, the passage is not.

We reject all these views as inadequate to the truth of scripture as God’s Holy Word.

### **THE LORD’S VIEW OF INSPIRATION**

In **Matthew 5:14-20** the Lord said that not the smallest amendment, letter or part of a letter will pass from the Law until all is fulfilled. Christ was talking about fulfilling the Torah and referring to the person and work He would do as Messiah. What Jesus is saying is that in the original language not the smallest detail is anything other than inspired.

This is a clear indication of its verbal, absolute, unlimited inspiration.

The Lord Jesus Christ is saying that as Moses wrote those books every letter to the smallest detail was inspired. In addition everything that is in it shall be fulfilled. This only applies to the original languages and cannot be applied to a translation that may be affected by some man’s theological viewpoint.

**1 Timothy 5:18** shows that right at the beginning of the New Testament, the attitude to Luke as an author was that Luke's work was Scripture, as he is quoting from Deuteronomy 25:4 and Luke 10:7.

In **2 Peter 3:15-18** all the epistles written by Paul are in accordance with other Scriptures, and Peter considers them Scripture. The New Testament therefore claims to have the same inspiration as the Old Testament.

The entire Bible is true even to the extent that lies are accurately recorded. Genesis 3:4

The Bible can also record the thoughts and reasoning of men who are carnal, arrogant, and out of fellowship such as Solomon in Ecclesiastes at some points, and Job's friends in much of Job. Job 42:7.

Solomon also in Song of Solomon also gives a lot of good advice about the danger of infidelity. It is a great picture of the joy that Solomon lost. In this God is recording what you will be like if you reject God's doctrine.

At the time of writing Solomon is in fellowship but he is looking back at his experiences whilst out of fellowship. Ecclesiastes is a book that records the futility of human wisdom without God, and so records many depressing truths, and falsehoods, but it's subject gives the clue to interpretation. The text taken only in it's own and the biblical context always keeps you safe.

It is also of great importance to look at the Bible in its historical context. For instance, when Isaiah is writing to the people in his vicinity he does not need to explain the historical context for they are there, but we have to study it, in order to find out who these people are. You must be clear "WHO" a passage was first addressed to.

Every verse is important and therefore the Bible should be taught verse by verse. All verses are put in the Scripture because God wanted it put there. As you mature you will see different things in the Scriptures and whilst you may be teaching the same passage of Scripture many times you will be getting something new and different out of the passage as you mature.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **KNOWLEDGE OF GOD'S WORD**

1. There is a big difference between knowing about something and truly knowing something so that your life is changed by it. The Greek uses two words; gnosis which was simply knowing about, and epignosis which was knowing the facts to the point where your life was transformed by them. James 2:12-26, 4:6-10.
2. Our understanding of the Bible doesn't depend upon our own intellect - it depends on the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit John 14:16-20, 15:26, 16:7-15 and on our willingness to let the Holy Spirit use His word to change us 1 Corinthians 1:19-2:16.
3. Paul's prayers for the churches were that the believers would grow in full knowledge and the application of the word that would bring the fruits of the Holy Spirit in the life. Colossians 1:9-11, Philippians 1:9-11.
4. God has provided everything for the believer so that we might grow in the fullness of the stature of Christ. As we use it we grow and enjoy the life that God intended for us. James 4:6, Ephesians 4:12, 16, 5:16, 18, 6:10, Colossians 4:5,
5. Synonyms for spiritual growth are; putting on the whole armour of God Ephesians 6:11-13, following the pastor Hebrews 12:1, 2, Philippians 3:13-17, godliness 1 Timothy 6:3-6, 2 Peter 1:3

### **BIBLE: INSPIRATION**

1. The principle of inspiration is found in (2 Timothy 3:16) "All Scripture is God breathed". Gk. THEO PNEUSTOS.

The Holy Spirit communicated to the human authors God's complete plan (2 Samuel 23:2, 3, Isaiah 59:21, Jeremiah 1:9, Matthew 22:42, 43, Mark 12:36, Acts 4:24, 25, 28:25)

The human authors of Scripture so wrote that in spite of their personalities, they were able to communicate God's plan with perfect accuracy in the language they wrote.

2. The origin of Scripture is beyond human viewpoint. (2 Peter 1:20, 21)
3. The Bible is the mind of Christ. (1 Corinthians 2:16) Therefore it is the absolute standard for believers. (Psalm 138:2)



4. Pre-canon revelation from God occurred through the Holy Spirit. There was no written scripture until the time of the book of Job, and the work of Moses. (2 Samuel 23:2, Ezekiel 2:2, 8:3, 11:1, 24, Micah 3:8, Hebrews 3:7)
5. Four categories of Old Testament revelation:
  - a) The spoken word - thus saith the Lord. (Isaiah 6:9, 10, Acts 28:25)
  - b) Dreams. (Numbers 12:6, Genesis 15:12, 31:10-13, 31:24, Daniel 10:9) -whilst asleep.
  - c) Visions. (Isaiah 1:1, 6:1, 1 Kings 22:19) - whilst awake.
  - d) Angelic teaching. (Deuteronomy 33:2, Acts 7:53, Galatians 3:19, Psalm 68:17)
6. The extent of revelation:
  - a) The unknown past - the Bible portrays past historical details unknown to man apart from revelation. (Genesis 1-11). The accuracy of these historical facts is guaranteed by inspiration. e.g. Creation, Noah's Flood.
  - b) Ancient history - whilst the Bible is not a text book of history, all historical citations are accurate.
  - c) Objective law - the Old Testament contains many laws for both individuals and national life. These laws express perfectly the mind of God to those people to whom they are addressed.
  - d) Some portions of the Bible contain direct quotations from God. The doctrine of inspiration guarantees that such quotations are properly recorded exactly as God desired.
  - e) God uses the emotions, trials and triumphs of certain believers to declare His grace in devotional literature like the Psalms, Song of Solomon
  - f) Inspiration extends to the recording of falsehoods just as they were uttered. Satan Genesis 3:4
  - g) Inspiration guarantees the accuracy of all recorded prophecies. John 20:30-31, 21:25.

**LESSON 4 – INERRANCY**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
4	The Bible – Inerrancy	Matthew 4:1-11 Matthew 5:17-18 John 10:31-38 Matthew 22:23-33 Matthew 22:41-46	Inerrancy

**IMPORTANCE OF INERRANCY**

What we now call “Inerrancy” is very important today, as it is the place where attacks on scripture have been occurring since the 1970s. As each believer sees that the Bible is completely trustworthy and without error in the original, so they will be stabilized in their study of the texts, and in their life walk. A church will be biblically strong only if it has a strong stand on inerrancy. Our attitude to the Word determines our attitude to everything else in Church and general Life!

Can one be an evangelical and not accept the doctrine of inerrancy? Yes.

Can one be a Biblicist and not accept the doctrine of inerrancy? No, because the Bible itself states that it is inerrant.

If you believe there is a serious error in the Bible how do you know that the Bible is accurate when it talks about the Lord Jesus Christ or the Resurrection, or your eternal security?

Some of the things you will end up doubting if you do not take an inerrant view are, the fact of Adam, the reality of the fall, the reality of sin, Jonah as a prophet, Noah and his ark, Moses authorship of the first five books of the Bible, that Isaiah wrote the book named after him..... It is therefore critical to be 100% clear on your attitude to God's Word.

This is illustrated in today's world with the down-playing of the Pentateuch in liberal colleges. As people down play the authority of the words of Moses, there will be the down playing of sin and evil, and their relabeling as “lifestyle choices”; eg, adultery, homosexuality, divorce and remarriage, and violent civil disobedience. Many mainline denominations will not take a stand on these subjects because they no longer believe the words of scripture anywhere in the Bible to be authoritative – they see them as “guidelines only”. As a result these churches tend to go liberal in a generation, and become hymn singing Rotary Clubs with nothing to say to sinful men and women – other than – “you are accepted....”.

There are some difficult things to study in the Bible, and there will be times when we don't have all the facts before us. If we cannot explain things, we should realise we have not got all the facts. The Bible however does teach that it is without error, so where we doubt or feel we don't have enough information the challenge is to faith in the text. The challenge for us is to study harder and sit with any problem in faith, believing that it will be resolved in time.

**LIMIT OF INERRANCY**

We limit inerrancy to the original manuscripts. All copies of and translations from the original document depend on the skill of the translators as well as their background and theological beliefs. God's hand however has protected the Scriptures over the years. There is no doctrinal error or point of confusion within the textual differences we have within the presently discovered old manuscripts. Even with MSS variations they do not lead to any theological errors or issues.

**Have people worried about this before?** - Yes, Augustine in the early Church stated that the greatest catastrophe would occur if we believe anything false is found in the sacred books. Thomas Aquinas notes – “nothing false can underlie the literal sense of Scripture”. Luther states – “the Scriptures have never erred”. Wesley - “if there be any error in the Bible it did not come from the God of truth”.

In the last five decades or so this issue has become a major problem. Big issues are fought at different time in Church History over different doctrines. For the first four centuries Satan's attack was on the person of Christ, during the late Middle Ages the doctrine of justification by faith was rediscovered, in the last fifty years the Bible and its trustworthiness/inerrancy is the battlefield.

**THREE POSSIBLE VIEWS**

**[a] The Bible is infallible but not inerrant.** There are historic and scientific errors in the Bible but it is suitable for faith and practice. This is the view of most of the major denominations.

**[b] The Lausanne Covenant** declares it to be inerrant in all that it affirms. This is a covenant of evangelicals, which implies that it may not be true on what it does not affirm directly or very specifically.

**[c] The International Council on Biblical Inerrancy** states that Scripture is without error or fault in all its teachings and in everything that God's word has said. We would subscribe to this teaching. We make no apology as a College for taking this strongest of positions. We will not compromise on this as we believe it is critical in our day.

**GOD'S PRESERVATION OF THE BIBLE**

In everything that God's Word has said it is God's Word, God has said it, God has preserved it, so although we haven't got the original manuscripts, we know by God's wonderful preservation of so many ancient manuscripts that we have revelation that is accurate, trustworthy and reliable. He has inspired it, He has preserved it, and it is without error. We have God speaking through man and speaking without error. God and man worked in such a way from an inspirational viewpoint that it is without error.

Everyone wrestles with the relationship between the Divine and human authors of the Word of God. The Divine must not be so over emphasized as to obliterate the human, nor must it be allowed to be so human as to allow errors. The authorship of the Scriptures requires balance. People today hold both extremes, we need to hold to the middle, balanced view.

The debate over the scriptures is mirrored in the debate over the person of Christ. In the first century the church got involved in the doctrine of Docetism, which claimed that the Lord was not really flesh but just a spirit. Also there was another group the Ebionites who stated that he was only a man and not God. He however was both fully man and fully God in one person forever - the hypostatic union. The church had to argue this issue through to clearly maintain the biblical truth, and just so we do also with the subject of Inerrancy.

**CONCLUSION**

1. Here we have a book in our hand. It is God's Word through the agency of over forty men through 2000 plus years, but it is written in such a way and comes to us inerrant.
2. In the same way the Lord Jesus Christ is trustworthy as a man, as our Saviour and as the Lord God.
3. The Bible is God's Word through Holy Spirit filled man without error resulting in a sinless product.

**INERRANCY AND JESUS CHRIST**

The evidence from Scripture itself is clear. In **Matthew 4:1-11** during His temptation in the wilderness by Satan the Lord Jesus Christ quoted the authority of Scripture. Satan had questioned the Word of God right from the beginning, as shown in Genesis 2 where he intimated that God was being unfair not allowing man to eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Satan perverts Scripture and his main attack is against Scripture. [Matthew 4:4 cf Deuteronomy 8:3, Matthew 4:10 cf Psalm 91:11,12, Matthew 4:4, 7, 10]. If Satan can get us to distort the Word or ignore the Word he wins.

Jesus Christ stated and quoted many of the Old Testament characters as real historical people and indicated that he believed that their exploits were factual as well. These characters included such people as Moses, Jonah, Jacob as well as places such as Sodom and Gomorrah.

By not accepting the Word of God as literal the liberals are saying that God is wrong and are implying that they know more than our Lord. If they say He was confused about Moses, Jonah and Isaiah they could also say the same about His claim to be God. **John 10: 31-38.**

The Word of God is minutely inspired and authoritatively inspired; we believe you can depend on it. The Lord's attitude to the Scriptures is absolute and we must stand with him if we would claim his name. **Matthew 22:41-46.**

**The Promise of Inerrancy – Matthew 5:17-18, John 5:18, cf 10:34**

**John 10:31-38**

V 24 – Jesus claims to be God.

V 34 refers to Psalm 82:6 concentrating on the word “gods”.

V 35 it is authoritatively inspired. “If” - 1st class condition in Greek = “and its true”. These people are about to stone him, for they know he is claiming to be Messiah – God become man - Emmanuel. Isaiah 7:12-17.

**Matthew 22:23-33**

Sadducees did not believe in resurrection but asked a question on it just to trip Jesus up.

Jesus says they are ignorant v 29 and the question is ridiculous v 30, Exodus 3:6.

V 32 cf John 10:34. From this the Lord assumed the truth of God's appearance to Moses. He believes that every word could be trusted and the doctrinal truth involved was sound. Jesus is clear - the Bible cannot be inaccurate.

**SOME APPARENT PROBLEMS**

The “errantists”, those who believe there are errors, and the “inerrantists” who believe there are no errors, clash over a number of areas. One is looking for errors, the other is confidence that there are no errors and what is read is to be applied every day into the very fabric of each life.

There are locations with apparent discrepancies, conflicting numbers, differences in parallel passages, and allegedly unscientific statements. We believe that a thorough study of each of the texts in their context will eliminate all supposed problems. The Hebrew “scribal errors” are so clearly so, that none create problems at all.

The Word of God is God breathed [inspired]. We would expect it to be totally accurate. We would expect it to be preserved inerrantly, with any scribal problem easily spotted so as not to detract from the text.

The inerrantist assumes that we have not got all the evidence before us. We see many examples of later discoveries solving apparent “errors” in the text. An example was the critics of the Bible in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, who said there was no such thing as a Hittite Empire. A few years later archaeologists in the Middle East excavated an area of Turkey – Hattusas - showing that there was a Hittite Empire, and that all the cities Paul had recorded visits to existed exactly as Luke had written about them. The liberal's history books had to be revised.

The same could be said of Sodom and Gomorrah, for until the discovery of the Ebla tablets there was no extra-biblical reference to these cities. The discovery of the archive in this and other ancient cities (Ugarit, and at later dates in the Amarna literature) turned up references to all the places recorded in the Genesis account of the life of Abraham and beyond, proving that the author of the source documents of Genesis had lived at the time of the events he recorded.

**SOME EXAMPLES**

**[1] Old Testament**

[a] The two accounts of Creation - Genesis 1:11-12 cf Genesis 2:5

[b] Who was Cain's wife - The fact of Adam and Eve - Matthew 19:39, Luke 3:38, Jude 14 - They had many children – Genesis 5:4 -They came from the hand of God without mutant genes. - The first marriages were between brothers and sisters and were genetically safe at that point.

[c] Laver in 2 Chronicles 4:2 – 5 - Did the Holy Spirit know the value of pi? One cubit is 18 inches Circumference = 30 cubits or 540 inches, Diameter 10 cubits = 180 inches - Formula shows that circumference would be 565 inches - 2 Chronicles 4:5 – hands breadth = 4 inches, inside diameter 180-8 = 172 inches - Revised circumference 540 inches.

**[2] Old and New Testaments**

[a] The Time between the Exodus and the Dedication of the Temple - 1 Kings 6:1 – 480 years cf Acts 13:18-21 – 573 years

[b] The number of people killed - Numbers 25:9 [24,000] cf 1 Corinthians 10:8 [23, 000]

**[3] New Testament**

[a] To take a staff or not – Matthew 10:9-10 [ktaomai], Mark 6:8 , Luke 9:3 [airo]

[b] Zechariah or Jeremiah Matthew 27:9,10 cf Zechariah 11:12-13

[c] Death of Judas and the Field of Blood – Acts 1:18 cf Matthew 27:5

By close examination of the texts these apparent anomalies can be seen to pose no problems whatsoever.

**DOCTRINE**

**BIBLE: INERRANCY**

1. The Scriptures are quoted as the absolute standard of truth. (Daniel 10:21, John 10:35)
2. The source of the Scriptures is God; there is no imperfection or error permissible with God. (2 Timothy 3:16, 2 Peter 1:20-21, 1 John 1:5, James 1:17)
3. The Scriptures therefore becomes the final authority in the resolution of disputes. (Romans 4:3, 11:2, Galatians 4:30)
4. The Scriptures are seen as authoritative. (Matthew 26:31, Mark 14:27, Luke 4:8, Acts 23:5 Romans 11:8)
5. The person who does not know the Scriptures is in error. (Mark 12:24)
6. The Lord believed the Scriptures:-
  - a) He implied there was only one Isaiah. (Isaiah 61:1,2 cf. Luke 4:16-21, Isaiah 53:1, and Isaiah 6:1-4, 9-10 cf. John 12:38-41)
  - b) Jonah was a prophet not a myth. (Matthew 12:39, Luke 11:29)
  - c) Daniel was a prophet not an historian. (Matthew 24:15, Mark 13:14)
  - d) Adam and Eve were created. (Matthew 19:8)
7. The Bible is called God's Word (Mark 7:13, Luke 5:1, 11:28, John 10:35, Acts 6:7, 12:24, Romans 10:17)

**LESSON 5 - INTERPRETATION**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
5	Bible – Interpretation	2 Timothy 2:14-19 Galatians 1:6-9 2Timothy 1:8-13	Inspiration: Fulfilled Prophecy Interpretation Consecration

**INTRODUCTION**

In **2 Timothy 3:16** - Four things that Paul emphasizes are [a] Study, unremitting study with application to life; [b] Prove yourself by action working out the truth in daily life, or be deemed unapproved, [c] You become a worker with a tool of trade in the form of God's Word by daily practise; [d] Rightly dividing/handling the Word of Truth.

The word translated “Rightly dividing” is a present active participle of the verb "*orthotomeo*" which means to plough a straight furrow, or to cut a straight line. Both the farmer and military engineer are in view here. Consistency and order, following accepted methodology, is the key concept, and this applies directly to the way we handle the Word of God.

The study of the principles of interpretation is called hermeneutics while analysis of a passage is called exegesis.

Interpretation of any passage must “cut a straight line”, and that means it must be an accurate, consistent interpretation of the text. It is like the farmer who ploughs the field all the same way to the same depth and the same basic line. You need to be consistent and persistent. Our attitude towards inspiration, revelation, and inerrancy is the foundation of our attitude towards interpretation. We are not to be careless, flippant, or casual with our interpretation, nor change our methodology to suit our beliefs, but let the text speak to us consistently and directly, with the context being the guide.

Preaching is accurately undertaking the interpretation of the Word and teaching it correctly, **Galatians 1:6-9**. You can be “cursed” (judged in time) if you handle the Word of God lightly and erroneously. You are as a pastor-teacher in danger of divine discipline if you share the ignorance that you have wrongly deduced by your faulty study with others.

### **WHAT WE MUST DO?**

- [a] Walk consistently in the filling of the Holy Spirit and in prayer.
- [b] Consistent hard study of the Word is called for by the pastor- teacher or teacher.
- [c] Thirdly, prayerfully prepare your study.
- [d] Finally, you should teach it with careful attention to detail and with authority.

### **INTERPRETATION**

There are four historic methods of interpretation – [a] Literal, [b] Allegorical [c] Semi Allegorical [d] Theological

**[a] Literal** - The Bible is to be taken, using the normal rules of grammar, literally. Literal interpretation means that where the Scripture is obviously an allegory it should be literally taken in that form e.g. **John 10:7-10**. Where it is not, it should be taken as a true story. **Luke 16:19-31**. Some things are recorded as lies, some as pictures, some as parables and some as normal narrative. Each passage is to be interpreted in the way that the context indicates it is to be taken. We have a literal interpretation approach. This type of interpretation will have theological significance. Amongst other things, it will cause the person to believe in a literal Millennium and distinguish between Israel and the Church.

The Principle

“When the common sense of a passage makes plain sense, seek no other sense, lest you produce nonsense”. Dr David L Cooper. Usually this form of interpretation goes hand in hand with acceptance of a verbally inspired Bible.

**[b] Allegorical** - This method, that uses symbolic meanings for many plain words, makes Scripture say something other than its obvious meaning. If you decide to allegorize you should ask why you do so? Perhaps it is because you do not wish to take the text literally. It is dangerous to tell God’s Word what it says, rather than simply hear and obey it’s literal meaning! Many within the ancient Roman Church in the 3<sup>rd</sup> century ascribed to this method. Many of the denominations such as some within the Reformed Movement, Anglicans, and even some Baptists and Methodists still follow this format. They make spiritual word pictures from the text important rather than taking a literal interpretation.

This method came to a peak with Origen in Egypt during the 3rd century who used a combination of Greek and Jewish philosophy as his “meaning/interpretation library”, including the works of Plato and Philo. If used consistently this type of interpretation would reduce the Bible to near fiction, for the normal meaning of the words would be replaced by whatever meaning the interpreter gives to the symbols.

**[c] Semi literal**. - this is, as is the case of Allegorical approach, an inconsistent approach where the interpretation is often coloured by preconceived ideas and concepts. What we desire to believe we interpret....

Very few evangelicals use the full allegorical method. Evangelicals who use the semi literal method usually treat prophecy by allegory (27% of the Bible) and the rest of the Bible literally. This tends towards Amillennialism.

**[d] Theological** – This method is allied to the semi allegorical method and is controlled by the Theological framework applied by the interpreter. This leads to “reading into” the text one’s own belief system.

### **REASONS FOR SUPPORT OF THE LITERAL METHOD**

**[a] The purpose of language**. God is the author of language as it is the means of communication. If the Bible does not communicate there is something wrong with the author, but as the author is God the Holy Spirit there is nothing wrong with the Scriptures. The Scriptures are therefore to be taken in a literal and objective manner.

**[b] Objectivity** – switching from literal to other forms of interpretation, unless the context directs, will give different messages from the Bible than the plain truth.

**[c] Prophecy** - There are over 300 prophecies of the Old Testament referring to the Lord. It can be shown that the Lord fulfilled all but 7 of them literally at His first advent vindicating the literalists position. Micah 5:2, Malachi 3:1, Isaiah 9:1-2, 42:1, 53:5, 61:1, Psalm 16:9-10, 22:1, 15-16, 18, 31:5, 34:20, 68:18, Zechariah 13:7.

A question can be posed to all who read the prophetic passages about the Lord's First Advent. Would you have gone to see Him? Only if you literally believed He would come! Would you have joined the Magi? Only if you are a literalist!

### **PRINCIPLES OF INTERPRETATION**

[a] Grammatical – study the grammar.

[b] Context – Study the context.

[c] Scripture with Scripture - Compare with other areas of the Bible.

[d] Progressive Revelation – God may add to or change – get the time sequence – The Lamb, Pork – 1 Timothy 4:3

Examples Matthew 10:5-7, cf 28:18-20, Luke 9:3 cf 22:36, Genesis 17:10, Galatians 5:2, Exodus 26:8 cf Acts 20:7, John 1:17 cf 16:24 cf 2 Corinthians 3:7-11

**Summary** - It is God who desired to give man His Word, it was God who gave the language so that we could understand and communicate. He gave the Bible to communicate to us - not confuse us. He gave us the communication plainly and clearly, as this is the way that people communicate.

God is behind man's thinking and is not going to write His book of revelation and inspiration in such a way that the very rules of language that He is behind are going to be broken.

### **SEVEN PRINCIPLES OF BIBLE INTERPRETATION.**

[a] Consider the Bible as a whole, it is God's unfolding drama of redemption. Your interpretation should be on the basis of God's Word having a redemptive theme.

[b] Consider each book distinctively. You need to understand the different characteristics of each book.

[c] Consider to whom the book or the passage was written.

[d] Consider the bigger context, the historical and geographical context.

[e] Consider other biblical passages with the same subject. Because the Bible is God's Word, He has got it right and got it all together. Consider like with like and if the different passages tie together with the same interpretation you probably have got it right.

[f] Discover the exact meanings of the original words used. Textural variations do not affect one doctrine.

[g] Beware of personal prejudice, do not read your own preconceptions into any passages, let the Holy Spirit correct your theology as you study.

[h] One old saint also asked these questions. "Does your interpretation make you love the Lord more, desire the salvation of the lost more, desire to assist your brethren more, make you keen in your desire to serve the church?" If you answer, "YES!", to each of these questions then your interpretation is probably correct, certainly it won't be fatally wrong.

### **DOCTRINES**

#### **INSPIRATION: FULFILLED PROPHECY PROOF OF INSPIRATION**

All scripture is inspired by God (2 Peter 1:19-21) Therefore all Biblical prophecies must come true. This is demonstrated in prophecies already fulfilled.

1. Reuben would be unstable and lose his rights as firstborn. Prophecy (Genesis 49:3-4) - Fulfilment (Numbers 26:5-11)
2. Simeon would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:1-9)
3. Levi would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfilment (Joshua 21:4-7)
4. Judah would become the ruler over the nation of Israel. Prophecy (Genesis 49:8-12) - Fulfilment (Numbers 10:14, Joshua 15:1 Revelation 5:5)
5. Zebulun would receive an allotment of land on the coast and it would reach down to Sidon. Prophecy (Genesis 49:13) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:10-16) as well as history when they took the land to the south of their area previously allocated to Asher and their influence reached right down to Sidon.

6. Issachar would be given a fertile area between two mountains and would be a servant. Prophecy (Genesis 49:14-15) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:17-22)
7. Dan would be a full member of Israel but would lead the nation away in idolatry. Prophecy (Genesis 49:16-18) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:40-48) and the fact that idolatry in the nation was led by this tribe. It is also of interest that his tribe is not mentioned as having any part in the 144,000 witnesses in (Revelation 7).
8. Gad would be a warrior tribe. Prophecy (Genesis 49:19) - Fulfilment (1 Chronicles 5:18-20, 12:8)
9. Asher would have a rich and fertile land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:20, Deuteronomy 33:24-25) - Fulfilment - History - Asher enjoyed a rich and fertile area together in more recent times successful oil exploration.
10. Naphtali would be quick to spread good news Prophecy (Genesis 49:21) - Fulfilment (Matthew 4:13-15) as Jesus began his ministry in Naphtali and most of the disciples who gave the good news came from that region.
11. Joseph would receive great blessing. Prophecy (Genesis 49:22-26) - Fulfilment (Deut 33:13-17)
12. Benjamin would be a ferocious group Prophecy. (Genesis 49:27) - Fulfilment (Judges 19, 20:21-47)
13. Joshua and Caleb to enter into the Promised Land after 40 years wandering. Prophecy (Numbers 14:24, 30) - Fulfilment (Joshua 3:7,17 14:6-12)
14. Sisera would be defeated by a woman. Prophecy (Judges 4:9) - Fulfilment (Judges 4:21)
15. Hophni and Phineas would die on the same day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:34) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 4:11)
16. The priesthood would be removed from the family of Eli. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:27-36, 3:11-14) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 2:26-27)
17. Saul was to be the first king of Israel and would save the nation from the Philistines. Prophecy (1 Samuel 9:15-16) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 11;14)
18. Saul's kingdom would not continue. Prophecy (1 Samuel 13:14, 15:28, 24:20) - Fulfilment (2 Samuel 3:1, 5:1-3)
19. Saul to die in battle on a certain day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 28:19) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 31:1-6)
20. Solomon to build the Temple not David. Prophecy (1 Chronicles 17:1-12) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 7:51)
21. The sword not to depart from David's house because of sin. Prophecy (2 Samuel 12:10-12) - Fulfilment (2 Samuel 13:28-29, 16:21-22)
22. The bones of Jeroboam's pagan priests to be burnt upon the false altar that Jeroboam had constructed. Prophecy (1 Kings 13:1-3) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 23:4-6)
23. Jeroboam's dynasty to be destroyed. Prophecy (1 Kings 14:10-11) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 15:27-28)
24. Ahab to be victorious over the Syrians. Prophecy (1 Kings 20:28) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 20:29-30)
25. Ahab to die in battle for killing Naboth. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19, 22:17) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 22:37)
26. The dogs would then lick his blood from his chariot. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 22:38)
27. Jezebel to be eaten by wild dogs. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:23, 2 Kings 9:10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 9:30-37)
28. Elisha to receive a double portion of Elijah's spirit. Prophecy (2 Kings 2:9) - Fulfilment demonstrated by the fact that the Bible records that Elisha performed twice as many miracles as Elijah.
29. Naaman to recover from his leprosy. Prophecy (2 Kings 5:3,8,10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 5:14)
30. The starving inhabitants of Samaria to receive an abundance of food in twenty four hours. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:1) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 7:16-17)
31. An arrogant aide to the king to see the miracle but not to eat of the food. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:2,19) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 7:17,20)

32. Beb-Hadad, a Syrian king to recover from his sickness, but die anyway.. Prophecy (2 Kings 8:10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 8:15)
  33. Jehu to have four generations on the throne of northern kingdom. Prophecy (2 Kings 10:30) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 15:12)
  34. Jehu's dynasty to then be destroyed. Prophecy (Hosea 1:4) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 15:8-12)
  35. Joash to defeat the Syrians on three occasions. Prophecy (2 Kings 13:18-19) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 13:25)
  36. Jehoram to suffer with a disease because of sin. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 21:15) - Fulfilment (2 Chronicles 21:18-19)
  37. Amaziah to die because of his idolatry. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 25:16) - Fulfilment (2 Chronicles 25:20-27)
  38. Sennacherib to be assassinated in his own land. Prophecy (Isaiah 37:7) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 37:37-38)
  39. Sennacherib's attempt to invade Jerusalem not to be successful. Prophecy (Isaiah 37::33-35) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 37:36-37)
  40. Hezekiah to be healed of a terminal disease. Prophecy (Isaiah 38:5) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 38:9)
  41. Cyrus to allow the Jews to go back to Jerusalem. Prophecy (Isaiah 44:28) - Fulfilment (Ezra 1:1-2)
  42. Zedekiah to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 21:7) - Fulfilment (Jeremiah 52:8-11)
  43. Jehoahaz to die in Egyptian captivity and not return to Judah. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:10-12) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 23:33-34)
  44. Jehoiachin to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:25) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 24:15)
  45. Coniah was told that no seed of his would sit on the throne of David. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:28-30) - Fulfilment - historical. This prophecy is in apparent contradiction to the Davidic Covenant of (2 Samuel 7:8-16) where David was promised a "son" who would reign forever on his throne. This apparent contradiction is solved by the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus Christ as Mary was descended from David via Nathan. (Luke 3:23-31)
  46. Hananiah, a false prophet to die within a year. Prophecy (Jeremiah 28:15-16) - Fulfilment (Jeremiah 28:17)
  47. Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt. Prophecy (Jeremiah 43:9-13) - Fulfilment - history
  48. Nebuchadnezzar to defeat the Egyptians at Carchemish. Prophecy (Jeremiah 46) - Fulfilment - history.
  49. Nebuchadnezzar to be given the mind of an animal because of pride. Prophecy (Daniel 4:19-27) - Fulfilment (Daniel 4:28-37)
  50. Belshazzar to have his kingdom removed from him. Prophecy (Daniel 5:5, 25-28) - Fulfilment (Daniel 5:30)
  51. Alexander the Great to establish a world empire in a very short time. Prophecy (Daniel 2:32-39, 7:6, 8:5-8, 21, 11:3) - Fulfilment - history.
  52. Alexander to defeat the Persians - Prophecy (Daniel 8:5-8) - Fulfilment - history
  53. Alexander to die at the height of his power and his kingdom to be divided into four parts. Prophecy (Daniel 8:8, 22, 11:4) - Fulfilment - history tells us that at the height of his power Alexander died of a fever in Babylon at the age of 33.
- After a period of some twenty years of internal struggle and fighting the eleven generals of the Greek army who had survived Alexander were reduced to four called in Scripture the four winds of heaven, Ptolemy, Seluchus, Cassander and Lysimachus.
54. Antiochus Epiphanes to persecute the Jews and desecrate their Temple. Prophecy (Daniel 8:11-25) - Fulfilment - history. The whole of (Daniel 11) represents historical prophecies of the Greek dynasties based on Ptolemy and Seluchus which lasted until the time of Julius Caesar with Cleopatra being the last Greek ruler of Egypt. [SEE Prophecy: Prophecy and History Fulfilled]
  55. Zacharias would be mute until the birth of John the Baptist. Prophecy (Luke 1:20) - Fulfilment (Luke 1:57-64)
  56. John the Baptist to be the herald for the Lord Jesus Christ. Prophecy (Luke 1:76-77) - Fulfilment (Matthew 3:1-11, Luke 3:2-6)



57. Simeon to live until he had seen the Messiah. Prophecy (Luke 2:25-26) - Fulfilment (Luke 2:28-30)
58. Peter would deny Jesus Christ. Prophecy (John 13:38) - Fulfilment (John 18:24-27)
59. Peter to die as a martyr. Prophecy (John 21:18-19, 2 Peter 1 :12-14) - Fulfilment - history
60. Judas to give himself over to Satan. Prophecy (John 6:70) - Fulfilment (John 13:27)
61. Judas to betray Jesus. Prophecy (John 13:21) - Fulfilment (John 18:2-5)
62. Paul would suffer a lot for the Lord Jesus Christ. Prophecy (Acts 9:16) - Fulfilment (2 Corinthians 11:23-28, 12:7-10, Philippians 1:29-30)
63. Paul would be a minister to the Gentiles. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfilment (Romans 11:13, Ephesians 3:1)
64. Paul would preach before kings. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfilment (Acts 24-26)
65. Paul would go to Rome. Prophecy (Acts 23:11) - Fulfilment (Acts 28:16)

### **INTERPRETATION**

In receiving revelation, which comes through the Holy Spirit as He teaches the Word of God to a believer in Christ, certain basic rules are necessary in order to understand the Word of God. The science of interpretation is called hermeneutics. We believe that Interpretation should be undertaken using the following concepts.

1. The purpose of the Bible as a whole: - each text must be interpreted in the light of the total content of Scripture as the Bible does not contradict but complements itself.
2. The particular message of each book of the Bible: - the interpretation of a book must be in conformity with its purpose. In this way Ecclesiastes will need to be interpreted in a different way to Psalms or the Revelation.
3. To whom addressed: - while all Scripture is equally inspired not all Scripture is equally applicable. As an example in David's day, one could plead with the Lord that the Holy Spirit would not be taken away from you (Psalm 51:11). However since Pentecost the Holy Spirit has been permanently in all believers and therefore cannot be removed thus such a prayer is no longer valid today. (John 14:16,17).
4. The context: - review the surrounding text as to the context and interpret in relation to that context.
5. Similar teachings elsewhere in the Bible where study of one book may help interpretation in a related book, cf. Daniel and Revelation.
6. Accurate exegesis from the original languages.
7. Literal Interpretation: - unless otherwise guided the person should assume a literal interpretation rather than a symbolic.
8. Guard against prejudice: - each passage must be allowed to say what it does even if it fails to immediately resolve apparent lack of harmonization with other passages in the Bible.

### **CONSECRATION**

1. Consecration means full surrender of self to God. (Romans 6:13)
2. This is the attitude of "denying self" and "not my will, but yours be done" (Matthew 16:24, 26:39, Galatians 2:20).
3. This is the only acceptable gift to God. (Romans 12:1,2)
4. The consecration of the Temple is a picture of the believer's life: the Outer Court (the body), the Holy Place (the soul) and the Holy of Holies (spirit). Matt 5:14-16, 1 Cor 3:16-17, 2 Cor 6:16.
5. You are indwelt by the Holy Spirit, and therefore must be set apart as a holy vessel (Romans 12:1-2 cf 1 Kings 8:1-11)

## LESSON 6 – THE CANON OF SCRIPTURE

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
6	Bible – Canonicity	Matthew 5:17-20 Luke 11:51 2 Peter 3:14-18	Canonicity Greek Grammar Hebrew Grammar

### INTRODUCTION

The Bible has only been in its present form as far as contents go since the late 300s AD. Prior to that the churches only had scattered manuscripts as far as the New Testament was concerned and a completed Old Testament in the form of the Greek Septuagint that had been available since the 3<sup>rd</sup> Century BC. We have one book today. In the past they did not.

When you are reading commentaries or other books to get the background to the Bible you need to undertake a thorough background study as to the ancient history of the place and period of each book you study, to be able to gauge as to the accuracy of any commentary. Commentaries are the works of women and men, and may be good, accurate and spiritual, but they may also contain errors or incomplete information, indeed all will be incomplete in some way. Always compare a number of commentaries and explore the history of the bible book in a number of proven texts.

For instance there is one modern text book which says that the Septuagint was not written until 300 AD, which is in error, as it was written by and completed well before 200 BC as quotations from it and references to it occur well before this date. Beware of strong statements by people who are too sure of themselves over small matters two thousand years back in time, unless they back up their words with some evidence. Be looking for evidence for statements made – do not be gullible. The KJV Only groups are very definite about things they believe, but they are wrong historically.

### CANON

“Canon” means a measuring rule or standard. It comes from the Greek word kanon. The canon of Scripture is the rule of life – Galatians 6:16, Philippians 3:16.

As Bible believers we see this book as God's book, that God made sure that he got every book, every letter, in that book, and that only what was His Word got in. The books of the Bible were canonical as soon as they were written. It did not require a church council to finally select it; they just recognized the truth. Canon meant both the complete Bible with the 66 books and also those books that come to be the rule of life. The councils simply recognized the books that were canonical; they didn't make them special.

The Council of Carthage in 397 AD was the venue for the finalizing the Church's acceptance of the canon. No further book could be added in after that stage. It should be remembered that Paul did not write only 12 - 13 letters. He wrote many more, although the rest were judged as not canonical as they were not recognized by the church as inspired by God **as Scripture** in the way the others were.

In church history we can also look at bishop's letters of the 1st and 2nd centuries AD, some from the last years of the Apostle John's ministry, and written by great bishops and martyrs who knew John personally. These are very interesting but they are not canonical. These letters quote from Scripture, but are not Scripture themselves.

### THE ANCIENT WORLD

In the ancient world very few people had horses so that they either traveled by boat or walked. The normal speed of communication was therefore walking pace. In addition unless a person was very wealthy few in the ancient world owned a book as such. Any books which existed were in the form of a scroll or codex which was perhaps a metre or so long and 300 mm wide. Every book was hand copied. It was therefore very expensive to buy books. People would make their own copies of manuscripts they had access to for their own use, and even these were valuable, as writing surfaces, (papyrus from Egypt, or vellum – made from the skins of animals), was expensive.

In Rome for example there were, at the time of Paul, some 20+house churches as well as over possibly 100+ synagogues in the city of Rome. Paul writes one letter and it goes by one person to the city of Rome and is taken by hand around the house churches. The messenger reads Paul's letter and gives an exposition on the letter to each house church. He may stay in that suburb for a couple of days during which time the letter is copied by hand by someone in the church.

The original now goes to the next house church and the same procedure is followed. As a result a number of spelling mistakes crept in causing a slight variety in the copies of the letters, however with the original being the one from which the copy was taken these variations were not major. It has been found that 95% of all variations in the texts that have survived are “spelling mistakes”. Often these are not “mistakes”, but just local variant spellings.

The Roman State tried to eliminate Christianity around the turn of the first century with one of the major areas of suppression being book burning. All the leaders of a house church would select one of their number to be their leader and bishop over a particular group. The Romans would try and capture the bishop, torture him and try to get him to divulge who the elders were and where they kept the sacred books. They thought that if they could destroy the sacred books and kill the leadership they could eliminate Christianity.

By the end of the second century many of the copies of the Scriptures had been destroyed and a number of heretical letters had been written. There were many false teachers in the early church, as seen in Galatians with all the heresies which we have now occurring in the first century. There was also great missionary activity with many people being saved.

A Christian in the Black Sea area said to the Roman authorities that all they were leaving them was their empty pagan temples. Pliny the Younger, the Roman Governor of Bithynia, and great letter writer, wrote that it appeared that everyone was becoming a Christian. While he was Governor of Bythynia in 114 AD he tried to eliminate the Christians.

The false writings by the heretics were also being claimed as Scripture by themselves. This was causing a lot of confusion, thus there was increasing demand from the bishops of the various churches to assemble and decide what was acceptable and what was not. Eventually, with Christianity becoming the official State religion of the Roman Empire at the time of Constantine, persecution stopped, and through a number of church councils the sacred writings were finally gathered together, consolidated and agreed to.

This is also the time when we get the great codexes, such as Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, which many scholars believe is the best source of material. It is likely that these single volume Codexes of the scriptures were ordered made by Constantine as a result of these first Councils. By the year 400 AD therefore a person could have one book to have in the church as the Bible. They had tried to ensure that the Codex versions were as accurate as possible, as they were made for the Emperor and had to be right for him. Like all things made by human beings there are variants of spelling and grammar.

### **OLD TESTAMENT**

How was the canon formed? With the Old Testament there is internal evidence from the Lord Himself, who saw the Law of Moses being authoritative, as well as quoting from many of the other books. Internally also authors of the Old Testament books quoted from other books.

[a] From the Law – Joshua 1:7-8, 1 Kings 2:3, Ezra 6:18, Nehemiah 13:1 Daniel 9:11, Malachi 4:4.

[b] From the Prophets – Joshua 6:26, cf 1 Kings 16:34, Joshua 24:29-33 cf Judges 2:8-9, 2 Chronicles 36:22-23 cf Ezra 1:1-4, Daniel 9:2 cf Jeremiah 25:11,12

[c] From Malachi 4:5 there is an indication that the prophetic witness would end with Malachi and not recommence until an Elijah type prophet such as John the Baptist. Matthew 17:11-12

### **THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS**

The Dead Sea scrolls are the writings of a sect/group that flourished circa 150 BC-70AD when they were eliminated by the Romans just after the fall of Jerusalem in 70AD. These people were not Christians but many of the texts refer to or are part of the Old Testament. Some of the oldest written copies of the Old Testament are from amongst these scrolls that they hid in caves as the Romans attacked them.

About 175 of the 500 Dead Sea Scrolls are biblical. Most famous of these is the Isaiah scroll, which is housed in a special building in Jerusalem today. The sect was rigorous and the text is therefore very rigorously copied as well. The Daniel scroll was written by the same scribe that wrote the Isaiah scroll, indicating that they considered Daniel a prophet.

The KJV is translated from the Masoretic text, which is from the 10th century AD, but comparison between the Scriptural section of the Dead Sea scrolls and that text shows a remarkable consistency. The scrolls found gave positive evidence of canonicity to all the Old Testament books other than Chronicles, Esther and the Song of Solomon.

### **OTHER SOURCES**

The non canonical books in the Old Testament or Apocrypha were accepted as valuable books but are not canonical. They were however accepted into the Roman Catholic Bible at the Council of Trent in the 16th century.

A similar group of books called the Pseudepigrapha were rejected as non canonical and heretical/false as far as the New Testament was concerned. Satan wanted to get false books into the Bible and thereby water it down but the early Councils recognized the problems these strange texts from the heretical groups produced. Many of these false “gospels” have survived and can be studied – and they are strange indeed.... Satan has not had an original idea for centuries and the false teaching of these books is repeated in many modern cults and cultic groups.

A number of writers in the ancient world also noted those books which were considered sacred by some so we have lists from many sources of the books people considered "God Breathed" and those considered "beneficial".

The Jewish writer Josephus (Non-Christian) around 90 AD recognized the 22 Jewish books that became the 39 books of the Old Testament as sacred.

In the last years of the first century a prominent group of rabbis met at Jamnia and produced a list which left out Esther, Song of Solomon and Ecclesiastes, but recognized all the other Old Testament books. It is interesting that these are the books not found at Qumran also.

The Church Fathers accepted the 39 books of the Old Testament. The apocrypha whilst acknowledged by Augustine as important was not accepted into the Catholic Bible until it was at the Council of Trent in 1546. Most of the protestants accepted it also, and it was published in the first KJV in 1611 for use in the Anglican churches, although not as part of the later editions for private use.

### **EVIDENCE OF THE NEW TESTAMENT**

[a] Quotation of the Old Testament in the New. All books except Esther, Ecclesiastes, and Song of Solomon are quoted in this way. The apocrypha is never quoted, although an allusion to it can be argued for in Jude.

[b] Matthew 5:18 - seen as authoritative by the Lord Jesus Christ. This includes all the Old Testament.

[c] Luke 11:51 from the death of Abel to Zechariah Abel's death is in Genesis 4, Zechariah's death in 2 Chronicles 24. In the Hebrew canon order Genesis was the first and 2 Chronicles, not Malachi, the last.

### **TESTS FOR CANONICITY**

They had three tests for every letter when it came for consideration for inclusion in the Bible.

[a] A test of authority - was this written by a prophet, a leader in Israel or a lawgiver as far as the Old Testament was concerned or an apostle, or a close associate of an apostle in the case of the New.

[b] Test of uniqueness – ring true. Was it unique? – Was there the evidence of inspiration?

[c] The test of acceptance by all apostolic churches. They had to be accepted by the churches.

#### **New Testament Canon**

[a] The witness of the apostolic period – Colossians 4:16, 1 Thessalonians 4:15. 1 Timothy 5:18 cf Deuteronomy 25:4 cf Luke 10:7, 2 Peter 3:16

[b] The witness of the first and second century where church fathers recognized all 27 books as canonical.

[c] The Council of Carthage in 397 where the New Testament canon was finally set in place.

Many liberals will only accept 3-4 letters ascribed to Paul as being Pauline but because the Church Fathers went into this so thoroughly, we must deduce that when we have something in the New Testament, there is a very good reason for it to be in there.

Do not have liberal commentaries on your shelf, have conservative ones. If you study passages thoroughly you will find that your faith in the Bible is on very solid ground. The onus of proof is on the liberals, and so do not waste too much time with the doubting works of these unbelievers. I make no apology for my rejection of them, having had to study their rubbish for my PHD – they are a waste of time, and a waste of space on any shelf.

The people meeting at Carthage said that the Pauline Epistles were written by Paul, and being much closer to the situation their statements should have significant weight.

What we have in the canon of Scripture is inspired and has been protected by God through the ages.

### **DOCTRINES**

#### **BIBLE: CANONICITY**

DEFINITION - Canon - KANON (Greek) - a measuring rule or standard.

1. Why do we need a canon of Scripture?

a) So that believers in every generation might have complete revelation from God.

- b) That man might have God's Word in writing. (1 Corinthians 2:16)
- c) A need for the preservation and circulation of sacred writing in the time of oppression.
- d) That people might know what was scripture and what was not, and know how God thinks.

**2. CRITERIA FOR OLD TESTAMENT CANONICITY**

- a) The question of Inspiration (2 Peter 1:21) - every existing book of an acknowledged messenger of God was immediately accepted as the Word of God being commissioned by God to make known his will.
- b) The principle of Internal evidence (Deuteronomy 31:24-26, Joshua 1:8, Judges 3:4). Nehemiah 8:1-8 shows that people were taught the word of God. Daniel in captivity read (Jeremiah 25:11--12, Jeremiah 29:10) and discovered Israel had a future giving rise to (Daniel 9:2, 5, 6. Zechariah 7:12)
- c) Documentation by quotation - New Testament quotes by Jesus Christ and others declare them to be the Word of God, e.g. (Matthew 22:29, John 5:39, John 10:35)
- d) The Law of Public Official Action (Nehemiah 8:5)
- e) The Law of Cause and Effect. In this area canonicity is a recognition of what God has done in the field of communication. Passages such as (2 Kings 22:1 - 23:2 and Nehemiah 8) are not historical accounts of the ratification of the Canon but the result of the existence of the Canon.
- f) Principle of external evidence - Israel had gone down spiritually prior to the Babylonian captivity (2 Chronicles 36:11-21) During captivity the Jews realised the importance of Bible doctrine and there was a spiritual resurgence led by people like Ezra, Nehemiah, Malachi, Zerubbabel who extra biblically attested to the canon of scripture. The Old Testament canon was closed in 425 BC-

**3. DIVISION OF THE OLD TESTAMENT - Three sections.**

- a) Torah or Law - The Pentateuch consisting of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy.
- b) The Nabiim or Prophets This was divided into 2. The Former and the Latter Prophets, the division being the Babylonian Captivity.
- c) The Kethubim or Writings which were further subdivided into 3 subsections -
  - i) Poetical Books - Psalms and Job.
  - ii) The Five Rolls or Megilloth books that were read at various feasts:  
 Song of Solomon - Passover  
 Ruth - Pentecost  
 Ecclesiastes - Tabernacles  
 Esther - Purim  
 Lamentations - Anniversary of the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BC-
  - iii) Historical Books - Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah and Chronicles.

**4. NUMBER OF OLD TESTAMENT BOOKS**

The number of books in the Hebrew Old Testament was 24 compared to 39 in the English: 1st and 2nd Kings etc. are combined and many of the prophets also combined into scrolls, e.g. Matthew in the New Testament when quoting Zechariah said "As Jeremiah said" (Matthew 27:9-10) Zechariah was in the Jeremiah scroll. (Zechariah 11:12-13)

**5. CLASSIFICATION OF OLD TESTAMENT CANON.**

- a) Homologoumena - these are writings that were accepted and had always been accepted as canonical.
- b) Antilegoumia - these were five books which were eventually accepted as canonical which were disputed in the 1st - 5th centuries AD
  - i) ESTHER - because the name God was not mentioned.
  - ii) SONG OF SOLOMON - this dealt with a love affair which the early church fathers apparently were somewhat embarrassed about and thought it non-canonical.
  - iii) ECCLESIASTES - where Solomon was looking at life from a human viewpoint which was not reconcilable with Judaism or Bible Doctrine.
  - iv) EZEKIEL - because chapters 40-48 seemed to contradict the Mosaic Law. Ezekiel 40-48 deals with annual sacrifices in the Millennium not the Levitical usage.
  - v) PROVERBS - because one proverb seemed to contradict another.
- c) Pseudepigrapha - these were the false writings and were rejected. Such books as "The Penitence of Jannes and Jambres" "The Magic Book of Moses", are in this category.
- d) Apocrypha - these were books written after 425 BC and have been rejected as not being canonical. The Apocrypha includes 14 books which are found in the Septuagint and Vulgate but never in the Hebrew Canon. False doctrine found in the Apocrypha includes:-
  - i) Prayers and Offerings for the Dead. - 2 Maccabees 12:42.
  - ii) Suicide Justified - 2 Maccabees 14:41.
  - iii) Atonement by Almsgiving - Ecclesiasticus 3:32, 4:1-11.
  - iv) Salvation by Almsgiving - Tobit 4:11
  - v) Cruelty to Slaves Justified - Ecclesiasticus 33:25-9.
  - vi) Pre-existence of souls - Wisdom of Solomon 8:19,20.

vii) Other fallacies include magical incantations, purgatory, assassination, angels having the power of intercession.

**6. REJECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT APOCRYPHA**

- a) These books are included in the apocrypha  
1 & 2 Esdras, Tobit, Judith, additions to Esther, The wisdom of Solomon, Ecclesiasticus, Baruch, The letter of Jeremiah, The prayer of Azariah, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon, The prayer of Manassah, 1 & 2 Maccabees
- b) The apocrypha was never in the Hebrew Canon.
- c) Neither Jesus Christ nor any of the New Testament writers ever quoted once from the Apocrypha.
- d) Josephus expressly excluded them from his history of sacred scriptures.
- e) No mention of the Apocrypha was made in any catalogue of canonical books in the first 4 centuries AD
- f) These apocryphal books were never asserted to be divinely inspired or to possess divine authority.
- g) No prophets were connected with these writings.
- h) These books contained many historical, geographical and chronological errors.
- i) The apocrypha teaches doctrines and upholds practices which are contrary to the canon of scripture.

**7. CRITERIA FOR NEW TESTAMENT CANONICITY**

- a) Apostolicity - every book must either to have been written by an apostle or someone closely associated with an apostle (Mark with Peter, Luke with Paul). An early date of writing is essential prior to 100 AD
- b) Reception by the Churches - must be accepted by the churches as authentic when written.
- c) Constancy of Doctrine - with Old Testament scripture and Apostolic teaching.
- d) Inspiration - each book must have internal and external evidence of inspiration. This was evaluated using the spiritual gift of discernment during the formation of the canon. (1 Corinthians 12:10)
- e) Recognition - each must be recognised by the Church Fathers as canonical. Four councils were held - Laodicea (336 AD), Damascus (382 AD), Carthage (397 AD), Hippo (419 AD).
- f) Internal - each must contain exhortation to public evaluation of the word. (Colossians 4:16, 1 Thessalonians 5:27, 1 Timothy 4:13, Revelation 1:3).

**8. CLASSIFICATION OF NEW TESTAMENT CANON**

- a) Homologoumena - the accepted books.
- b) Antilegomena - the disputed books which were eventually accepted - James, 2 Peter, 2 & 3 John, Hebrews.
- c) Pseudepigrapha - the false writings - Gospel of Peter, Gospel of Thomas, Acts of Andrew etc.
- d) Apocrypha - the rejected writings - Acts of Paul, Epistle of Barnabas, Shepherd of Hermes, The Revelation of the Twelve, The Revelation of Peter.

**GREEK GRAMMAR**

1. A tense is an expression of the action or the time of the verb. Greek has three tenses:

- a) CONTINUOUS tense which is further subdivided into the PRESENT and IMPERFECT.
  - i) PRESENT - implies action in the present time, a dramatic present focuses attention on a dramatic event in history.
  - ii) IMPERFECT - continuous action in past time.
- b) COMPLETED tense - action itself has been completed but its results continue - the PERFECT tense. (Ephesians 2:8, 9) "For by grace are ye saved" - literally - for by grace have you been saved in the past with the result you keep on being saved forever through faith.
- c) OCCURRING tense - action of the verb is presently in progress -
- d) AORIST tense which is subdivided into two - POINT OF TIME AORIST and ONCE AND FOR ALL TIME AORIST
  - i) (Acts 16:31) - Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved.
  - ii) BELIEVE - Point of time Aorist.
  - iii) SAVED - Once and for all time Aorist.
  - iv) Believe in a point of time on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved once and for all.

2. The voice of the verb expresses the relationship between the subject and the verb. Greek has three types of voice:

- a) ACTIVE VOICE - the subject produces the action of the verb (Acts 16:31) Believe - you believe.
- b) PASSIVE VOICE - subject receives the action of the verb - the voice of grace.
- c) MIDDLE VOICE - subject is benefited by the action of the verb. (John 15:16)

3. The mood affirms and relates the verb to reality. There are three frequently used moods

- a) IMPERATIVE MOOD - mood of command
- b) INDICATIVE MOOD - mood of reality, indicates that an event actually took place as stated.
- c) SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD - potential mood - maybe yes, maybe no.
- d) INFINTIVE MOOD - mood of purpose or intention

4. The Greek conditional clause states a supposition and is classified on the basis of the condition it expresses. There are four conditional clauses -

- a) Type 1 - If, and it is true (Matthew 4:3, 6)
- b) Type 2 - If, but it's not true. (Matthew 4:9)

- c) Type 3 - If, maybe yes, maybe no. (1 John 1:9)
- d) Type 4 - If, I wish it were true, but it isn't (1 Peter 3:14)

HEBREW GRAMMAR

1. In the Hebrew there are only 2 tenses:

- a) IMPERFECT - incomplete action.
- b) PERFECT - completed action.

2. In order to express different meanings the stems on the verbs are used:

- a) KAL - a simple declarative statement indicative active.
- b) NIPHAL - passive and sometimes reflective.
- c) HITHPAHEL - reflective.
- d) PIHEL - Intensive stem - active.
- e) PUHAL - Intensive passive.
- f) HIPHIL - Causative - active.
- g) HOPHAL - Causative - passive.

3. Example GATAL - to kill:

- a) KAL - someone kills.
- b) NIPHAL - you are killed.
- c) HITHPAHEL - suicide.
- d) PIHEL - you kill in a horrible manner.
- e) PUHAL - you are killed in a horrible manner.
- f) HIPHIL - Murder incorporated - you cause someone to be killed without being involved.
- g) HOPHAL - you are the victim of murder incorporated.

**Notes**

**LESSON 7 – THE BIBLE ITS SUBJECT AND PURPOSE**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
7	Bible – Subject and Purpose	John 20:30-31 John 21:25 Colossians 1:12-23	Ignorance Humility Spirituality Power

**INTRODUCTION**

What is God trying to say in the 66 books which make up the Bible? In **John 20:30-31, 21:25** John gives the reason for his writing, looking back over 60 years to the time of the Lord's ministry. Here he sees the purpose of the incarnation, life and death of the Lord Jesus Christ.

He has written these to record the signs that truly indicated that Jesus Christ was truly God and the Saviour. The reason John writes and by implication the reason all the other authors write is that we all might have concrete evidence of the way of salvation; that nothing is missing for walking through our path in this life as God intended. It is God's Word with God's purposes explained; man has the way of salvation and sanctification made very plain.

The primary subject of the Bible is the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ. In the Old Testament we have the Lord Jesus Christ in his pre-incarnate form at times as what is called "a Christophony" (The Angel of the Lord), and through the sacrificial system and in prophecies his person and plan are revealed visually. The Bible is a "history" book – its "His story". The Bible is about Him. Everything looks towards Him, at Him, or back to Him. There is no other celebrity other than the Lord. All teaching that is Biblical has this theme. Beware of the preacher who leaves you with thoughts of the preacher, rather than praise for the Lord Jesus Christ.

In **Colossians 1:12-23**, Paul sings a hymn of praise about the Lord Jesus Christ. This is the whole purpose of Scripture. Paul says that he is writing this to give us God's plan for your salvation and sanctification. Paul states that he is a "diakonos", a minister or server at tables. The minister is a servant of the people who ensures they are fed with spiritual food. He was committed to serve the people whom the Lord had provided for him, to serve them with doctrine.

The reason that we know about subjects such as salvation is that people like Paul under the guidance of the Holy Spirit wrote down what was revealed to them. The purpose of this book is that we might do what the apostles did, and more beside; that we might walk with Christ in the power of the Holy Spirit, and have all the necessary facts.

In **verses 15-18** we see the purpose is also that we should serve him for who he is and what he has done. He comes from eternity past to create, to become man, provide salvation and to be the Lord of eternity. The Bible covers the period from eternity past to eternity future, entering into time to give us instructions as to how we are to live in time, and shows us in a small way what it is going to be like in eternity.

What Paul does in these four verses, the Bible does in it's sixty six books. It shows how time fits, and how you fit into the big picture. The unbeliever is not in touch with the reality of the big picture whilst often the believer is either ignorant, or forgets the big context. We are part of a big plan and it is only when sometimes we are subject to major testing that we focus on this. The only celebrity in the Bible is the Lord Jesus Christ. We are not to look at people, circumstances or ourselves; we are to look at Him.

**THERE ARE FOUR SPECIFIC ASPECTS OF OUR LORD**

[a] He is the creator - Colossians 1:16 - there is a person, there is a plan, and there is a personality behind the physical world. This universe did not happen by chance. The Bible tells us that there is a mind behind it.

[b] The Lord Jesus Christ is a ruler and is not an impersonal creator who is letting His creation tick over. He rules not out of the world but involved in the world. He is a sovereign supreme ruler. He is King of all kings, and Lord of all lords. This means that history is not out of his control. Everything that is happening is happening under his guidance. Not all things are good but they are under his overall control. There is an answer to evil and the problems that evil causes.

[c] He is the incarnate Word - Genesis 1, John 1 - He is the "logos" of John 1 and has made himself known, He was made flesh and has not left man in the dark. Every other religion we have man talking about their concept of God, only in Christianity do you have God become man telling us his policy.

[d] The Lord Jesus Christ is our Saviour, which again makes Christianity unique. God has a plan of salvation for "whosoever will" may come. It is the record of the revelation of the Lord Jesus Christ and the impact that it has.



"Man" also has a very major part in the Bible. The history of mankind is also given in the Scriptures. From the beginning it stresses the eternal life dimension in the history of man. It is a good introduction to archaeology and anthropology, as well as ancient history.

Recommended challenging reading for Anthropology is the author, Arthur Custance – "The Doorway Papers" - which gives this subject from a Biblical viewpoint. Genesis is history. There is a lot of history of the emergence of people in Genesis chapters 10-12 with the linguistic and cultural background for most of the people of the world being given. It is interestingly accurate as well as being unique. Whilst not being a history text book what history is contained in it is absolutely accurate and as such it is first class history. Archaeologists over the last 200 years have confirmed the Bible account in many ways with their finds especially in the Middle East. DNA studies are now very interesting.

There are many examples of people being convicted and converted by the evidence of the Scriptures as to their accuracy and truth providing they look at them in depth and honestly. If you study the Scriptures they will come to life, and if you doubt them just keep studying – the facts will always back the Scriptures.

The Bible is revealed to us to **Show** the Glory of God.

The purpose of the Bible - According to the written Word of God, one supreme purpose is revealed in all that God has done or will do from the beginning of creation to the outermost reaches of eternity. This supreme purpose is the manifestation of the glory of God in all that occurs. For this one purpose angels were created, the material universe was designed to reflect that glory, and man was created in the image and likeness of God.

In the inscrutable wisdom of God even sin was permitted and redemption was provided with a view towards the realization of this supreme purpose. The purpose behind everything is the glory of God.

The purpose of the Bible was to explain the unfolding drama of redemption for the glory of God. The purpose of our salvation is the glory of God. In the endless ages of eternity every living creature will praise God for what He has done. They will magnify His name because they will see His glory in everything that He has provided.

Why do we serve Christ in the church - that He may be glorified. Everything in our lives should revolve around two words - "His glory". Why do we suffer - His glory (and our own and our eternal blessing), why do we have pressure - His glory.

The centrality of the truth that God's plan will lead to His glory in that when all things are seen finally His name will be glorified. We do not have all the answers but we are confident in Him, who has all the answers.

The Bible is God's message to man.

The Bible records that angels, men and the universe were created for His glory. Psalms 19.

The nation Israel was formed for the glory of God.

Salvation is for the glory of God.

All Christian service should be done for the glory of God.

Our desire and passion should be that God is glorified in us, and even our death should be to the glory of God.

We are to share the glory of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The Bible is different from any other book in the world. It stands supreme in reflecting the place of man and his opportunity of salvation, the supreme character and work of the Lord Jesus Christ as the only Saviour and gives all and in detail the infinite glories that belong to God himself. It is the one book that reveals the Creator to the creature and discloses the plan by which man with all his imperfections can be reconciled and be in eternal fellowship with the eternal God. The purpose of the Bible - God's Glory, the subject - the Lord Jesus Christ. Our response - to get to know the subject, by getting to know the person, and let the purpose be fulfilled in our lives to His glory forever.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **IGNORANCE**

1. On a number of occasions believers are commanded not to be ignorant. As the Bible is the mind of Christ (1Corinthians 2:16) the more we know about the Scriptures the less our ignorance of God's viewpoint.
2. The areas of ignorance deal with past, present and future events.
3. PAST - Due to pride.

That God's righteousness is by faith rather than by man's works. (Romans 10:3) "For they being ignorant of God's righteousness and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God."

That God has a future for Israel (Romans 11:25,26).

That believers should not be ignorant of history or the Scriptures pertaining to how God dealt with Israel in the past (1Corinthians 10:1-4).

4. PRESENT - Due to immaturity of the believer.

To the existence and use of spiritual gifts (1 Corinthians 12:1-11).

To the use of suffering in the Christian life for development (2 Corinthians 1:8).

To Satan's devices in deceiving believers (2 Corinthians 2:11).

5. FUTURE - To the existence of the translation or rapture of the Church as a source of comfort to church age believers (1Thessalonians 4:13-18).

### **HUMILITY**

1. Humility is to be sought - Zephaniah 2:3
2. Humility is manifest in restraint - Luke 6:28-29
3. Humility is produced by the Holy Spirit - Galatians 5:22-23
4. Humility is essential in teaching - 2 Timothy 2:25
5. Humility is essential in learning. - James 1:21
6. Humility is valuable to God. - Proverbs 3:34; James 4:6, 1 Peter 5:5
7. Humility is the path to promotion - 1 Peter 5:6
8. Humility gives proper self evaluation. - Romans 12:3
9. Examples of humility
  - a) Moses - Numbers 12:3
  - b) David - 2 Samuel 16:11
  - c) Jeremiah - Jeremiah 26:14
  - d) Stephen - Acts 7:60
  - e) Paul - 2 Timothy 4:16
10. Evidences of humility
  - a) Forbearance to others - Ephesians 4:2,6:9, Colossians 3:13
  - b) Endurance in trials - 1 Corinthians 13:7, James 1:12
  - c) Compassion - 1 Thessalonians 2:7
  - d) Peaceability - James 3:17
11. Humility was the primary characteristic of Christ - Isaiah 53:7, Matthew 11:29, 21:5
12. Promises to the humble - Psalm 22;26, 37:11, 147:6, Isaiah 29:19

### **SPIRITUALITY**

1. All Christians have the Holy Spirit indwelling them. When we allow Him to control our lives, we are said to be "filled with the Spirit" or "walking in the Spirit". Ephesians 5:18
2. The filling of the Holy Spirit can be lost by
  - a) Grieving the Spirit - by sin – Ephesians 4:30
  - b) Quenching the Spirit - by not submitting to His leading – 1 Thessalonians 5:9
  - c) This is called being carnal, or controlled by the flesh, the old sin nature.
3. The filling of the Holy Spirit can be regained by
  - a) confessing sin (1 John 1:9)
  - b) surrendering your life to God (Romans 12:1-2)
  - c) This is called being spiritual, or controlled by the Holy Spirit.
4. Only the Holy Spirit in us can produce good works acceptable to God - anything in our own strength is unacceptable (Romans 8:8-9, 1 Corinthians 3:10-15)

5. The spiritual believer
- a) Imitates God. (Ephesians 5:1, 1 John 3:9)
  - b) Glorifies Christ. (John 7:39, John 16:14)
  - c) Fulfills the Law. (Romans 8:2-4, Romans 13:8)
6. In the Bible the human race is divided in three Categories:-
- a) Natural Man - A person born physically alive, but not regenerated. He may be highly sophisticated, civilised, gentle and kind, but is completely ignorant of any spiritual phenomena. (1 Corinthians 2:14) Equivalent to the cold person in the church in Laodicea.
  - b) Carnal Man - A person regenerated or born again but living his life under the power of his old sin nature. Prolonged activity in this area produces a Christian who is still a baby. (1 Corinthians 3:1-4). Equivalent to the lukewarm person in the church of Laodicea.
  - c) Spiritual Man - A person regenerated and living generally in the power of the Holy Spirit. He discerns the difference between the things of God and man. (1 Corinthians 2:11-13) He has fellowship with God in his daily life. (Ephesians 5:18-20) Equivalent to the hot person in the church of Laodicea.
7. Carnality
- a) The believer possesses an Old Sin Nature after salvation (1 John 1:8, Romans 7:14,15).
  - b) The Old Sin Nature is desperately wicked (Jeremiah 17:9).
  - c) The believer under the control of the Old Sin Nature is called carnal (1 Corinthians 3:1-3, Romans 7:14).
  - d) The Old Sin Nature frustrates bona fide production in the life of the believer (Romans 7:15).
  - e) The Old Sin Nature is acquired at the point of physical birth (Psalm 51:5).
  - f) We are therefore considered spiritually dead at the point of physical birth (Romans 5:12).
  - g) The Old Sin Nature has several facets: areas of weakness produces sins, areas of strength produces human good. It has trends towards asceticism or lasciviousness. In many cases asceticism is considered to be spirituality.
  - h) The Old Sin Nature is not found in the resurrection body.

**POWER**

1. Five Greek words for power.
- a) Dunamis - from which we get dynamite - inherent power.
  - b) Energes - from which we get energy - operational power.
  - c) Kratos - part of our word autocratic - ruling power.
  - d) Iscuous - endowed power.
  - e) Exhusios - authoritative power or authority.
2. God's power is available to all believers.
- a) God the Father's power. (1 Peter 1:5)
  - b) God the Son's power (2 Corinthians 12:9, 10)
  - c) God the Holy Spirit's power. (Acts 1:8)
  - d) The power of the Word. (Hebrews 4:12)
  - e) Kingdom of God power. (1 Corinthians 4:20)

**LESSON 8 – THE BIBLE AS DIVINE REVELATION**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
8	Bible – God’s Revelation	John 17:3-5 Romans 1:17-25 John 16:8-11 Acts 17:22-34 John 3:16-18 John 5:30-47 John 12:44-48	Heathenism Fundamentalism <b>Revelation</b>

**INTRODUCTION**

God's purpose is that every person should bow before Him, meet Him, and know Him and therefore respond to God in honour with worship and service that is motivated by love that knows the one who has made us and loved us. 2 Peter 3:9. In the written Word we have the living Word revealed. It all centres on knowing God, which in turn is based on Revelation. This principle flows on from and ties in with Lesson 5.

**John 17** is the real Lord's Prayer and gets you into the heart of God for you. In **verses 3-5** Here we see that before He goes to the cross the Lord Jesus Christ is thinking of us and wishes to us to know Him, and the Father, and His love.

**CONTEMPLATING GOD**

The Scripture attests to two facts, the incomprehensibility of God and the know ability of God. These must be balanced. We can never fully understand God but there are many things we can know. When we look at the character of God we realise that there are many things that we can know about the Lord. But there are some things that can only be known in the future. God is not a big man - God is God. There is a danger in what is called "anthropopathism" – speaking of God as if He is limited by space and time, as presently we are limited.

Contemplating the vastness of the universe at night we get an outline of just how great God is. **Psalm 8:1-6**, 19:1, 89:5-11, 97:6. This will give one the idea of the incomprehensibility of God. There will be many things that you will not know this side of eternity. We are creatures who are talking about the Creator. We however can say that what is needed to be known about God has been revealed in the Word. In addition everything in the Bible can be known as the Holy Spirit teaches the believer. **1 Corinthians 2:14-16**.

Characteristics of the Knowledge of God

**[a] The Source** of the knowledge of God can only be God himself. Human experiences and even religious experiences are not reliable in the accurate presentation of God. The Bible is what is sure of God's viewpoint and information about God. Any experience must be tested against the Bible. **Romans 1:18-32** reminds us that man is fallen and that man's view of life is warped by the fallen state. However anyone who has lived on the earth has sufficient evidence from nature of the existence of God. Even with this evidence however most men will reject or distort the truth because they do not want to know Him. Fallen man will create his own "god" which he can manipulate. What Paul is talking about is general revelation, which is available to all.

**[b] Its Content** - A full knowledge of God is both factual and personal. To know facts about a person without knowing the person is limiting; to know a person without knowing facts about that one is shallow. God has revealed many facts about Himself, all of which are important in making our personal relationship with Him close, intelligent, and useful. Had He only revealed facts without making it possible to know Him personally, such factual knowledge would have little, certainly not eternal, usefulness. Just as with human relationships, a Divine-human relationship cannot begin without knowledge of some minimal truths about the Person; then the personal relationship generates the desire to know more facts which in turn deepens the relationship, and so on.

**[c] Its Progressiveness** - The knowledge of God and His works was revealed progressively throughout history. The most obvious proof is to compare incomplete Jewish theology with the fuller revelation of Christian theology in respect, for example, to such doctrines as the Trinity, Christology, the Holy Spirit, Resurrection, and eschatology. To trace that progressiveness is the task of biblical theology.

**[d] Its Purposes** - God does not reveal Himself that people might know Him, but get into a relationship with Him in all the fullness that the Holy Spirit opens the door to.

1. To lead people to the possession of eternal life (John 17:3; 1 Tim. 2:4).
2. To foster Christian growth (2 Peter 3:18) with doctrinal knowledge (John 7:17; Rom. 6:9, 16; Eph. 1:18), and with a discerning lifestyle (Phil. 1:9-10; 2 Peter 1:5).
3. To warn of judgment to come (Hosea 4:6; Heb. 10:26-27)..
4. To generate true worship of God (Rom. 11:33-36).

**Four factors that are prerequisites to the knowledge of God:-**

- [a] God initiated the process. Where He was the Creator, God came to man in the garden.
- [b] God gave language in order that he might be able to communicate with fellow man and also with God. This is an area that causes a lot of trouble with the thinking evolutionist (there are not many – they are religiously devoted to it).
- [c] Man was created in the image of God with free will, a mind that can think. Man is able to think in a rational way. Even though man is subject to total depravity. This means that you are unable to save yourself. However man is still fashioned in the likeness of God and is not totally depraved in that sense. We still have a mind, a will and a conscience even though it is a violated one.
- [d] God gave the Holy Spirit to convict the unbeliever and convert the repentant. John 16:8-11.

Three General Areas of Revelation

There are three general areas of revelation - **Creation**, the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and the **authors of the Bible**. However we have the necessity of the ministry of the Holy Spirit to understand these things. **1 Corinthians 2:14-16** In addition men may wish to reject it. **Romans 1:18-32** Thus general revelation is also specific revelation.

**Acts 17:22-31** - is a tremendous sermon. Paul has talked about general revelation in creation, the Lord Jesus Christ and the Bible as well as a couple of Greek poets. To show the Greeks that even their poets recognized general revelation. What is Paul relying on to produce their salvation? The work of the Holy Spirit alone can achieve this result. He is relying on specific revelation as the first Christian in Athens can only be produced by response to the Spirit's moving within convicting of the truth.

Paul noted that they had a shrine to an unknown God. He said that he was going to show them the real God through the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. Some of those in the audience heard, received personal conviction, believed and were saved. There was a mixing of general and specific revelation and as a result there were those who believed.

You have to meet the pagan where they are with general revelation, and not where you are. You move from general to specific revelation, from where they are, to where the Cross and Empty Tomb is. This challenges the unbeliever. The evangelist may not fully understand the means of witnessing. If however you do know what to do, you will know how to do it right; that is to follow the apostolic pattern – it is Holy Spirit dependent living.

Methods of Understanding the Existence of God.

These are various methods of understanding that God exists.

- [a] **Cosmological** argument that God created. This fact is countered by the evolutionist's concept of matter being eternal, although since 2012 this is refuted by the discovery of the background radiation of the "Big Bang" indicating a "moment of creation".
- [b] **Organizational** - the universe speaks of design therefore there must be a master designer.
- [c] **Anthropological** - which looks at the concept of life after death and that man as a thinking being is not just an unthinking creature like an ant – even here the biologists are breaking the barriers of what is reasoned behaviour.
- [d] The **Ontological** approach propounded by St Anselm in the ninth century and presented further by Descartes, Kant and Hegel. This states that because we conceive of a Supreme Holy Being such a being exists.

General revelation does not prove anything to anyone who does not want to know. It is however the basis of just condemnation of the unbeliever. In the end all will recognize God and He will get all the glory. Isaiah 45:23, Romans 14:11, Philippians 2:10. Keep on remembering that Satan and the demons do not doubt God's existence. James 2:19.

Contents of General Revelation

- [a] His Glory - Psalm 19:1.
- [b] His power to work in creating the universe - Psalm 19:1.
- [c] His supremacy - Romans 1:20.
- [d] His divine nature - Romans 1:20.
- [e] His providential control of nature - Acts 14:17.

- [f] His goodness - Matthew 5:45.
- [g] His intelligence - Acts 17:29.
- [h] His living existence - Acts 17:28.

**Three results of General revelation.**

- [a] God's grace is displayed.
- [b] It gives weight to the case that God exists.
- [c] To justly condemn rejecters.

God has given a complete revelation to us, as far as is required by human beings. The rejection of this revelation is an act of man's sinful nature for which each woman/man is responsible. The unsaved are therefore justly judged.

Other examples of general revelation **John 3:16-18, 5:30 ff.** You have the evidence of many things but you reject it because you do not want the truth. This is why you are responsible for your rejection. **John 12:44-48.** When the unbeliever rejects the gospel it should be made clear that if the rejection continues the end of it is hell. God is knowable but not ever totally comprehensible this side of eternity. However everything we need to know for our brief walk through space-time is in writing in the Bible. What we have in writing we should be able to understand.

**SPECIAL REVELATION**

Throughout the history of man, God has given special revelation. Many instances are recorded in the Word of God of His speaking directly to man as He did in the Garden of Eden, or to the prophets of the Old Testament, or the apostles in the New Testament.

Some of this special revelation was recorded in the Bible and forms the only authoritative and inspired record that we have of such special revelation. Upon completion of the sixty-six books in the Bible, special revelation in the ordinary sense seems to have ceased. If you wish to compare biblical truth to other things that claim revelation, look at passages from the Pseudapigrapha (2<sup>nd</sup> to 4<sup>th</sup> centuries) and you will feel the difference.

**DOCTRINES**

**HEATHENISM AND GOD CONSCIOUSNESS**

1. Three systems of human understanding:
  - a) Empiricism - understanding through experimentation and observation.
  - b) Rationalism - understanding through logic and reason
  - c) Faith - believes an established fact as the basis of reality.
  
2. Faith is the only means of understanding which does not rely on our own abilities - there is no earned merit in faith. Therefore, everybody, even a young child, is able to believe.
  
3. Faith is compatible with God and grace - God provides, we trust Him and accept. (Ephesians 2:8-10)
  
4. God Consciousness: The existence of God:
  - a) Religious
    - i) God must exist because man universally believes in his existence.
    - ii) In this case the human mind establishes faith as the criteria for reality.
    - iii) Men do seek after God. (Psalm 42:1-2, Acts 17:27)
  - b) Moral
    - i) Man possesses a conscience with the urge to choose right over wrong.
    - ii) Human recognition of virtue and truth. The ultimate virtue - God.
  - c) Rational
    - i) The human mind possesses the idea of a Perfect and Absolute Being, therefore such a being must exist.
    - ii) In this case, the mind uses rationalism for reality.
  - d) Design

- i) Structure of the universe demands a designer (Romans 1:19,20)
- ii) In this case empiricism is the criteria for reality.

e) Cause and Effect

- i) The law of cause and effect demands the existence of God.
- ii) This is process of rationalism plus logic.

5. The reaction to God consciousness:

- a) When man becomes conscious of God he then exercises his freewill.
- b) Acceptance - desire to know God and have fellowship with God.
- c) Rebellion - no interest in fellowship with God. SNOWFLAKE
- d) Once a person reaches God consciousness and has no desire for fellowship with God, God has no further obligation to that individual.
- e) In the case of acceptance, God is responsible to provide gospel information on which to be saved. (Jeremiah 29:13, John 7:17, Acts 17:27, Luke 11:9)

6. Heathenism: What about the people who have apparently never heard the Gospel?

a) Application of Divine Character

- i) Since God is perfect justice it is impossible for Him to be unfair to any member of the human race.
- ii) God promises that every generation will be evangelised. (Isaiah 51:8b)

b) Application of Unlimited Atonement

- i) Christ died for all members of the human race. (2 Corinthians 5:14,15,19, 1 Timothy 2:6, 4:10, Titus 2:11, Hebrews 2:9, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 John 2:2)
- ii) Therefore obviously God desires salvation for everyone. (2 Peter 3:9)

c) Application of Divine Sovereignty

d) It is God's will that all members of the human race be saved. (2 Peter 3:9)

- i) If people are not saved, it is because of their own rejection of Christ as Saviour, not because of God.

e) Application of the Principle of God Consciousness

- i) Human free will is tested in the two areas in which a decision must be made.

At the point of God consciousness - Do I want a relationship with God?

At the point of gospel hearing - Do I want to be saved?

- ii) If anyone desires relationship with God, God will reveal Himself to them (Jeremiah 29:13, John 7:17, John 4:9,10, Acts 17:27).

Man has the ability to arrive at God consciousness through observing creation. (Romans 1:20, 21)

When a person reaches the point of God consciousness, he becomes accountable to God. This age varies with cultures, languages and circumstances.

7. From the above it is obvious that any person can come to a saving knowledge of God.

**FUNDAMENTALISM**

1. Fundamentalism requires belief in:-

- a) The deity of Christ and the virgin birth
- b) The miracles of Christ
- c) The cross of Christ on which He paid for the sins of the world as God's efficacious substitutionary sacrifice
- d) The bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ
- e) The certainty of the yet to come Second Coming of the Lord for His church and to judge
- f) The inerrancy of the Bible as the Word of God.

2. False teachers and liberal theologians will distort all or some of these doctrines.

**REVELATION**

God's purpose is that man should know Him and therefore respond to God in honour and worship motivated by love. In the written word we have the living word revealed. It all centres on knowing God, which is in turn based on Revelation.

1. The source of the knowledge of God is God himself. Human experiences and even religious experiences are not reliable in the accurate presentation of God. The Bible is what is sure of God's viewpoint and information about God. Any experience must be tested against the Bible. Romans 1:18-32 reminds us that man is fallen and that man's view of life is warped by the fallen state. However anyone who has lived on the earth has sufficient evidence from nature of the existence of God. Even with this evidence however most men will reject or distort the truth because they do not want to know Him. Fallen men will create his own god, which he can manipulate. What Paul is talking about is general revelation, which is available to all.

2. There is however specific revelation, which is the personal confrontation of man through the prophets, teachers and pre eminently through the Lord Jesus Christ. Those who accept general revelation will receive specific revelation.

3. It is progressive, that through the history of man God has revealed more and more about Himself.
4. God does not reveal Himself that people might know Him but for them to get into a relationship with Him.
5. Four factors that are prerequisites to the knowledge of God:-
  - [a] God initiated the process. Where was the creator, God came to man in the garden.
  - [b] God gave language in order that he might be able to communicate with fellow man and also with God. This is an area which causes a lot of trouble with the thinking evolutionist.
  - [c] Man was created in the image of God with free will, a mind that can think. Man is able to think in a rational way. Even though man is subject to total depravity. This means that you are unable to save yourself. However man is still fashioned in the likeness of God and is not totally depraved in that sense. We still have a mind, a will and a conscience even though it is a violated one.
  - [d] God gave the Holy Spirit to convict the unbeliever and convert the repentant. John 16:8-11
6. Paul in Acts 17:22-31 gave a message about general revelation in creation, the Lord Jesus Christ and the Bible as well as a couple of Greek poets, to show the Greeks that even their poets recognised general revelation. What Paul is relying on to effect their salvation is the work of the Holy Spirit. He is relying on specific revelation as the first Christian in Athens. You have an unknown God. Paul said. He was going to show the real God through the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. Some of those in the audience believed and were saved. There was a mixing of general and specific revelation as there were those who believed. You have to meet the pagan where they are with general revelation.. You move from general to specific revelation, from where they are to where the Cross is. This challenges the unbeliever. General revelation does not prove anything to anyone who does not want to know. It is however the basis of just condemnation of the unbeliever. In the end all will recognise God and He will get all the glory.
7. General Revelation
  - [a] His Glory Psalm 19:1
  - [b] His power to work in creating the universe Psalm 19:1
  - [c] His supremacy Romans 1:20[d] His divine nature Romans 1:20
  - [e] His providential control of nature Acts 14:17
  - [f] His goodness Matthew 5:45
  - [g] His intelligence Acts 17:29
  - [h] His living existence Acts 17:28
8. Results of General revelation.
  - [a] God's grace is displayed
  - [b] To give weight to the case that God exists
  - [c] To justly condemn rejecters.



**SECTION B – THEOLOGY PROPER – THE STUDY OF GOD**

**LESSON 9 – GOD – THE TRINITY**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
9	The Trinity	Matthew 28:18-20 1 Corinthians 8:4-6	Names and Titles of God Angel of Jehovah Trinity

**INTRODUCTION**

In **Matthew 28:18-20** at the Great Commission it is quite clear that the people are sent out in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit indicating that there are three personalities in the Godhead. There is therefore tri-unity or trinity. In many other passages in the Scriptures two or more members of the Godhead are mentioned as equal. Every cult in some way denies the Trinity. These cultic belief systems have been around since the first century. Remember at all times we are limited creatures speaking of the Creator, and so our way of speaking of God must follow the direction we take from what God has revealed of His Character, and the trinity is a part of that revelation, as hard as it is to comprehend and explain. Difficulty in comprehension mustn't stop our acceptance of specific revelation.

**Comprehension of the Trinity**

It is quite difficult to comprehend the concept of three personalities and yet unity in the Godhead as it is a violation of our own intellect. Cultists will say that the Trinity does not make sense but this problem for the unbeliever is covered in 1 Corinthians 2:14 where the unbeliever cannot understand spiritual matters as they are spiritually discerned. Our perception of the mechanics of this is limited by space and time, but we should not expect human logic alone to cope with this concept. We are presently very limited creatures speaking of the Eternal Creator and must accept the revelation provided, identifying the truth that we will not comprehend all of it this side of eternity.

It is important to note however that God has decided to reveal Himself to us in this way and that this is therefore the way in which he ought to be understood, without debate by us. Trinity and Unity have their own characteristics.

**Trinity and Unity**

Trinity and unity have their own relationships in the Character of God. There is unity in character but trinity in personalities. As you go through the Bible where you have the character of God being expressed you have unity, where you have personalities dealing with mankind you have trinity. We can see the unity of the character of God in the different ways in which God has revealed Himself to man. In the case of trinity however we have to be careful with illustrations and concepts, as with our space-time limited minds and language, it is easy to go into heresy by taking it one step too far.

There are obviously many important reasons behind this. In eternity we will understand this fully, but here and now, as it has been revealed this way to us, we have the obligation to try our best to understand it's significance for us. Trinity and unity have their corresponding words in the essence of God.

Unity - essence or character.

Trinity - personality.

God is one in essence but revealed to us in this space-time universes as three in person. This is seen especially true of times when one person of the Godhead is dealing with man. This doctrine actually assists us in understanding God.

In this subject we are introduced to the importance of theology. It is very important that the examples you use accurately reflect this doctrine otherwise some may be led astray. Both the Mormons and the Jehovah's Witnesses have a false view in this area and will confuse believers who are not well taught and have not thought this through thoroughly.

The word Trinity as such is not found in the Bible, nor are other related doctrinal terms. Nevertheless the doctrine grows out of the Scriptures and therefore it is a Biblical teaching, but needs to be grounded firmly always in the Scriptural text.

From the Scriptures we see that [a] God is Spirit [b] God has manifested Himself to man at different times in different ways [c] The final manifestation through the Lord Jesus Christ is physical and visible [d] Human beings have seen glimpses of God through all these manifestations.

There is a problem of comprehension as we are physical and God is spirit. We are creatures of this present space-time universe, but God is the creator of this universe and beyond it. We must worship God in spirit and in truth. We are to see this reality about our creator, Saviour, and Lord through the means and terms in which it is revealed.

For example, the angel of the Lord is a clear manifestation of God and associated with God.

There are many names of God, the two main ones being Elohim and Jehovah. Elohim is in the plural, which shows unity and trinity. Often you will have singular and plural together in the same verse. The contribution of the New Testament is that whilst it does not contain specific reference to the tri-unity of God it does give a lot of evidence that points directly to the doctrine.

### **One Verse not to Use**

It should be noted that it is clear from the evidence that we have from early manuscripts that John did not write 1 John 5:7. This is important because if you want to talk about the trinity this is one verse you do not use. No Greek text has this verse in it, and it did not appear in versions prior to the fifteenth century. It has been inserted as a commentary. It entered the Vulgate, the Latin version of the Bible as a commentary note. Erasmus in the fifteenth century left this verse out of the first edition of his Greek manuscript stating that it did not occur in any of the originals. He relented however and under pressure included it in the second and subsequent editions. It records truth, but it is clearly not the words of John.

### **Verses in the New Testament**

The prime passage for unity, trinity and tri-unity is **Matthew 28:19,20**. Other key passages include **Matthew 3:16-17, John 10:30 and 2 Corinthians 13:14**. In **1 Corinthians 8:4-6** we have the unity of God maintained but the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ mentioned in the same language showing that they are equals.

Believers in the Lord Jesus Christ who are growing do not tend to have general problems with the trinity. The people who have problems generally have problems with most doctrines, if they are saved at all.

### **Definitions:-**

"There is one only and true God but in the unity of the Godhead there are three co-equal and co-eternal persons, the same in substance but different in subsistence".

"There is one only and true God, but in the unity of the Godhead there are three coeternal and coequal Persons, the same in substance but different in subsistence".

"There is one only and true God but in the unity of the Godhead there are three co-equal and co-eternal persons, the same in character but different in the work they do".

### **False Concepts**

The theological perspective from where the so called Jehovah's witnesses, and the Mormons, are coming from is that the Father is said to have created the son (Jesus is a servant, a creation, not the creator) and therefore they are not co-equal and co-eternal. This is declared false. The second concept is one of "procession" where one sent the other, the Father sent the Son and the Son sent the Holy Spirit. The cultists therefore say, that we do not have equality; we have a hierarchy. This is not true from a Biblical basis when all the texts of the New Testament are compared with one another.

### **The Early Church**

There were a number of people in the early church who had a Unitarian outlook. The church in those times did not formulate any clear statement concerning the Trinity until the fourth century. It emerged to deal with heretical viewpoints.

Theodotus of Byzantium about 210 AD viewed Jesus as a man who was given special powers by the Holy Spirit at His baptism. Another group at about the same time concluded that the Father was incarnated in the Son and suffered in the Son.

Arius [250-336] from Alexandria distinguished between the One Eternal God from the Son who was generated by the Father and thus had a beginning. This is the origin of the modern cultic viewpoint.

He was opposed by Athanasius who held to three persons in the Trinity of one essence.

It was as a result of this great controversy in the Church that the teaching had to be clarified, identifying what was indeed the apostolic doctrine, resulting in the Nicene Creed. In 381 at the Council of Constantinople this concept was definitively given in its final form.

### **Practical Application**

The practical outworking of the Trinity is demonstrated in various areas of practical doctrine.

All persons of the Godhead are involved in Redemption - John 3:6, 16, Revelation 13:8.

Both the Son and the Spirit are involved in Revelation - John 1:18, 16:13.

Fellowship with God can only be on the basis of fellowship in the Godhead. John 14:17.

Priority without inferiority is seen in the proper relationship between men and women - 1 Corinthians 11:3.

Prayer is seen to involve the Trinity with petitions addressed to the Father, in the power of the Spirit and through the Son. John 14:14, Ephesians 1:6, 2:18, 6:18.

Baptism is in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit Matthew 28:19,20.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **NAMES AND TITLES OF GOD**

1. Father, Son and Holy Spirit Matthew 28:19,20. These titles emphasise the function of each member of the Trinity.
  - a) Father - the sovereign authority, who decreed the plan of salvation
  - b) Son - the obedient Son, who offered Himself as a sacrifice for sin according to the Father's will
  - c) Holy Spirit - the one who reveals the Son to mankind, thereby bringing honour and glory to Him
2. At the Lord's Baptism - Matthew 3 where the Spirit descends, the Father speaking from heaven and the Son being baptised.
3. We have the Father sending the Son in John 3:16, in John 14-17 we have the Son sending the Spirit.
4. We have the three fold titles of God Romans 5, 1 Corinthians 12, Ephesians 1, Romans 15
5. The Holy Spirit is called God in Acts 5, 1 Corinthians 3 and called the Lord in 2 Corinthians 3:17.
6. The works of the Lord are ascribed to the Father John 17, the Holy Spirit responsible for the procreation of the Son. Luke 1:35, 2:11. The Son is doing the will of the Father, John 8, 10, the Holy Spirit is sustaining the Son. Matthew 18:28, John 3:34.
7. The Trinity are involved in the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ in the first advent. The death of the Lord Jesus Christ is the co operative work of the Trinity, the Father gives the son Romans 8:32, the Lord lays down his life John 10:18, the Holy Spirit empowers Him to offer Himself on the Cross Hebrews 9. On the Cross He addresses the other two members of the Trinity when He cried out "My God, My God why has thou forgotten me?"
8. All three were involved in the resurrection
  - [a] the Father - Colossians 2:12
  - [b] the Son as the person who was raised - John 2:19, 10:18, 1 Peter 3:18
  - [c] The Holy Spirit was involved in His resurrection - Romans 8:11 The Father, Son and the Holy Spirit will be involved in our resurrection.
9. The indwelling of the believer - John 14:23, we are the temple of the Holy Spirit - 1 Corinthians 6:19, we have the power in us - Ephesians 4:6, the Lord in us - Colossians 1:27

### **ANGEL OF JEHOVAH**

1. The Angel of Jehovah is identified as Jehovah (Genesis 16:7-13, 22:11-18, 31:11-13, Exodus 13:21 cf. 14:19, Judges 6:11-23).
2. The Angel of Jehovah is distinguished from Jehovah (Genesis 24:7, Exodus 23:20, 1 Chronicles 21:15-18, Zechariah 1:12-13).
3. The Angel of Jehovah is therefore a member of the Trinity - the same as Jehovah, but distinct from Jehovah.
4. God the Father and Holy Spirit cannot be seen by man face to face (Exodus 33:18-23; John 14:17).
5. Therefore, the Angel of Jehovah is the second Person of the Trinity: the pre-incarnate Lord Jesus Christ.
  - a) Jesus Christ identifies Himself as Jehovah (I AM) (John 8:58)
  - b) The Lord Jesus Christ is the visible/manifest member of the Trinity (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:15-16).
  - c) The Angel of Jehovah never appears after the Incarnation (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:15, 16, 1 John 4:12)
  - d) Both the Angel of Jehovah and Jesus Christ are sent by Jehovah (the Father).

6. The Angel of Jehovah appeared only in the Old Testament.
- a) He wrestled with Jacob. (Genesis 32:24-30)
  - b) He redeemed Jacob from all evil. (Genesis 48:16)
  - c) He spoke to Moses from the burning bush. (Exodus 3:2)
  - d) He protected Israel at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:19)
  - e) He prepared Israel for the Promised Land. (Exodus 23:20-23)
  - f) He reassured Joshua (Joshua 5:13-15)
  - g) He commissioned Gideon (Judges 6:11-23)
  - h) He ministered to Elijah. (1 Kings 19:5-7)
  - i) He saved Jerusalem from Sennacherib. (Isaiah 37:36)
  - j) He preserved Shadrach, Meshech and Abednego in the furnace. (Daniel 3:25)

**TRINITY**

1. There is one God. He has manifest Himself in three personalities. (2 Samuel 23:1-3, Isaiah 48:16, Isaiah 63:7-10, Matthew 28:19, Acts 2:33, 2 Corinthians 13:14)
2. The oneness of God refers to the unity or sameness of character. All three members of the Trinity are equal (Philippians 2:6, Deuteronomy 6:4, Acts 17:29, Romans 1:20, Colossians 2:9), although they have different functions/purposes in relation to man.
3. The three members are distinguished according to their function in the plan of salvation (1 Peter 1:2-3)
- a) The Father - the authority, who planned our salvation (Isaiah 14:27, John 4:34, 5:17, 12:44, 1 Corinthians 8:6a, Ephesians 3:11)
  - b) The Son - the obedient son, who was born as a man, died for our sins, and rose from the dead (John 4:34, 5:17, Hebrews 10:7)
  - c) The Holy Spirit - the ministering servant, who reveals the Son and sanctifies us (John 16:8-11).
4. The Son is the only visible member of the Trinity. (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:16, 1 John 4:12) He was revealed in the Old Testament in Christophanies (e.g. the Angel of Jehovah) and became flesh in the New Testament. (Exodus 3:14 cf. John 8:58; Psalm 10:16 cf. Revelation 11:15; Zechariah 14 cf. Revelation 19)
5. Evidences of the Trinity
- a) Affirmed by the use of the title Elohim (plural, Gods) in the Old Testament and the plural pronoun "us" in (Genesis 1:26, 3:22, 11:7).
  - b) The worship of God we have repeated three times "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty (Isaiah 6:3, Revelation 4)
  - c) The name (singular) of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit indicates Trinity. (Matthew 28:19-20)
  - d) The Lord's Baptism - the Spirit descends, the Father speaks from heaven and the Son is baptised. (Matthew 3)
6. Light is a good illustration of the Trinity. (1 John 1:5) Light is one, but has three elements.
- a) Father - actinic light - that part of light which is invisible, nor felt.
  - b) Son - luminiferous - that part of light which is both seen and felt.
  - c) Spirit - calorific - that part of light which is not seen but felt.

**TRINITY IN THE TITLES OF GOD**

1. The three in one Matthew 28:19,20.
2. The Lord's Baptism - Matthew 3:16-17 where the Spirit descends, the Father speaking from heaven and the Son being baptized.
3. We have the Father sending the Son in John 3:16, in John 14-17 we have the Son sending the Spirit.
4. We have the three fold titles of God Romans 5, 1 Corinthians 12: 4-6, Ephesians 1, Romans 15
5. The Holy Spirit is called God in Acts 5:1-5, 1 Corinthians 3 and called the Lord in 2 Corinthians 3:17.
6. The works of the Lord are ascribed to the Father John 17:1-5, the Holy Spirit responsible for the procreation of the Son Luke 1:35, 2:11; the Son doing the will of the Father John 8, 10, the Holy Spirit sustaining the Son. Matthew 18:28, John 3:34
7. The Trinity are involved in the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ in the first advent. The death of the Lord Jesus Christ is the co operative work of the Trinity. The Father gives the son Romans 8:32, the Lord lays down his life John 10:18, the Holy Spirit empowers Him to offer Himself on the Cross Hebrews 9:11-15.

On the Cross He addresses the other two members of the Trinity when He cried out "My God, My God why has thou forsaken me?"

8. All three were involved in the resurrection:
  - a) the Father - Colossians 2:12
  - b) the Son as the person who was raised - John 2:19, 10:18, 1 Peter 3:18
  - c) The Holy Spirit was involved in His resurrection - Romans 8:11. The Father, Son and the Holy Spirit will be involved in our resurrection.
  
9. The indwelling of the believer - John 14:23, we are the temple of the Holy Spirit - 1 Corinthians 6:19, we have the power in us - Ephesians 4:6, the Lord in us - Colossians 1:27

**LESSON 10 – CHARACTER OF GOD**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
10	Character of God	Romans 11:33-36	Character of God God Cares for you Miracles of God

**INTRODUCTION**

People have slightly different approaches to this subject as this is one of the regions in Bible study where creatures with limited concepts are attempting to come to terms with the characteristics of God, the creator of space and time and all that is within these categories. When you are teaching this vital doctrine, you will be all right as long as you keep remembering that you are a creature of space and time and you are talking about the one who created all things.

This is a very deep concept to which you will go back time and time again. This foundation doctrine combined with the confession of sins should be thoroughly taught to your congregation. Understanding the nature of God assists in all the testing situations of life, for we rest for our eternal security upon the perfection of the character and plan of God.

The various “perfections of God”, which some call them are not component “parts” of God. Even when we have a list it is not exhaustive. All of the qualities of God are absolute. He is the creator of everything. The definitions are therefore human attempts to speak of a unique subject. We however are limited, and theologians who forget this get into the most arrogance and trouble. Always remember – by their fruit you know them! Matthew 7:13-23. Rage = evil - not good!

In our introductory series of lectures we covered the concept of what in philosophy is called “category mistake”. This means to predicate of a being in one category the characteristics of a being in another and totally different category. We try to speak of God in terms he has used in his revelation of himself, but our words and our thinking is limited, and we must remain humble as we walk into this subject. The fruit of the Spirit here is humility and calm, not violent arguing.

**Romans 11:33-36** - this is Paul talking about the attributes of God. Paul ends his brief talk to the Romans about the character of God with a prayer. He ends with a poem of praise. You should ensure that when you are teaching this there is practical application to those you are teaching for every attribute. When you study this subject it should be with thanks and awe.

If talk of the character of God does not end in worship, then I suspect you have got something wrong. This is not a theoretical subject, but one that will always lead to a response in the heart of the genuine believer. “Be very scared” if there is no response in the teacher of these things, for their lack of response indicates they are fakes, possibly dangerous fakes.

**ATTRIBUTES OF GOD**

- [a] The attributes of God are not component parts like bricks in a wall.
- [b] He is much more than the sum of the attributes that we see in Him.
- [c] They are known through revelation. The sole source of knowledge about this is the Word of God.
- [d] The character of God describes equally the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. God is one in essence and three in persons.



**DOCTRINES**

**CHARACTER OF GOD**

1. Whilst God is three persons all three persons have exactly the same essence or character:

a) SOVEREIGNTY

The Father (Ephesians 1:11 , cf Isaiah 40:8, Matthew 6:10, Hebrews 10:7, 9)

The Son (John 5:21, Revelation 19:16)

The Spirit (1 Corinthians 12:11 , cf Hebrews 2:4)

b) RIGHTEOUSNESS

The Father (John 17:25)

The Son (Luke 1:35, Hebrews 7:26, 2 Corinthians 5:21)

The Spirit The Holy Spirit

c) JUSTICE

The Father (Job 37:23, cf 8:3)

The Son (Acts 3:14, John 5:22, Revelation 19:11)

The Spirit (Nehemiah 9:20)

d) LOVE

The Father (John 3:16)

The Son (Ephesians 5:25, 1 John 3:16)

The Spirit (John 16:7-11, 1 Corinthians 2:10)

e) ETERNAL LIFE

The Father (John 5:26)

The Son (Micah 5:2, cf John 1:1-2, 1 John 5:11)

The Spirit (Isaiah 48:16)

f) ALL-KNOWING

The Father (Hebrews 4:13, cf Matthew 11:27, 1 Peter 1:2)

The Son (John 18:4, cf Matthew 9:4, John 2:25, 1 Corinthians 4:5)

The Spirit (Isaiah 11:2, cf 1 Corinthians 2:11)

g) EVERYWHERE

The Father (2 Chronicles 2:6)

The Son (Matthew 28:20, cf Ephesians 1:23)

The Spirit (Psalm 139:7)

h) ALL-POWERFUL

The Father (Mark 14:36, cf 1 Peter 1:5)

The Son (Hebrews 1:3, cf Matthew 24:30, 2 Corinthians 12:9, Philippians 3:21)

The Spirit (Romans 15:19)

i) UNCHANGEABLE

The Father (Hebrews 6:17, Psalm 33:11)

The Son (Hebrews 13:8)

The Spirit (John 14:16)

j) TRUTH

The Father (John 7:28, John 17:3)

The Son (1 John 5:20, cf John 1:14, 14:6, Revelation 19:11)

The Spirit (1 John 5:6, cf John 14:17, 15:26, 16:13)

**GOD CARES FOR YOU**

1. God knows ...

a) Our sorrows. (Exodus 3:7)

b) Our devotions. (2 Chronicles 16:9)

c) Our thoughts. (Psalm 44:21)

d) Our foolishness. (Psalm 69:5)

e) Our frailties. (Psalm 103:14)

f) Our deeds. (Psalm 139:2)

g) Our words. (Psalm 139:4)

h) The composition of the universe. (Psalm 147:4)

- i) All things. (Proverbs 15:3)
  - j) Our needs. (Matthew 6:32)
  - k) About animal creation. (Matthew 10:29)
  - l) Mankind. (Matthew 10:30)
  - m) What might or could have been. (Matthew 11:23)
  - n) His own. (John 10:14)
  - o) Past, present and future. (Acts 15:18)
2. God is able to ...
- a) Save forever those who believe in the Lord Jesus Christ - Hebrews 7:25
  - b) Supply every need - 2 Corinthians 9:8
  - c) Deliver all who are tempted - Hebrews 2:18
  - d) Sustain the weak believer and make him stand - Romans 14:4
  - e) Keep us from falling and make us blameless - Jude 24,25
  - f) Surpass all that we could ask or think - Ephesians 3:20
  - g) Raise us up in resurrection in the likeness of His Son - Hebrews 11:19
3. With God, all things are possible - Matthew 19:26
4. God is in control. Nothing will ever happen to you that you are not able to deal with. (1 Corinthians 10:13)
5. God's character is stable.
- a) If God is for you who can be against you. (Romans 8:31-34)
  - b) No matter what happens God's love is stable. (Romans 8:35-39)
6. God's promises are secure for he is always with us. (Matthew 28:19-20, Jeremiah 1:19)
7. God's power is always the same:-
- a) He will always keep us. (John 10:29, 2 Timothy 1:12,)
  - b) God does not forget us or lose His power to keep. (Jude 24)
  - c) Even if we fall away from fellowship we still are saved. (2 Timothy 2:13)
8. God knew before time what we would need in time and has provided for the supply of all our needs. (Philippians 4:19, Hebrews 4:16, Ephesians 3:12,)
9. God has the power to bless us. (2 Corinthians 9:8)
10. God is able to make all grace abound towards us. (Ephesians 3:20)

## MIRACLES AND GOD'S CHARACTER

Miracles demonstrate the attributes of God:

1. The Sovereignty of God was illustrated in:-
- a) the Lord's creative work of turning water into wine at Cana. (John 2:1-11)
  - b) His power when stilling the storm on Galilee. (Mark 4:35-41; Matthew 8:18)
  - c) the feeding of the 5000 and the 4000. (Mark 6:33-44; 8:1-9)
  - d) walking on the water at Galilee. (Mark 6:47-52)
  - e) His arrest in Gethsemane. (John 18:6)
2. The Righteousness of God was illustrated in:-  
the Lord's transfiguration before the disciples on the mountain, when they saw the Holiness of God in the Lord displayed. (Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36)
3. The Justice of God was illustrated in:-  
the cursing of the fig tree during the last week before the cross as a sign of His coming judgment upon unresponsive Israel. (Matthew 21:18-22; Mark 11:12-14, 20-26)
4. The Love of God was illustrated in:-  
all the healing ministries as the Lord's compassion flowed into action, even to the exhaustion of His humanity. While thirty-six specific miracles of the Lord are recorded, many thousands of healing miracles are passed over in a few isolated verses. (e.g. Matthew 9:35-36, 14:14, 15:30-31, 8:16-17 etc.)
5. The Eternal Life of God was illustrated in:-  
the great miracle of the resurrection of Christ.



6. The Omniscience of God was illustrated in:-  
 a his knowledge of where unseen shoals of fish were. (Matthew 4:18-22, Mark 1:16-20, John 21:1-14)  
 b where the fish was with just enough money in its mouth to pay the required tax. (Matthew 17:24-27)  
 c the knowledge about Nathaniel and the woman at the well at Sychar also shows his omniscience. (John 1:45-51; 4:5-43)
7. The Omnipresence of God was illustrated in:-  
 His ability to appear in various places many kilometres apart, demonstrating the truth of His promise to be with believers always. (Matthew 28:20)
8. The Omnipotence of God was illustrated in:-  
 The raising of people such as Lazarus from the dead.
9. The Immutability of God was illustrated in:-  
 The repetition of the miracle of the draught of fishes both before and after the resurrection showing that His character and power were unchanged.
10. The Veracity of God was illustrated in:-  
 The healing of the Centurion's servant and the Nobleman's son. The Lord said they were healed, and at that moment, many kilometres away, they were. (Matthew 8:5-13, Luke 7:1-10, John 4:46-54)
11. The Grace of God was illustrated in:-  
 The healing of Malchus' ear in the garden on the night of the Lord's arrest (Luke 22:50). It was a testimony to His Grace that as he faced the horror of the cross, our Lord could still stoop and heal one of His captors. It is significant that the last recorded miracle performed by the Lord before the cross benefited an enemy, one who had come to arrest him.

**LESSON 11 – THE FATHERHOOD OF GOD**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
11	The Fatherhood of God	Ephesians 3:14-15 1 John 4:9,10 Titus 3:3-7 Romans 4:13 Romans 8:15-17 John 8:30-47	Shekinah Glory Fatherhood of God

**INTRODUCTION**

This is one of the significant doctrines of Christian Theology, which is unique to Christianity.

“Father” is a word that is personal, passionate, and relational. It shows that God loves, cares and provides. There is therefore a relationship that it is possible for believers to have with God the Father. The Father is the first person in the Trinity and is represented as loving, electing and bestowing, the Son as redeeming, suffering and upholding and the Spirit as regenerating, indwelling, regenerating, baptizing, energizing and sanctifying.

The revelation of the Trinity allows God to be portrayed/understood in a relationship way. God the Father is seen as the first person of the Trinity but is not superior to the Son or the Holy Spirit who are equally God. The words Father and Son are words of accommodation showing relationship rather than superiority.

The Father did not form the Son and then between them formed the Holy Spirit - this is a false concept called the doctrine of procession. Jehovah's Witnesses and other cults teach this. We need to allow God to reveal Himself rather than we superimpose our concepts on Him. This is man telling God how he will be seen rather than seeking how God has revealed the truth, no matter how difficult it is to understand.

**God's Relation With Man**

God's relationship with man is divided into three aspects:-

- [a] The Father planned it and is the author of the plan.
- [b] The Son executes the plan.
- [c] The Holy Spirit makes the plan real to humanity.

These concepts are before time with no time distinction. Remember, we are in space and time speaking of events that occur before them..... When it gets difficult remember you are a creature speaking of the Creator!

**Fatherhood** - Fatherhood comes in various concepts:-

[1] - **Fatherhood over creation - Ephesians 3:14-15** - all beings have their origin in God. We get our life and very existence from God. There is therefore a brotherhood in the creation. The liberals however take this a step further and talk about the brotherhood of man and the universal Fatherhood of God.

This is a lie that is exposed by the Lord Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ said that all men are not brothers but only become such in Christ. It is noted that even Satan was given his life by God as he is created. There is no relationship in the Father - creation combination.

[2] - **Fatherhood by intimate relationship** which is the concept of the relationship between God and Israel. - Exodus 4:22 - Israel is my son - this is my firstborn. This is more than God saying that He is their creator but it is less than saying that they are regenerated. In the New Testament it says that all Israel is not Israel.

There is however a relationship between the Father and Israel, a care for Israel. He preserves the nation. In the Bible the word father is used a large number of times in relation to the relationship between God and Israel. However only a few Jews were regenerated.

[3] - **A specific relationship between the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ - Ephesians 1:3**. The first specific revelation of the New Testament is that God the Father is the father of the Lord Jesus Christ. It also shows without any doubt the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ by His attributes and His works.

The words Father and Son are used in the New Testament to show the intimacy of the relationship between God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ with out fulfilling all the relationships which would be true of a human relationship of Father and Son. This was the error of the Arian theologians who said that he was a "son" of God but not equal with God.

### **The Father And The Son**

The second person has been the Son from eternity past. For eternity there has been this close relationship between the Father and the Son. In **Isaiah 9:6** it shows that a child is born but a son is given. The baby was born but the Son was given as the Son had existed forever. What they are saying is that you think of the most noble father and the best possible son and the love between those two and you get a small glimpse of the relationship between the Father and the Son.

### **In Summary so far**

- [a] The Son of God is said to have been begotten of the Father - Psalm 2:7, John 1:14, 18, 3:16, 18 1 John 4:9.
- [b] The Father acknowledged the Lord Jesus Christ as His Son - Matthew 3:17, 17:5, Luke 9:35.
- [c] The Father is acknowledged by the Son - Matthew 11:27, 26:63-64, Luke 22:29, **John 8:16-29, 33-44, 17:1**. The Son is subject to the Father's plan but it should be remembered that the plan had been a joint plan when it was conceived with its recognition of role and responsibility.
- [d] The fact that God the Father is acknowledged by men to be the Father of the Lord Jesus Christ - Matthew 16:16, Mark 15:39, John 1:34, 49, Acts 3:13.
- [e] The Son acknowledges the Father by being subject to Him - John 8:29,49.
- [f] Even the demons recognize this relationship between the Father and the Son - Matthew 8:29. Satan's eternal damnation relies on this relationship and its permanency.

The relationship between the Father and the Son is also shown in the giving of the Son to us. Man's response to God is in contrast with the Son's relationship with the Father. The response of the Son to the Father is a challenge for us. Have you talked to your Father today? The Lord told us to pray to the Father as our father. It does not matter what your human father was like you can have a close relationship with your heavenly Father. Begin with confession and end with praise. True worship is grounded in this doctrine, but it is the relational aspects that we can alone really grasp.

If you can encourage your flock to be intimate with God it will reduce significantly your counselling requirements.

[4] - **The Father is the father of all regenerate**. We can say "our father" because we have a relationship which has been established through the Son.

We are the blood bought children of God. **Titus 3:1-7** - We are heirs to eternal life. In verses 5-8 we have the three persons of the Godhead - the Holy Spirit - v 5, the Lord Jesus Christ - v 6, and the Father in v 8. Not by anything we

have done but we have become heirs of the grace of God. We have therefore the fatherhood of God and the heirship of the saints. **1 Peter 2:7-10.**

[a] Before salvation we were sold unto sin, we were not daughters/sons. Spiritually we were dead other than creatures to our creator - Ephesians 2:19, Romans 7:14.

[b] Before salvation we were all of different races, none of us could call each other sister or brother. We now only have a relationship through the Father only with those who are related to our Lord Jesus Christ.

[c] Salvation alone makes us children of God rather than slaves to sin.

[d] Only God can make us His children as only God has the power. John 3 - we are born from above.

[e] Unbelievers cannot or will not see this unique relationship. As "sons of rebellion" believe the lies of their father - Satan - who promotes the concept of the universal fatherhood of God. This is the concept which is putting most of the people on this earth into the Lake of Fire. John 8:44 They reject their need of a Saviour, for they feel they are OK anyway.

[f] The believer's salvation-relationship guarantees heir-ship, eternal life, and fellowship with God forever. 1 John 3:2-3, Romans 8:16-18.

[g] The Holy Spirit is the down payment on believer's inheritance, the assurance that they are the sons of God. Ephesians 1:14.

[h] Believers are heirs of salvation and eternal life in Christ Jesus. We have the assurance of receiving a resurrection body.

[i] The source of our confidence of receiving a resurrection body is based on the Lord's resurrection, a lively hope. We can depend on Him forever. We can trust the Father because we have a relationship with the Son.

**John 8:30 - 55** - These people thought that their inheritance through Abraham made them acceptable to God. As Jews they were in a special relationship but they were not saved. They had pride in their life. You are living in a state of sin in the house of Israel as a servant which means you are not a permanent resident as you are a servant rather than a son. He tells them they are of their father the devil - v 44.

The Jewish leadership also called Jesus illegitimate believing him to be the offspring of Mary and a Roman soldier.

They say they are related to God through Abraham. God however does not have grandchildren he has sons. It does not matter who your father was you need a personal relationship with God. He points out that they do not hear them because they are not of God. They were children of the devil because they were in rebellion. **Whose son are you?** You choose your father and what family you are in eternally. If you turn down God's grace you choose the lake of fire, the worst of choices, for it is eternal – with no relief or change possible.

When dealing with the Gentile you should start with the father of creation and give them the gospel as Paul did on Mars hill. With the Jews however you start with God founding the nation Israel and then proceed to the gospel saying you have to know Him as your own personal father.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **SHEKINAH GLORY**

1. The Shekinah glory is the visible manifestation of the presence of God. The usual title used is the glory of God.
2. It is from the Hebrew word "shachan" meaning dwelling.
3. It took the form of light, fire, cloud or a combination of these.
4. At times it is associated with the following, the Angel of Jehovah, the Holy Spirit, The Cherubim and the motif of thick darkness.
5. Appearances of the Shekinah Glory in the Old Testament
  - a) The Garden of Eden [Genesis 3:8]
  - b) The time of the Abrahamic Covenant [Genesis 15:12-18]
  - c) The burning bush [Exodus 3:1-5]
  - d) At the Exodus [Exodus 13:21,22]
  - e) At Mount Sinai [Exodus 19:16-20]

- f) The special manifestation to Moses [Exodus 33:17-23]
  - g) The Tabernacle and the Ark of the Covenant [Exodus 29:42-46]
  - h) The book of Leviticus [Leviticus 9:6-7, 22-24]
  - i) The Book of Numbers [Numbers 13:30-14:45, 16:1-50, 20:6-13]
  - j) The period of Joshua and the Judges [1 Samuel 4:21-22]
  - k) Solomon's Temple [1 Kings 8:1-13, 2 Chronicles 5:2-7:3]
  - l) The departure of the Shekinah Glory [Ezekiel 1:28, 3:12,23, 8:3-4, 9:3a, 10:4, 18-19, 11:22-23]
  - m) The Shekinah glory was not in the second Temple [Haggai 2:3,9]
6. Appearance of the Shekinah Glory in the New Testament.
- a) To the Shepherds - Luke 2:8-9
  - b) The Christmas star - Matthew 2:1-12
  - c) It comes in a new form - John 1:1-14
  - d) The transfiguration - Matthew 17:1-8, Mark 9:2-8, Luke 9:28-36, 2 Peter 1:16-18
  - e) The reflection of that glory - 2 Corinthians 3:12-18
  - f) The Book of the Acts - Acts 2:1-3, 9:3-8, 22:6-11, 26:13-18
  - g) The Revelation - Revelation 1:12-16,
  - h) In the Tribulation - Revelation 15:8
  - i) The Second Coming of Christ - Matthew 16:27, 24:30, Mark 13:26, Luke 21:27
  - j) The Millennium - Ezekiel 43:1-7a, 44:1-2, Zechariah 2:4-5, Isaiah 36:1-2, 58:8-9a, 60:1-3
  - k) The Eternal State - Revelation 21:1-3, 21:23-24

**FATHERHOOD OF GOD**

Fatherhood comes in various concepts:-

1. The Fatherhood over creation - Ephesians 3:14-15 - all beings have their origin in God. We get our life and very existence from God. There is therefore a brotherhood in the creation. The liberals however take this a step further and talk about the brotherhood of man and the universal Fatherhood of God which is a lie which is exposed by the Lord Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ said that all men are not brothers but only become such in Christ. Even Satan was given his life by God. There is no relationship in the Father creatorship combination.
2. Fatherhood by intimate relationship which is the concept of the relationship between God and Israel. In Exodus 4:22 Israel is my son - this is my firstborn. This is more than God saying that He is their creator but it is less than saying that they are regenerated. In the New Testament it says that all Israel is not Israel. There is however a relationship between the Father and Israel, a care for Israel. He preserves the nation. In the Bible the word father is used a large number of times in relation to the relationship between God and Israel. However only a few Jews were regenerated.
3. A specific relationship between the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ - Ephesians 1:3. The first specific revelation of the New Testament is that God the Father is the father of the Lord Jesus Christ. It also shows without any doubt the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ by His attributes and His works. The words father and son are used in the New Testament to show the intimacy of the relationship between God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ with out fulfilling all the relationships which would be true of a human relationship of Father and Son. This was the error of the Arian theologians who said that he was a son of God but not equal with God.
4. The second person has been the Son from eternity past. For eternity there has been this close relationship between the Father and the Son. In Isaiah 9:6 it shows that a child is born but a son is given. The baby was born but the Son was given as the Son had existed forever. What they are saying is that you think of the most noble father and the best possible son and the love between those two and you get a small glimpse of the relationship between the Father and the Son.
5. The Father of believers in the Lord Jesus Christ (Romans 8:15, Galatians 4:6-7)
  - a) Only in Christ do we become brothers. (Galatians 3:27-29) This is the result of the Holy Spirit who baptizes us into the body of Christ and makes us a new creation in Him. (1 Corinthians 12:13, Ephesians 4:5)
  - b) God is not the spiritual father of the unregenerate man, they are His creation but not His children. (John 14:6) Before salvation we were sons of our sinful nature. (John 8:42-47, Ephesians 2:19)
6. In summary therefore
  - [a] The Son of God is said to have been begotten of the Father - Psalm 2:7, John 1:14, 18, 3:16,18 1 John 4:9
  - [b] The Father acknowledged the Lord Jesus Christ as His Son - Matthew 3:17, 17:5, Luke 9:35
  - [c] The Father is acknowledged by the Son - Matthew 11:27, 26:63-64, Luke 22:29, John 8:16-29, 33-44, 17:1 The Son is subject to the Father's plan but it should be remembered that the plan had been a joint plan when it was conceived with its recognition of role and responsibility.
  - [d] The fact that God the Father is acknowledged by men to be the Father of the Lord Jesus Christ - Matthew 16:16, Mark 15:39, John 1:34, 49, Acts 3:13
  - [e] The Son acknowledges the Father by being subject to Him - John 8:29,49

[f] Even the demons recognise this relationship between the Father and the Son - Matthew 8:29 Satan's eternal damnation relies on this relationship and its permanency

7. Before salvation all members of the human race were "sold under sin", we were strangers before God, not sons. Romans 7:14, Ephesians 2:19. Spiritually we were dead, we had no relationship with God other than creatures to the creator we did not recognize Ephesians 2:1

8. Before salvation we were all of different races, the only brotherhood we can ever have is in Christ. Galatians 3:27-29.

9. Salvation alone makes us children of God. Before we were slaves of sin, sons of our old sin nature, children of rebellion. Ephesians 2:19, John 8:42-47, 1John 3:10-15.

10. Only God can make us his children, for only God has that power. John 1:12,13. We are either 'born-again', born from above or we remain spiritually dead, children of Satan, John 3:3,6,36.

11. Unbelievers cannot and will not see this unique relationship. 1John 3:1, 1 Corinthians 1:18. As sons of rebellion they believe their father's lie i.e. the universal fatherhood of God and universal brotherhood of man (both of which are false concepts). John 8:44. This lie perpetrates the idea that God is a "soft-touch" and will not judge man for their sin, but all will be well in the end. This is declared false by God in his word.

12. Believers sonship guarantees heirship, eternal life and fellowship for them. 1 John 3:2,3, Romans 8:16-18.

13. The Holy Spirit is God's down payment on the believer's inheritance - the assurance of more to come, Ephesians 1:14.

14. Believers are heirs of eternal life through relationship with God in Christ John 8:35, 51.

a) receiving rewards: Colossians 3:24,25, 2 John 8, 1 Corinthians 3:8 and,

b) receiving a resurrection body. 1 Corinthians 15:50-54.

15. The source of our confidence is based in the Lords resurrection. He is therefore our "lively hope", 1 Peter 1:3-5. He can be depended upon to meet all needs for we will be with him forever. John 14:1-4.

**Notes**

## SECTION C – CHRISTOLOGY – THE STUDY OF THE CHRIST

### LESSON 12 – DEITY OF CHRIST

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
12	Deity of Christ	Luke 24:36-53 John 20:24-31	Hypostatic Union I am Christ – Deity

#### **INTRODUCTION**

As we look at our first text in **Luke chapter 24 verses 36 through 53**, we enter a subject area that caused great debate in the early church. We come again face to face with our limits as human beings here, for we cannot ever, this side of eternity understand how the Lord can be both man and God. The reason this is such a hard thing is that it only has happened once, and will never happen again; only the Lord has this "hypostatic union". We have nothing to compare this with, nor any analogies to make.

In his resurrection body the disciples see him as he truly is; the Unique person of the universe, the God-Man. Standing before them in glorified body. Their response and ours is to be worship; they fell at his feet as though dead!

The early church councils in the fourth and fifth century tried to define this doctrine and they had great difficulty. Each time they thought they had it right a false view popped up and they had to try again and find a better Greek word to eliminate the false view (heresy). All the false views that exist in the early church exist today as cults. For example the Jehovah's Witnesses, and Mormons all hold views that the early church rejected. We will study these councils and the debates in our Church History lecture course.

The Lord's work now for us as our mediator at the right hand of the father depends on his being fully equal with both parties. His work as mediator depends on his hypostatic union. This word comes from two Greek words, meaning, "two standing under one essence". Thomas saw it in a moment in **John 20:24-31**, and we must have the same response as he did. "My Lord and my God". We are to be like the apostles, observe the facts about the resurrected Lord.

#### **The Lord's Titles**

The Lord's titles prove that the disciples believed in this doctrine. He is called, the Son of God, Luke 22:70, and John 5:18, tells us that this meant to Jews equality with God the Father. He calls himself the first and the last, Rev 1:8, 17, and Isaiah 41:4 tells us that this means he is God. He is the Lord of All, 1 Corinthians 2:8. He is our great God, Romans 9:5.

#### **His Attributes**

He has all of the attributes of deity ascribed to him.

All Powerful - Luke 4 : 39, 7:14, 15, 8 : 54, 55, John 5 : 25.  
 All Knowing - John 2: 24, 25, 4 : 16 - 19, Mark 2 : 8, Luke 5 : 22.  
 Everywhere - Matthew 18 : 20, 28 : 20, John 3 : 13.  
 Eternal Life - John 1 : 1, Col 1 : 17, John 8 : 58, 17: 5, 1 John 1 : 1.  
 Unchangeable - Hebrews 1 : 12, 13 : 8.  
 He forgives sin - Mark 2 : 5 - 10, Luke 7 : 48.  
 Creator - Hebrews 1 : 10, John 1 : 3, Colossians 1 : 16.  
 He Raises the dead - John 6 : 39, 44.  
 Justice - 2 Timothy 4 : 1.  
 He gives eternal life - John 10 : 28, 17 : 2.

He is therefore clearly pure deity but also pure humanity; he thirsted, hungered, was weary, slept, wept and cried out in pain, and died. Find the references to these things in your bible as you do this study.

How is it that the two natures of the Lord were combined? When we ask this we are face to face with the mystery of the universe, the mystery of the incarnation and the plan to provide our salvation.

#### **DOCTRINES**

HYPOSTATIC UNION

1. Hypostasis means standing together under one essence, two things united under one with no loss or transfer to the other and no change to either. In the person of Jesus Christ the two natures, divine and human, were inseparably linked with no loss or transfer of properties or attributes, and no mixture or loss of separate identity the union was personal and eternal. The Lord Jesus Christ is still perfectly human and divine Isaiah 7:14, Isaiah 9:6, John 1:1-14, Romans 1:2-5, Romans 9:5, Philippians 2:5-11, 1 Timothy 3:16, Hebrews 1:4
2. The incarnate person of the Lord Jesus Christ included undiminished deity. Jesus Christ is God, He remained co equal and co eternal with the Father while on earth. Christ is eternal because God is eternal life. His deity was never affected by His death, resurrection and session. As God Jesus Christ could not die. However as a baby in the cradle he was holding the universe together.
3. The Lord Jesus Christ was also true humanity; body, soul and spirit although due to the virgin birth he had no old sin nature 1 Peter 2:22
4. The two natures of Jesus Christ are united with no transfer of attributes. Each set of attributes corresponds to the respective natures. The divine attributes such as eternal life, all knowing, everywhere, refers to His divine nature, the human attributes correspond to His human nature. To remove any attribute from His deity would be to destroy deity.
5. No aspect of the divine nature was lacking, although certain attributes were not exercised in line with the Father's plan Matthew 4:1-10, 27:40-50.
6. The union of the two natures in the person of Christ must be considered personal, human to the human, divine to the divine. They are never mixed. The union was therefore personal and hypostatic; one essence with two natures.
7. Deity did not indwell humanity or possess it. The union was more than sympathy and harmony, it was unique combining the two natures eternally. He is the God – man
8. Christ had two natures in one person, therefore he could be supremely powerful yet weak at the same time.
  - a) Deity cannot be tempted, humanity can. Matthew 4:1-10
  - b) Deity cannot thirst, humanity can John 19:28.
  - c) Deity is omniscient , humanity learns Luke 2:40,52
9. The necessity of the humanity of the Lord Jesus Christ is seen in the following:-
  - a) To be our Saviour he had to be man as God cannot die. Hebrews 2:14,15, Philippians 2:7,8
  - b) To be our mediator He had to be equal with both God and man. Job 9:2, 32-33, 1 Timothy 2:5-6
  - c) To be our High Priest He must be a man. Hebrews 7:4,5 14-28; 10:5, 10-14
  - d) To be a king he must be a man, a Jew in the line of David. Psalm 89:20-37, 2 Samuel 7:8-16
10. There are three categories of sayings or actions of the Lord:
  - a) From his deity alone John 8:58
  - b) From his humanity alone John 19:28
  - c) From his hypostatic union - John 11:25,26
11. The uniqueness of the person of the Lord Jesus Christ is a key doctrine to understand for all believers, for it is on this point that the accurate preaching of the gospel rests. 1 Timothy 3:16
12. The gospel in one word is Immanuel - God with us. John's testimony on this point John 1:14. In Christ we see God's love and favour towards man. As God revealed himself in the Old Testament, so He perfectly reveals himself in the person of the unique person of the universe , the God man the Lord Jesus Christ.

I AM

The use of the " I AM" means that the Lord was saying that He is God. In Exodus 3:14 God reveals Himself to Moses as, I AM THAT I AM. Using this phrase at His arrest in John 18:2-6, He caused the army group to fall backwards due to His power as God flashing forth for a millisecond, before being led away as a willing sacrifice. We are not confronted with the Jesus of liberalism here, but with the Lord of lords, King of kings, God stepping down to speak authoritatively to mankind. There are seven "I AM's" in the New Testament.

1. PROVISION - I AM THE BREAD OF LIFE John 6:30-35 - The feeding of the five thousand - a miracle involving bread. God provided miraculous physical food in the desert for forty years - Manna. Christ is our spiritual food. He says that he is the only source of spiritual food for you. There is life in no other. No one else can satisfy the spiritual hunger in man. He tells us He is the bread from heaven - He shows Himself as God. The bread of the Passover - unleavened, pierced and griddled; speaking of his body.

2. **SPIRITUALITY - I AM THE LIGHT** John 8:12 - The feast of Tabernacles (where He also told the people to have the everlasting water John 7:37-39). When the Lord says this He is saying that He is the only source of pure light as shown in His matchless character. He is stating that He is God. 1 John 1 says that God is light and in Him is there no darkness at all. We are to walk in the light in fellowship with God.
3. **SALVATION - I AM THE DOOR** John 10:7 - The Sheepfolds of Jerusalem, Psalms 22-24. To be the door of the sheepfold, He is the only way into the plan of God. Anyone that tries to come any other way is a liar and a thief. If this is not true there is no way to God.
4. **GUIDANCE - I AM THE GOOD SHEPHERD** John 10:11 - the good shepherd, the only one who really cares. Many from other religions say that they really care but it is Jesus the good shepherd, the only one who really cares. All other systems drop you into hell.
5. **RESURRECTION - I AM THE RESURRECTION AND THE LIFE** John 11:20-25 - The death of Lazarus. Christ conquers death proving He is God, the resurrection and the life, He is the way the truth and life forever. The only way to eternal life is in Christ Jesus. To reject Him is to have eternal life in the Lake of Fire
6. **TRUTH/LIFE - I AM THE WAY THE TRUTH AND THE LIFE** John 14: 6 - There is no other way to gain meaning in this life and eternal life than through him. We are related to the King of kings and Lord of lords who came and died for us that we might live. We should be obedient to our Lord who bought us with His blood. I am the way the truth and the life. The only way to live is in the truth, the only way to have life and have it more abundantly is in Him. The only way to God is through the God man Jesus Christ. We need to live in Him as He is the only one who has the truth.
7. **PRODUCTION - I AM THE TRUE VINE** John 15:1-5 - Walking from the Passover meal past the Temple towards Gethsemane, He talks about the spiritual production that is ours in union with Him. I am the true vine - the only way to spiritual productivity is in Christ Jesus through the fruit of the Spirit. Love Joy Peace and the other fruit is only available in Christ. You have to be in the vine to have fruit. Many unbelievers want joy and peace but they cannot have it without Christ.

**CHRIST: DEITY**

1. Jesus Christ is both God and man. The two natures are inseparably united without mixture or loss of separate identity, the union being personal and eternal. (Philippians 2:5-11, John 1:1-14, Romans 1:4, Romans 9:5, 1 Timothy 3:16)
2. Jesus Christ is undiminished deity. This includes all the divine characteristics:
  - a) Sovereignty (Genesis 1, Revelation 1:5, 6, 17:14, 19:16)
  - b) Eternal Life (Isaiah 9:6, Micah 5:2, John 1:1-2, 8:58, Colossians 1:16-17, Ephesians 1:4, Revelation 1:8)
  - c) Holiness (Luke 1:35, Acts 3:14, Hebrews 7:26)
  - d) Love (John 13:1, 34, 1 John 3:16)
  - e) Unchangeable (Hebrews 13:8)
  - f) All Knowing (Matthew 9:4, John 2:25, John 18:4, 1 Corinthians 4:5, Colossians 2:3, Revelation 2:23)
  - g) All Powerful (Matthew 24:30, 28:18, 1 Corinthians 15:28, Philippians 3:2 1, Hebrews 1:3, Revelation 1:8)
  - h) Everywhere (Matthew 28:20, Ephesians 1:23, Colossians 1:27)
  - i) Truth (John 14:6, Revelation 3:7)
3. Christ is the Son of God, equal with the Father and the Holy Spirit (Matthew 28:19, 2 Corinthians 13:14, 1 Peter 1:2)
4. Proofs of the deity of Christ.
  - a) He is the Creator of all. (John 1:3, 10, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:10)
  - b) He is the Preserver of all things. (Colossians 1:17, Hebrews 1:3)
  - c) He pardons sin. (Luke 5:21, 24)
  - d) He raises the dead. (John 5:21, 28-29, 11:42-43)
  - e) He will reward the saints. (2 Corinthians 5:10)
  - f) He will judge the world in the Last Day. (John 5:22)
  - g) He receives worship (Hebrews 1:6)
5. Jesus Christ is Jehovah.
  - a) Jesus is God - (Isaiah 9:6; John 1:1; John 20:28; 2 Peter 1:1, Titus 2:13).  
Jehovah is God - (Jeremiah 32:18; (Isaiah 43:10; (Isaiah 45:22; Philippians 2:10).
  - b) Jesus is I AM (John 8:24; 8:58; 13:19; 18:5).  
Jehovah is I AM (Isaiah 43:10; Exodus 3:13-14; Deuteronomy 32:39).
  - c) Jesus is the First and the Last (Revelation 1:17; 2:8; 22:13).



Jehovah is the First and the Last (Isaiah 44:6; 48:12; 41:4).

d) Jesus is the Rock (1 Corinthians 10:4; Isaiah 8:14; 1 Peter 2:6; Matthew 16:18).  
 Jehovah is the Rock (Exodus 17:6; Isaiah 17:10; 2 Samuel 22:32; Deuteronomy 32:4).

e) Jesus is Saviour (Acts 2:21; 4:12; Romans 10:9; Jude 25).  
 Jehovah is Saviour (Psalm 106:21; Hosea 13:4; Isaiah 45:21; 43:3,11).

f) Jesus is Lord of Lords (Revelation 17:14; 19:16; 1 Timothy 6:14-16).  
 Jehovah is Lord of Lords (Psalm 136:1-3; Deuteronomy 10:17).

g) Jesus is Creator (John 1:3; Colossians 1:15-17; Hebrews 1:10).  
 Jehovah is Creator (Job 33:4; Isaiah 40:28; Genesis 1:1).

h) Jesus is Light (John 8:12; John 1:9; Luke 2:32).  
 Jehovah is Light (Micah 7-8; Isaiah 60:20; Psalm 27:1).

i) Jesus is Judge (2 Timothy 4:1; 2 Corinthians 5:10; Romans 14:10).  
 Jehovah is Judge (Genesis 18:25; Joel 3:12).

j) It is quite clear that Jesus is God (1 John 5:5)

6. Jesus lived on earth in total dependence upon God the Father. He never used His own divine attributes in contradiction to the will of the Father. (Matthew 4:1-11, 27:42-43)

7. At the birth of Christ no change occurred in the deity of Jesus Christ. During His earthly life, some attributes were unused but they were never deleted or destroyed. To remove any attribute from His deity would be to destroy deity.

8. Jesus Christ is true humanity. This includes attributes such as thirst, hunger, weariness. (John 19:28)

9. Jesus Christ had a body, soul and spirit, but no old sin nature. He did not receive an old sin nature because of the virgin birth.

10. God became flesh, it is not a case of God merely possessing humanity.

**LESSON 13 – THE INCARNATION OF THE LORD JESUS CHRIST**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
13	Incarnation of Christ	Hebrews 1:1-6 Isaiah 9:6,7 John 1:1-5, 14-18	Virgin Birth Firstborn – Jesus as Christ – Testimonies re

**INTRODUCTION**

**Hebrews 1:1-6** shows the person and work of Christ as Messiah and Saviour of mankind. Christology is a most important subject. The message of Hebrews is that God has stepped into history with the Creator becoming a creature. It is quite clear that we are talking about the Lord Jesus Christ, **John 1:1-5, 14-18**.

His victory at the Cross showed His superiority over everything including the angels. In the first six verses of Hebrews we have the summary of the subject. This passage is very profound. The most important thing is that God became man and dwelt amongst us.

**Isaiah 9:6-7** looks forward to the incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ. Here it should be noted that the child is born and the Son is given. The humanity of Christ was born of Mary but the Son, the deity was given, as the Son has always existed. Here we have the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus Christ brought together to form the hypostatic union. The full meaning of this is hidden from us even yet.

The term “pre-incarnate Christ” means the appearances of the Lord before the incarnation, before He was born of the Virgin Mary. Before you talk about the virgin birth you have to talk about the person who is being virgin born, the person who is God and man, and that He was God before he became man. The Lord Jesus Christ is unique in the history of the universe - Christ is unique - Emmanuel - God with us.

The doctrine of the person of Christ is crucial to the Christian faith. It is basic to Soteriology [saviourhood] because if He was not what He claimed to be then His atonement was deficient and therefore not sufficient.

This is why an incorrect view of the Lord Jesus Christ will give an incorrect view of salvation, sanctification and eschatology. Because of the pre existence of Christ He was there to be given before He was given, being eternally with the Father, He is God.

Because of His eternity He did not come into existence and was therefore not a created person. John 8:58 - there is no point in human history, there is no time in the future when He will not be able to say "I AM" because He is from eternity to eternity. If that is incorrect you have no Saviour.

Looking at the Character of God, the Father is eternal life, and Christ is eternal life. What was the Lord doing before he was born as a member of humanity? He was the Creator - Hebrews 1, the revealed Angel of Jehovah in the Old Testament. The person of Christ demands a virgin birth because God is becoming man and no human male can be involved in His birth because it is through the male that the Old Sin Nature comes.

### **THE BIRTH OF THE LORD JESUS CHRIST**

The birth of the Lord Jesus Christ in Bethlehem, "house of bread", in Judea probably in the autumn, close to or on we suspect, the Feast of Tabernacles. The date of the birth of our Lord has been placed variously from 1 to 7 BC. Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem when Cyrenius was Governor of Syria and Herod was king in Jerusalem. **Luke 2:2.** Justin Martyr also stated this and referred to taxation records which were still in existence in his time to confirm that Joseph and Mary were resident in Nazareth and went to Bethlehem for the census. [Apol.i. 34,46]

Until the middle of the 19th century the only historical reference to Cyrenius as the Greeks called him, or as he was known by the Romans, P. Sulpicius Quirinus, was to a period some 10 years after the death of Herod which caused the school of higher criticism to try and discredit the account in Luke.

However the German Dr Zumpt proved that Cyrenius was twice the Governor of the province and that his first period dated from BC 4 when he succeeded Quinctilius Varus.

Josephus tells us that Herod died in the 37th year of his reign. It is known that Herod was made king by the Romans in 40 BC during the consulship of Domitus Calvinus and Asinius Pollio thus his death was either in 4 or 3 BC.

Josephus also states that on the night that Herod ordered the execution of his sons, who he believed were plotting to overthrow him, there was an eclipse of the moon. It is also known that Herod died within days of their execution.

Johnson in his "Eclipses Past and Future" states that there was a lunar eclipse observable at Jerusalem with a maximum effect at 2:34 am on 13th March BC 4 with the next one visible in that city being a full eclipse at 12:15 am on the 9th January BC 1. It is therefore seen that the year of Herod's death was 4 BC.

Josephus also tells us that Archelaus, Herod's heir, remained for 7 days in seclusion after the death of Herod, and that whilst he was well received initially he had to call in the guard prior to his going to Jerusalem on 8th Nisan to celebrate Passover. It is therefore concluded that Herod died in the last two weeks of March 4 BC.

The Greek word for young child which described our Lord at the time of Herod's search for him indicates a child less than 18 months old but not a baby.

It is clear from scriptural evidence that Jesus Christ was born in September – October and it would appear likely that this was either in the year 5 or 6 BC. Remember 25 December is just the date chosen by the Roman Church to Christianize the pagan feast of Saturnalia – Mid-Winter's Day.

The Lord Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem of Judea to the Virgin Mary and the Holy Spirit - **Luke 2:7.**

Joseph demonstrated to be the legal though not natural father - **Matthew 1:16-20.**

**Around 4 BC** Visit of the Wise Men from Babylon, or further East in Persia, seeking the child born to be king whose star they had seen in the east. Herod sees this as a threat to his dynasty and asks the Wise Men to report back to him once they have located the Christ child so that he may eliminate the threat, but being divinely guided they escape by another route. - **Matthew 2:1-12.**

Herod kills all the small boys two years old and under in an attempt to eliminate the legitimate King of the Jews but Joseph, Mary and the young Jesus travel to Egypt until Herod is dead. - **Matthew 2:13-18.**

Herod the Great dies in the spring. Just prior to dying due to paranoia he kills some of his sons thereby removing the immediate threat to Jesus from the Herodian line.

**ARCHELAUS** was ethnarch of Judea, Samaria and Idumea until 6AD. During his reign of ten years he made many enemies and exercised great cruelty towards both Samaritans and Jews alike putting to death according to Josephus 3000 Jews in the Temple not long after his accession. In 6 AD as a result of complaints to the Emperor from his brothers and subjects he was banished to the far regions of the Roman Empire and his kingdom became a Third Class Roman Province under a Procurator, responsible to the Governor of Syria. - **Matthew 2:22.**

As teachers we are responsible for the teaching ministry of the Church. By being a pastor you have an axe put at your neck by the Lord. The Lord's judgment is harsher on the unfaithful pastor than on others. We are to teach the full doctrine of the unique person of the Lord Jesus Christ to our people, so they know the truth about him as their Saviour and Lord.

**Isaiah 41:8-14** - gives the Jewish hope that is in the Lord Jesus Christ. **John 1:14** shows that God became flesh and dwelt amongst us. He has not left us in the dark about who he is. The result of accurate preaching about the incarnation will be worship in the lives of the hearers.

True theology will cause you to end all study with you on your knees, false theology will have people arguing with each other, and this is also the division between good and bad Bible teaching. By the fruit of teaching is the teacher known!!!!

### **THE PURPOSE OF THE INCARNATION**

God became flesh to reveal Himself to us, to provide an effective sacrifice for sin, to fulfill the Davidic covenant, to destroy the works of the Devil, to be a sympathetic High Priest for mankind and have the right to judge. They all focus on the purpose of the Lord's coming. This is a central point of the Christian faith not just the "Christmas" message. What was predicted by Isaiah came to pass.

There are over 300 prophecies in the Old Testament regarding the incarnation of Christ.

#### **Some points to note**

- [a] The humanity of Christ was purposed from before the foundation of the world - Ephesians 1:4-7, 3:11, Revelation 13:8.
- [b] Every type and prophecy of the Old Testament concerning Christ was in anticipation of the Incarnate Son of God.
- [c] The fact of the humanity of Christ is seen in His annunciation and birth. - Luke 1:31-35
- [d] His life here on earth revealed His humanity.
- [e] The humanity of Christ is seen in His death and resurrection.
- [f] The fact of the humanity of Christ is seen in that He ascended into heaven and is now, in His human glorified body, ministering for His own.
- [g] When He comes again it will be "the same Jesus" coming as He went, in the same body though glorified in which He became incarnate.

In the complete victory of His incarnation He becomes head of the Church.

### **JOHN'S GOSPEL AND THE SAVIOUR**

**Seven passages in John's gospel** bring this together and provides the key to that gospel.

The main purpose of the incarnation was that He came to die for your sins.

- John 1:29 - behold the lamb of God that taketh away the sins of the world;
- John 3:14,15 - the person who came to hang on the tree;
- John 6:51 - the living bread which came down from heaven that will give eternal life to those who eat it.
- John 10:11 - the good shepherd that gives His life for the sheep
- John 11:49-52 - the person to die for the nation
- John 12:24 - The corn of wheat that dies so that it may bear much fruit.
- John 15:13-14 - the example that 'greater love hath no man than he who will lay down his life for his friends'.

You cannot get around it the Lord came to die. The cross/empty tomb is central.

He had to become human to be King, Priest, Mediator and Saviour.

### **DOCTRINES**

#### **VIRGIN BIRTH**

1. Jesus Christ had to be born of a virgin to fulfil prophecy. (Isaiah 7:1 4)
2. Jesus had to be born of a virgin to confirm the curse of Coniah. (Jeremiah 22:28-30)
  - a) Coniah was a believer but an evil king at the time of the Babylonian captivity.
  - b) Coniah is also in the direct line of Christ in Joseph's lineage from David (Matthew 1:6, 1:11, 1:16) through Solomon. This is the Kingly line.
  - c) Mary was also in the direct line of Christ from David (Luke 3:23, Luke 3:31) through Nathan. In Luke 3:23 Joseph is the son-in-law of Heli, Mary's father.

d) Both lines, Solomon's and Nathan's meet in the person of Jesus Christ but by the virgin birth Coniah's line is cut off as Joseph is the legal but not natural father of Jesus Christ.

3. Jesus had to be born of a virgin to not have the sin nature of Adam. The sin nature of man comes down through the male. (1 Timothy 2:14)

a) Adam, as the head, was responsible for his wife.

b) Eve was deceived and sinned.

c) Adam made deliberate choice.

4. In order to be the God-Man Jesus had to be conceived of the Holy Spirit to Mary.

5. The virgin birth is therefore critical especially in the doctrine of Redemption, Imputation and Propitiation. NO virgin birth - NO salvation.

**CHRIST: FIRSTBORN**

1. He is the firstborn of all Creation - Colossians 1:15, John 1:18, 1 John 4:12

2. He is called the first born of Mary. As such he is the elder of the household and as He is descended from David through both of His genealogies he inherits the kingdom of David. Through Mary He has his title as Messiah - Matthew 1:25, Luke 2:7

3. The Lord is the firstborn of the Royal Family of God - Romans 8:29

4. He is the firstborn in resurrection, He is the first to be raised from the dead - Colossians 1:18, Hebrews 1:5,6

5. He is the first fruits of resurrection. - 1 Corinthians 15:20-23

6. The church is called the assembly of the firstborn. - Hebrews 12:23

**CHRIST: TESTIMONIES ABOUT JESUS CHRIST**

**TESTIMONIES BY CHRIST OF HIMSELF**

1. He claimed to transcend the Mosaic Law, and to be entitled to rewrite it. (Matthew 5:21-48.)

2. He claimed pre-existence as God. He freely used the divine "I am" which was the name of Jehovah God in the Old Testament. (John 6:35, 8:12,58, 10:7,11, 11:25, 14:6, 15:5)

3. He told the disciples to pray in His name. (John 14:14)

4. He claimed to have come down from heaven and that He would return to where He came from. (John 3:13, 6:33,42, 50-51, 62; 14:2-7)

5. He claimed power over death. He spoke of laying his life down and that He had the power to take it up again. (John 10:17-18, 11:24-44)

6. He claimed that death could not hold Him and that he would rise up again in three days. (John 2:19)

7. He claimed to be able to raise up all the dead on the last day. (John 5:25-29, 11:25)

8. He claimed that he was the judge of all men. (Matthew 25:31; John 5:22)

9. He claimed that to trust Him was the same as trusting God; thereby making Himself equal to God. (Matthew 28:18-19, John 14:1)

10. He claimed that man can only really know God as He is revealed in Him. (Matthew 11:27; John 14:6)

11. He accepted worship as right for Himself, that belonged only to God; from Nathaniel (John 1:49), from Peter (Matthew 16:16) and from Thomas. (John 20:28)

12. He claimed that to see Him was to see God the Father. (John 14:9-10)

13. He claimed that He should be honoured as God is honoured, indeed that God is honoured when He is honoured. (John 5:22-23)

14. He claimed to be able to forgive sin, and give to all who believe in Him eternal life. (Matthew 9:2; John 10:28, 3:16-21, 6:35, 11:25)
15. He claimed that eternal judgment awaits those who reject him as Saviour. (John 3:36; Matthew 25:41-46)
16. He taught with absolute authority. (Matthew 7:29, Mark 1:22, John 14:6)
17. He claimed universal power. (Matthew 28:18)
18. He claimed that God the Father and He were one. (John 10:30)
19. He insisted that all revelation was fulfilled in Himself. He saw Himself as anticipated typologically in Jonah (Matthew 12:39-41, Luke 11:29-32), Solomon (Matthew 12:42, Luke 11:31), David (Matthew 12:3,4, Mark 2:25-26; Luke 6:3,4) and Isaiah. (Matthew 13:13,14, Mark 4:12 and Luke 8:10)

**TESTIMONIES ABOUT CHRIST IN ISAIAH**

1. His Godhead (40:12-18, 51:13)
2. His Incarnation (7:14, 9:6)
3. His Lowly Youth (7:15, 9:1-2, 11:1, 53:2)
4. His Servant hood (11:2, 42:1)
5. His Mildness (42:2)
6. His Tenderness (42:3)
7. His Obedience (50:5)
8. His Message (61:1-2)
9. His Miracles (35:5-6)
10. His Sufferings (50:6, 52:13-15)
11. His Rejection (53:1-3)
12. His Passion (53:4-6)
13. His Vicarious Death (53:8)
14. His Burial (53:9)
15. His Resurrection (53:10)
16. His Ascension (52:13)
17. His High Priestly Ministry (53:12)
18. His Exaltation (52:13-15)
19. His Role as Judge (63:1-6)
20. His Second Advent (59:20-21)
21. His Millennial Reign (9:6-7, 11:3-9)

**TESTIMONIES BY UNBELIEVERS**

1. Judas Iscariot (Matthew 27:4) - I have sinned in that I have betrayed innocent blood.
2. Pontius Pilate (John 19:4,6) - I find no crime in him.
3. Herod the Usurper (Luke 23:15) - No, nor yet Herod: for I sent you to him: and lo, nothing worthy of death is done unto him.
4. Pilate's wife (Matthew 27:19) - Have nothing to do with this just man.
5. The dying thief (Luke 23:41) - This man hath done nothing amiss.
6. The centurion of the Golgotha detachment (Luke 23:47) - This man was a righteous man.
7. The Roman soldiers at Golgotha (Matthew 27:54) - truly this one was the son of God.

**STATEMENTS HE MAKES ABOUT HIMSELF IN THE BOOK OF REVELATION**

1. "I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last" - Jesus Christ knows all things (1:11)
2. "I am the first and the last" - He is eternal (1:17)
3. "I am he that liveth and was dead; and, behold, I am alive forever more, Amen; and have the keys of hell and death " - He became the God - man and died for us conquering death and saving us from an eternity in hell (1:18)

4. "These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks." - He has the ministers of the church in his hand and is present in the churches. (2:1)
5. "These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive." - He combines eternity with his sacrificial death. (2:8)
6. "These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges." - He is and has the Word of God. (2:12)
7. "These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass" - He is not only Saviour but is also Judge. (2:18)
8. "These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars."- He gave the church the Holy Spirit so that the church can function (3:1)
9. "These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth and no man openeth." - He is holy true and has authority. He also gives opportunities to enable us to serve. (3:7)
10. "These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God"; - He has the final authority and is the revelation of God and the source of God's creation. (3:14)
11. "Behold I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me." - He calls to man but does not coerce the freewill of man. (3:20)

**LESSON 14 – JESUS CHRIST – HIS MINISTRY AND CHARACTER**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
14	His Ministry and Character	John 7:14-18, 37-49 Deuteronomy 18:15-19 Philippians 2:8-11	Life of Christ Kenosis Blood Sacrifice Christ: Prophet, Priest, King

**INTRODUCTION**

Sometimes the work of Christ is considered under the three offices that He held; that of Prophet, Priest and King. A connection can be made between the Messiah or Anointed One and the fact that prophets, priests and kings were all anointed.

In John 7 everyone knew that when they had seen the Lord Jesus Christ they had seen something very unusual. This is indicated by the frequent use of the words amazed and marveled in the New Testament. They knew they were listening to far more than a man, even a great one - **John 7:14-18, 37-39**.

Because of His “presence” the authorities could not arrest Him. He claimed to be more than just a man, people said is he “that prophet” referring to Deuteronomy 18 or is he the Messiah/Christ. Jesus Christ caused a division. They had to make a decision regarding Him and all still do. What think ye of Christ? This is the central question for all humanity. People who do not want the truth will not recognize it even when they are confronted with it. **Philippians 2:8-11**.

**PROPHET**

In **Deuteronomy 18:15-19** the thing that made them think that this was the prophet spoken of in verse 18 was the authoritative way the Lord spoke to them. He did not say as the teachers of those days said, that Rabbi A had said this whilst Rabbi B said that, and I suggest this.....

He was “that” prophet, spoken of by Moses, and He spoke God's words. He was more than any prophet. We however are a little bit hard on those who lived at the time of Christ, as we now have the benefit of the whole New Testament.

He gave the prophecies, he gave great illustrations, and he made use of questions and turned the questions into a prophetic utterance. He was authoritative and he did it in an apparently non systematic way taking opportunities as they arose, and yet there was a plan being followed from first to last days.

The prophet was both a foreteller and a forth teller. This latter feature is a main function of the pastor who applies factors from the Bible to the present day in preaching. All pastors today need to have prophetic elements in their preaching, telling God’s people of God’s prophetic program.

There were three important discourses that were a part of his prophetic ministry,

[a] The Sermon on the Mount - Matthew 5-7

[b] The Olivet discourse - Matthew 24-25

[c] The Upper Room discourse - John 13-16.

Firstly lets look at the Sermon on the Mount.

The attitudes of people to these three passages will divide theological schools up into "good and bad" fairly quickly, but if you ask them where the Sermon on the Mount fits, you will find that the Liberal, Reformed and Fundamentalist camps views vary significantly.

[a] The liberals take the Sermon on the Mount as the Christian way of life, saying that if you keep the Sermon on the Mount you can satisfy God, but that was not its purpose.

[b] In contrast the Reformed view is that the Sermon on the Mount is a policy which they are to bring into being by their own activities now and hasten the bringing about of Christ's kingdom on the earth.

[c] The fundamentalist viewpoint is that it is preached in relation to the coming kingdom. This discourse therefore seems mainly to emphasize getting ready for the kingdom. Some of the requirements to be practiced totally would necessitate the establishment of the kingdom with its righteous government temple worship system and practices, although the principles may be followed at any time.

The sermon is a call to repentance for those who had refused to apply the scriptures to their thoughts and behaviour, and thereby left out the inner changes from the requirements for establishing the kingdom. Therefore it has relevance for any time when the kingdom is imminent such as during the Lord's ministry and in the Tribulation, but it may also be argued that it is relevant every day, as we do not know the date of the Lord's return. It also pictures the conditions that will occur in the kingdom. It is therefore profitable for disciples in any age since it is one of the most detailed of ethical codes in the Bible building upon the Mosaic Law. It emphasizes the important truth that the heart and mind and body must be pure to serve the Lord.

Secondly, the Olivet Discourse gives a prophetic introduction as to what will be happening on the earth during the Great Tribulation before the Kingdom whilst the Upper Room discourse gives the rules and the standards for the Church Age. One sermon applies to the Church, one to the Tribulation, and one to the Millennium. However all Scripture is for all of us to gain from with the principles of all the discourses having application to all ages.

In different ages however the emphasis or importance of a passage will vary. There are certain elements that are required to completely fulfill the Sermon on the Mount teaching principles, which we do not have today. There needs to be accurate teaching in this area, as there are many devotional books which do not teach accurately on this, especially in the area in the Sermon on the Mount. For example, the Sermon on the Mount is not the primary passage of historic Christianity, the Upper Room discourse is. Principle - The earlier is always to be modified by the later teaching.

## **PRIEST**

Jesus Christ as Priest - He has a two fold priesthood; one after Aaron, as He has a redemptive function, but he is also a priest after the order of Melchizedec of Genesis 14. Hebrews Chapter 7.

The prophet spoke to men from God; the priest speaks to God for men. Being of the tribe of Judah disqualified Christ from being an Aaronic priest; therefore, God arranged ahead of His coming for another order of priests, the order of Melchizedec, and Christ is a priest of that order with respect to His person and His work. Yet there are similarities between Aaronic priests and Christ as Priest both in His person and His work.

### **Levitical Priests**

These priests had to be men born into the right family, chosen by God and qualified for His work (Hebrews 5:1-7). Our Lord was born, chosen, incarnate, and tested, thus being qualified in His person to be a ministering Priest.

These priests served by representing the people to God and especially in the offering of sacrifices. Their sacrifices were many, repeated, and not in themselves of eternal worth. The writer to the Hebrews makes it clear that had they been able to effect eternal satisfaction for sin there would have been no need for their repetition year after year.

In contrast, our Lord's sacrifice of Himself for our sins was a single sacrifice, once for all, and for all mankind. In this, His great work of redemption, He did a work which was foreshadowed by the work of the Aaronic priests, even though He was not a priest after the order of Aaron, not being of the tribe of Levi. Hebrews 6:20 – 7:27.

### Melchizedec Priest

Features of the Melchizedec priesthood include

- (a) It was a royal priesthood. Melchizedec was a king as well as a priest. The uniting of these two functions was unknown among Aaronic priests, although predicted of Christ in Zechariah 6:13.
- (b) It was unrelated to ancestry. "Without father, without mother", does not mean that Melchizedec did not have parents, nor that he was not born or did not die, but only that the Scriptures contain no record of these events so that he might be more perfectly likened to Christ. Aaronic priests depended on their ancestry to qualify.
- (c) It was timeless, having no recorded beginning or ending so Melchizedec might again be more like the Lord who is a Priest forever after the order of Melchizedec.
- (d) It was superior to the Aaronic order. Abraham, out of whom came the Aaronic order, acknowledged the superiority of Melchizedec when he gave tithes of the spoils of the war to him (Genesis 14:20). Levi, though unborn, and all the priests that came from him were involved in this act which demonstrated the superiority of Melchizedec.

### KING

The Lord Jesus Christ is also King, He is the King of Kings and Lord of Lords as well as being the legal king of Israel as the son of David. He is what could be classified in the ancient world as battlefield royalty. When Napoleon conquered an area he would often make one of his generals a king. The Lord becomes King of Kings and Lord of Lords because of his victory on the Cross. He was born a son of David and therefore royalty according to birth. He is king for ever and over all.

The fact that He is the King of Israel guarantees that He will return to set up His kingdom and rule over Israel fulfilling the Davidic and Palestinian Covenants. It also guarantees that the world will not self destruct due to such things as worldwide nuclear war or a giant asteroid striking the earth. Forget the catastrophe stories, Revelation makes clear HE will return and rule – the earth will, against the odds, survive the worst of Anti-Christ's malice.

### KENOSIS

The **first problem** for the theologian as they approach Jesus Christ as prophet, priest, king, and Saviour is that of kenosis. This Greek word comes from **Philippians 2:7**, where He became of no reputation and took on the form of a servant and was made in the likeness of man. He emptied himself (Kenosis concept) to obey/fulfill the Eternal Plan.

Theologians ask what he emptied himself of? Was he still full deity or did He empty himself of some of the attributes when He became man? If He did not have all the attributes of deity He was not fully God. He is however both fully God and fully man. Kenosis states that He did not lose any of the attributes of deity, but withheld the operation of those attributes. The false concept of kenosis is that Christ gave up being God, eg, He gave up His omniscience. This concept is attractive because it states, He grew in knowledge and wisdom in His humanity. He had to learn in his humanity, but did He have to learn in His deity? The answer of course to the question of loss of all attributes of deity is "no".

Did he give up His deity? The answer again is "no"! On one occasion all people around saw His deity; this was at the time of His arrest in Gethsemane. For a brief time he pulled the veil hiding this deity back and the simple flashing forth of His deity caused the large army contingent to fall backwards. The veil was controlled by His will. John 18:1-6.

**Secondly**, the Lord did not call upon the deity-power that He had access to at all times. When He was on the Cross He could have come down from the Cross at any time and called legions of angels to rout His enemies. With an ability to say "no" to his own deliverance, and stay on the Cross when He didn't have to, brings out the wonder of the love of the Lord Jesus Christ dying for us. He stayed there, not of necessity, but through love for us, and even for those who abused him.

**Thirdly**, as the great God He humbled himself, that we might through Him be lifted up to glory, as shown in Philippians 2:7-11. It wasn't the nails that held the Lord to the Cross it was His obedience to the plan of God, which centres in love and concern for the creatures in the creation. **2 Peter 3:9**.

### THE LORD AND SIN (Impeccability)

The second theological problem is whether the Lord sinned or not, or whether He was even capable of sinning. Could He be tempted? If Christ was "temptable" and there was a possibility that He could sin, He would not be perfect, or so say some theologians. It seems a "nit picking" point, but it illustrates the "great divide" between saved and lost theologians.

If the Lord is not sinless, then He is not able to be the final sacrifice. The sinlessness of Christ is absolutely vital, as without it you have not got an effective sacrifice. The liberals say that Christ sinned, and they also do not believe He died for their sins. The liberal does not want a Saviour who they must bow to, but they want a nice person in the sky who will let everyone off the moral and sin/evil charges against them eventually. They want a great example, not a Lord whom you have to obey, nor a King who judges. The lies of liberalism are not the picture of the Lord that the Bible gives us.



As conservatives we are conserving the Biblical truth, the sinlessness of Christ, the perfection of His character, His complete and perfect work on the Cross, the fact that we have a Saviour and a Lord, and the fact that the Lord will be the judge of the world. All conservatives agree that Christ is sinless.

If you are to teach impeccability it is something that needs to be prepared well in advance as it is a complex area of doctrine. The Lord was tempted, not to show that He could sin but to prove for all eternity that He could not sin. The testing of the Lord was real, just like ours, but the testing proved His perfect character. He was tested in every way as we are, yet was without all sin. He is therefore the one who we can depend on when we meet our tests. He could not fail and He did not fail and therefore we can have total confidence in the everlasting arms. He has grace and power to help us in times of need. He has proved to be able to help us in any circumstances.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **LIFE OF CHRIST**

1. The life of Jesus Christ can be divided into seven separate sections:-

- a) The Virgin Birth.
- b) The Lord's Ministry.
- c) His Death.
- d) Burial.
- e) Resurrection.
- f) Ascension.
- g) Session.

2. The Virgin Birth. There are three reasons why Jesus had to be born of a virgin:-

- a) To fulfil prophecy (Isaiah 7:14)
- b) To fulfil the 'curse of Coniah' (Jeremiah 22:30) (also known as Jeconiah and Jehoiachin)
  - i) (Matthew 1:16) Joseph the legal but not real father of Jesus was descended from David through Solomon ... (Matthew 1:6) and Coniah (Matthew 1:11)
  - ii) Mary the real mother (Luke 3:23) of the humanity of the Lord Jesus Christ was descended from David. (Luke 3:31) through Nathan.
  - iii) In (2 Samuel 7:16) David is promised a son who will reign forever i.e. The Lord Jesus Christ.
  - iv) In (Jeremiah 22:28-30) Coniah is told that no descendant of his will reign over Israel.
  - v) By the Virgin birth a son, Jesus Christ, can reign forever over Israel (He has eternal life) being descended from David via Nathan.
- c) To ensure Jesus was born without the imputation of Adam's sin. (1 Timothy 2:14,15)
  - i) In (1 Timothy 2) we see that the woman was deceived but the man deliberately sinned. Thus the sinful nature comes from the man.
  - ii) In order to be our redeemer Jesus had to be born without a sin nature so that he can purchase those who have a sin nature.
  - iii) By the Virgin Birth Jesus was born without the imputation of Adam's sin.

3. The Lord's Ministry.

- a) Reasons for his HUMANITY
  - i) Saviourhood (Philippians 2:5-8)
  - ii) Mediatorship (1 Timothy 2:5-6)
  - iii) Priesthood (Hebrews 10:10-14)
  - iv) Kingship (Psalm 89:29)
- b) What was his means of operation.
  - i) Power-the Holy Spirit (John 3:34)
  - ii) He was tempted (Matthew 4:1-11)
  - iii) He had free will (Matthew 26:39)
  - iv) Was perfect (2 Corinthians 5:21)

4. His Trials and Death.

- a) Trials
  - i) Annas (John 18:12,13)
  - ii) Caiaphas (Matthew 26:57)
  - iii) Sanhedrin (Luke 22:66)
  - iv) Pilate (Luke 23:1)
  - v) Herod (Luke 23:8)
  - vi) Pilate (Luke 23:13)
- b) Crucifixion:-
  - i) Jesus was crucified at 9 am. (Mark 15:25)
  - ii) Darkness covered the earth 12 noon (Mark 15:33)
  - iii) Jesus bore the sins 12-3 pm (Matthew 27:46)

- iv) "My God My God" Psalm 22 (Romans 6:23)
- v) Salvation is completed 3 pm (Luke 23:44-46, John 19:30) "Father into thy hands I dismiss my spirit".
- vi) Prophetic (Isaiah 53:9)

**5. Burial and In the Grave.**

After the death of the Lord Jesus Christ several things happened:-

- a) Signs
  - i) Temple veil rent from top (God) to bottom (man) (Matthew 27:51)
  - ii) A great earthquake (Matthew 27:51)
  - iii) Graves opened. (Matthew 27:52,53)
  - iv) Breaking of the legs of the thieves (John 19:32-36 cf. Psalm 34:20 cf. Exodus 12:46)
  - v) Side pierced (John 19:34, Zechariah 12:10)
- b) Burial
  - i) Two pallbearers. Joseph of Arimathea and Nicodemus, both Pharisees, (John 19:38-39)
  - ii) Both rich men. (John 19:38-42)
  - iii) Laid in a rich man's tomb. (Isaiah 53:9, John 19:41)
  - iv) Guard on the tomb. (Matthew 27:62-66)
- c) Jesus had three separate parts - Body, Soul, Spirit.
- d) At burial -
  - i) Body - in the tomb (Matthew 27:57-60)
  - ii) Spirit - to the Father in Heaven (Luke 23:46)
  - iii) Soul - Paradise or Abraham's Bosom (Luke 23:43)
  - iv) In Paradise Jesus met the soul of the penitent thief and preached to the fallen angels in Tartarus. (1 Peter 3:19, 2 Peter 2:4, Genesis 6:4)

**6. Resurrection.**

- a) Jesus died on the Passover - the Paschal lamb.
- b) Jesus rose on the Feast of the First Fruits. After 3 days the soul came from Hades (Luke 23:43) the Spirit from the Father (Luke 23:46) and joined the body in the tomb. With the help of the Holy Spirit the Lord Jesus Christ received a resurrection body. (Romans 8:11)
- c) Jesus predicted his resurrection (John 2:18-22)
- d) He is the first fruits (1 Corinthians 15:22, 23)
- e) In the period between the resurrection and the ascension many people saw the risen Lord. The bribery of the Roman soldiers (Matthew 28:11-15) is additional proof of the resurrection as are the changed lives of the disciples.

**7. Ascension.**

- a) Having risen the Lord ascended (Luke 24:50-53) to be able to take His place of honour at the right hand of God.
- b) With the ascension paradise emptied, the Old Testament saints being transferred to Heaven.
- c) In the "Church" age believers go to be with the Lord. (2 Corinthians 5:7-9)

**8. Session - the seating of Christ at God's right hand.**

- a) Reaching the Father in heaven Christ sat at God's right hand. (Colossians 3:1)
- b) The session is in order that the Father may make His enemies His footstool. (Hebrews 1:13)
- c) Prophecy of the session. (Psalm 110:1)
- d) The footstool will be completed initially at the Second Advent with the final judgment occurring at the Last Judgment. (Revelation 20:11-15)

**KENOSIS OF CHRIST**

1. Kenosis is an expression which means to "empty oneself" or "to make himself of no reputation."
2. Principle of Kenosis:- (Philippians 2:5-11) – remember we are limited creatures of space-time trying to explain the actions of the eternal and infinite Creator who became a creature to win our salvation. We stumble in our words here.
3. Jesus Christ from eternity past always has been God. As such he is all knowing, he is all powerful, has everlasting life and many other absolute qualities. He was not created, because he is eternal.
4. Jesus Christ chose to become a little lower than the angels and took on the form of man.
5. Adam the first man aspired to be God, the second Adam who is God voluntarily divested himself of his prerogatives of deity (Kenosis) and became an obedient man, in order to save mankind.
6. During his earthly ministry, rather than using his own absolute power he used the power of the Holy Spirit, and so is our example and mentor.

BLOOD SACRIFICE

1. Ever since the earliest recorded time God has required a blood sacrifice for sin. It is implied by the coats of skin provided by the Lord in the garden after Adam and Eve had attempted to clothe their nakedness with leaves. Abel brought an acceptable animal sacrifice, unlike Cain's who brought an unacceptable bloodless offering.
2. The requirement for blood sacrifices was continued with Noah after the flood; (cf. the near sacrifice of Isaac by Abraham); and was established as a requirement not only by the Passover lamb but also in the Levitical offerings.
3. When recording the will of God for Israel in the matter of food and the abstinence from eating "any manner of blood" Moses states "For the life of the flesh is in the blood; and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul." Genesis 3:21-4:8.
4. It is clear from the above that the life of an innocent victim (the animal sacrifice) acted as a shadow until the once and for all payment was paid with the true sacrifice of Christ.
5. There is an absolute necessity of the unique sacrifice of the Lord Jesus Christ as indicated by the phrase "the blood of Christ". (Romans 3:25, Ephesians 1:7, Hebrews 9:22)
6. Up to the time of the once and for all sacrifice the sins of believers were set aside adjacent to them (gk. para) but since the cross they have been taken fully away.
7. The twelve elements of grace which involve the blood of Christ:-
  - a) The New Covenant. (Hebrews 8:8, 9:20-21)
  - b) The blood is the life. (John 6:53)
  - c) Purchase and Redemption. (Acts 20:28, Ephesians 1:7, 1 Peter 1:18-19)
  - d) Propitiation. (Romans 3:25)
  - e) Justification. (Romans 5:9)
  - f) Sanctification. (Hebrews 13:12)
  - g) Cleansing. (Hebrews 9:14, 1 John 1:7, Revelation 7:14)
  - h) Victory. (Revelation 12:11)
  - i) The blood of sprinkling. (Hebrews 10:22, 1 Peter 1:2)
  - j) Made nigh. (Ephesians 2:13)
  - k) Peace. (Colossians 1:20)
  - l) Boldness to enter. (Hebrews 10:19)
8. It is of interest that the resurrection body consists of flesh and bone but apparently no blood.

CHRIST: PROPHET, PRIEST AND KING

JESUS THE PROPHET

1. Moses predicted the coming of a perfect prophet, fulfilled in Jesus (Deuteronomy 18:15-19, Acts 3:20-23)
2. Jesus claimed he was a prophet. (John 7:16, 8:28, 12:49-50)
3. Fulfilled predictions
  - a) His death and resurrection (Matthew 16:21, John 2:19)
  - b) The destruction of Jerusalem (Matthew 24:1-2, Luke 19:41-44)
  - c) The Gentile domination of Israel (Luke 21:20-24)
  - d) The Jewish dispersion (Matthew 24:34)
  - e) That the scriptures would survive (Matthew 24:35)

JESUS THE PRIEST

1. A priest is a man who represents other men before God, so that sinful man can have relationship with a holy God (Hebrews 5:1). The priest made propitiation for the sins of the people. (Hebrews 2:17, Hebrews 10:12) and also made intercession for the people
2. As a high priest, Christ offered a perfect sacrifice to God to remove sin for all time - His own body (Hebrews 9:26).
3. He also offers intercessory prayer for us (Hebrews 7:23-25) at the right hand of the Father.
4. Characteristics:-
  - a) He was divinely appointed (Hebrews 5:4-10)

- b) He is perfect (Hebrews 7:26-28)
- c) He is merciful and faithful (Hebrews 2:17)
- d) He is sympathetic (Hebrews 4:14-16)
- e) He is everlasting (Hebrews 7:23-25)
- f) He is our advocate (1 John 2:1)

5. Because of our union in the Body of Christ, every believer is a priest (1 Peter 2:9). We have direct access to God the Father (Matthew 27:51, Hebrews 4:16). Therefore, our lives are to be a living sacrifice (Romans 12:1) of praise (Hebrews 13:15), giving (Hebrews 13:16) and obedience (Hebrews 13:17).

**JESUS THE KING**

1. At the second advent Jesus Christ will come as King, as King of Kings and Lord of Lords. (1 Timothy 6:15)
- a) His Kingdom - On earth (Jeremiah 23:5, Revelation 19:11-16). His kingdom is called the kingdom of heaven, because of its heavenly character, but it is clearly on earth.
  - b) His Capital - Jerusalem (Psalm 2:6)
  - c) Its Extent - The whole world. (Psalm 72:6-11, Isaiah 2:2-3, Daniel 7:13-14, Zechariah 8:20-23)
  - d) When - He will regather believing Israel after the Great Tribulation and will reign on earth for 1,000 years. (Revelation 19:11-16, Zechariah 14:1-4,9. Revelation 20:4-6)

2. Characteristics of the Kingdom:

- a) Universal Peace (Isaiah 2:4, Micah 4:2-3)
- b) Universal Prosperity (Micah 4:4-7)
- c) Righteous and Just rule (Psalm 72:2-7, Isaiah 11:9)
- d) Worldwide in extent (Psalm 72:6-8)
- e) Glorious (Psalm 72:17-19)
- f) Everlasting (Daniel 7:13-14, Luke 1:32-33, Revelation 11:15)
- g) Uplifting of the under privileged (Psalm 72:2-4,12-14)

3. Christ's rule on earth will terminate with the Great White Throne Judgment (Revelation 20:11-15). He delivers the kingdom to the Father, (1 Corinthians 15:24) thus commencing the eternal rule of Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:28)

**LESSON 15 – CHRIST'S SUBSTITUTIONARY DEATH**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
15	His Substitutionary Death	Ephesians 2:1-10 Leviticus 16:20-22 John 3:16-36 1 John 2:1-2	Unlimited Atonement The Cross and Satan Crucified with Christ

**SALVATION**

Salvation is the greatest theme in the Bible and centres on the Lord Jesus Christ. It involves bringing people from condemnation to justification, from eternal death to eternal life, and from being an enemy of God to being a friend. This is an extremely important area to get right, as it is here that the cults attempt to attack the Christian faith.

**Ephesians 2:1-10** - "but God" in verse 4 is a great contrast to where we were, in the fact that we were spiritually dead. By the grace of the Lord, the Lord found us while we were spiritually dead, and brought us to newness of life. His purpose was to lift us up to sit in heavenly places with Christ Jesus v 6 that we should walk in him.

**WHY DID HE DO IT?**

- [a] To show His love - **John 3:16-36**, Romans 5:8
- [b] To show his grace in eternity - Ephesians 2:7,
- [c] That we should represent God on earth - Ephesians 2:10

When God found us we were a dead branch on a dead tree, the tree of sin but God found us and brought us new life. Salvation is in three tenses, past - in the past we were saved, at present we are being saved from sin and evil, some of which we are oblivious to, and in the future we are saved forever and will be delivered from this body of death.

**WE ARE SAVED FROM**

- [a] The condemnation of sin - Ephesians 2:8, Titus 3:5,
- [b] Dominion of sin in the Christian life - Hebrews 7:25,
- [c] The presence of sin in heaven - Romans 5:9-10

## ATONEMENT

The Day of Atonement is the holiest day in Israel - Yom Kippur - it is the day of the substitutionary atonement which speaks of the day when the Lord became our substitute on the Cross. **1 John 2:1-2**. The atonement has its roots very deep in Old Testament ritual. **Leviticus 16: 20-22** - he becomes the "Scape-Goat", the person who is blamed even though he is not guilty and takes the consequence of the sins of others upon Himself.

The procedure was that the hands are placed on the head indicating transference or delegation. Here the sinner is transferring symbolically his sins to the animal. In this specific case Aaron is placing the sins of the whole people on the goat and that goat is sent out into the wilderness to be set apart to die in the wilderness. The guilty parties should die for their own sins but they now have a substitute and it alone dies for them all.

The Lord Jesus Christ was not only a substitute but also a perfect substitute. He was an "efficacious substitute" which means that what He did worked perfectly. The Lord's sacrifice was perfect and solved sin for all men. To "atone" is to completely blot out the consequences, and so render the one "atoned for" completely clean.

**The substitutionary sacrifice** – Now some ask - did he die for the sins of all mankind or only for the elect? This is the difference between the evangelical and the hard Calvinist. This is an area of conflict between conservative Christians.

The death of Christ represents on His part as an act of obedience to the law, which the sinners have broken, as a propitiatory sacrifice, satisfying God's just and righteous demands on the sinner. It is important that the people of God understand in depth the death of Christ's love and sacrifice on the Cross. You should teach them the large words but give an explanation for each. This is why Systematic Theology is so important.

The death of Christ removed all moral hindrances in the mind of God to the saving of sinners, seeing that the penalty of sin has been paid through the blood of Christ. God has been "propitiated" and man has been reconciled, the "sin-barrier" is permanently down for all women and men who come to Him for salvation.

## LIBERAL FALLACIES INVOLVING THE DEATH OF CHRIST

**[a] The substitutionary death is immoral** and God could not be righteous and still lay the sins of a guilty person on an innocent one. From the Old Testament however we see that God has constantly done this and that it is a means of teaching grace. God's love is pure and He has concern and cares for you.

**[b] That Christ died as a martyr but it was not efficacious** so that it did not solve sin but it is a good example of how man can die. He died as an example to us.

**[c] Another fallacy is that he died to reject evil even if it costs your life.** This is what a lot of the theological institutions teach. When they talk about the importance of the cross this is what they mean.

**[d] The liberals do not believe in the physical resurrection.** What they believe is that there is a spiritual presence in our life if we believe what he believed and that He died as an example rather than a sacrifice. They use familiar language but they do not mean what we do. It is therefore critical to discern what is going on so that you can smell the wolf in sheep's clothing.

The word Vicar is the Latin for substitute from which we get the word vicarious. The Lord Jesus Christ is a true vicar as he stands between God and man.

## BEFORE AND AFTER THE CROSS

The cross is the watershed in history, it divides history into two areas. The payment in full of sin is shown by the release of those in Paradise to heaven by the Lord Jesus Christ. Ephesians 4:8.

Prior to the Cross it was quite appropriate to pray as the tax collector did, "God be merciful to me a sinner". Luke 18:13.

Prior to the Cross there was no completed provision made under the law for sin so this person could not rely on a finished sacrifice to the sin, as this only occurred at the Cross. Since the cross there has been no need to ask God to be satisfied. God is satisfied eternally by the death of Christ. We have received the Saviour who received the wrath of God.

The Cross shows us that God has been merciful to us. Mercy is no longer needed because grace has already been provided. You can now bow before Him and thank Him for the blood of Christ which cleanses us from all sin, or you can walk away and insult/ignore grace. Rev 20:11-15. The door has been opened as the book of Hebrews says through the veil, which is His flesh. You need to be precise in what you are preaching. You are living and preaching after the Cross, Resurrection, Ascension and Session, you are not in the Old Testament period, before the work was complete. This puts us in a different position to the Old Testament, and this truth is focused on in the Epistles of the New Testament.

What was prayed for prior to the cross does not need to be prayed for after the cross, because it has **been done**. You name your sin to the Lord rather than begging for forgiveness now. Our guide is 1 John 1:9. We have to be obedient and name our sin and recognize that it is an affront to the righteousness of God. Many of the prayers that are offered today are an affront to God as they are not in conformity with His Word, and do not reflect what Jesus has completely done.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **ATONEMENT: UNLIMITED ATONEMENT**

1. Definition:

- a) The totally effective work of Christ on the cross to pay the penalty of sin on behalf of mankind.
- b) Atonement as a noun means reconciliation after enmity and includes reparation made for wrong or injury.
- c) The verb has several related meanings such as to be at one, to be in accordance, to make reparation or amends, to make up for errors or deficiencies, to reconcile.
- d) In the Old Testament, the true meaning of atonement is related to the Hebrew verb "to pass over, to cover" - it is also the word for 'pitch' used to seal Noah's Ark.

2. In Old Testament times, animal sacrifices were used to cover sin.

- a) God forgave and restored where sin was covered by the blood of animal sacrifices.
- b) However, the true basis for atonement was not found in these animal sacrifices. This is why the sacrifices needed to be repeated time and time again.
- c) Animal sacrifices were used as a cover for sin until the true sacrifice, Jesus Christ, could be offered on the cross.
- d) Atonement in the Old Testament refers to the use of animal sacrifices to picture the saving work of Christ.
- e) The two concepts of atonement (Old and New Testament) are brought together in Romans 3:23-26)

3. Atonement is unlimited

- a) When Jesus Christ was judged on the cross for sins he paid for the sins of the entire human race, not just the elect. (Romans 5:6, 2 Corinthians 5:14-15, 1 Timothy 2:6, 4:10, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 John 2:2)
- b) "Limited Atonement", the concept that Christ died for believers only is incorrect.

4. Unlimited Atonement eliminates sin in the unbelievers' indictment at the Last Judgment.

- a) When Christ died on the cross, He was judged for all sins of the human race.
- b) Therefore the issue in salvation is not sin, but faith in Christ. People choose either to accept the work of Christ (John 3:18,36), or their own "good" works to gain the approval of God.
- c) Therefore, human good will be the basis of the unbelievers' indictment at the Last Judgment. (Revelation 20:12)

### **THE CROSS AND SATAN**

- 1. With His death on the Cross Christ dealt with sin as a whole. (Colossians 1:15-22, 1 John 2:2)
- 2. With the removal of the sin barrier Satan's power was negated. (John 12:31, 16:11, Colossians 2:14, Hebrews 2:14,)
- 3. Judgment upon Satan has been pronounced but the sentence has not been executed, he is still prince of this world. (2 Corinthians 4:4, Ephesians 2:2)
- 4. He is still the deceiver and liar who leads astray foolish believers (1 Peter 5:8-9, James 4:7-8)
- 5. The cross is God's grace provision for the salvation of all who will believe in the Lord. Satan's attack is the philosophy of works, promoting the idea that man can do without the need of a Saviour.(Ephesians 2:8-9)
- 6. Satan's judgment has been progressively revealed:-
  - a) In the garden of Eden. (Genesis 3:15)
  - b) At the Cross. (John 12:31)
  - c) In the Tribulation. (Revelation 12:7-12)
  - d) At the Second Advent. (Revelation 20:1-3)
  - e) At the Last Judgment. (Revelation 20:10)
- 7. Satan's rebellion centres on two sins, pride and lying. (Isaiah 14:12-24, Ezekiel 28:17, John 8:44)
- 8. God's plan calls for sin to be removed and with it Satan's power. The victory on the Cross will lead to the glory of God and the proclamation throughout all eternity of the perfect justice of God. (1 John 3:8)

**CRUCIFIED WITH CHRIST**

1. SCRIPTURE (Galatians 2:20). "I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave Himself for me. "

2. Evaluation or Literal Translation

a) "I am crucified with Christ". I have been crucified with Christ in the past with a result that I keep on being crucified with Christ forever identification with Christ in His death). Passive voice - I have received this crucifixion (this occurs at the point of salvation). We are dead to the law after crucifixion with Christ because Christ fulfilled the law. (Matthew. 5:17). We are overcomers (1 John 5:4,5)

b) "yet not I" - I no longer live - my old life of sin and self has died

c) "but Christ lives in me" - Christ keeps on living in me. (Galatians. 4:19). Christ lives in us for fellowship as well - (Revelation. 3:20, John 14:20, 2 Corinthians. 13:5, Romans. 8:10, Colossians. 1:27)

d) "and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith (or power) of the Son of God who loved me and gave himself for me."

3. The only way to fulfil the law is through the character of Christ formed in the believer through the ministry of the Holy Spirit (Romans 8:2-4). In our own strength we are unable to keep the law because we have a sinful nature.

**LESSON 16 – THE RESURRECTION OF CHRIST**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
16	His Resurrection	1 Corinthians 15:12-23 John 5:28,29 Revelation 20:4-6, 11-15 1 Corinthians 15:23-26 1 Corinthians 15:3-8 Job 19:25-27	Mediatorship Resurrection Immortality

**INTRODUCTION**

This is the central doctrine of the Christian faith and a major part of the gospel message. If there is no bodily resurrection there is no biblical apostolic Christianity. The liberals attack the doctrine of the bodily resurrection vigorously.

Most of the denominations nowadays do not hold to the bodily resurrection and therefore historically exclude themselves from the name Christian. If you deny the physical resurrection you deny the critical doctrine of the Christian faith – there is no biblical Christian faith if you deny the sacrifice of Jesus on the Cross, which includes both the payment for sin, and the testimony of the victory over sin and death, his resurrection, ascension and session.

**RESURRECTION**

In **1 Corinthians 15:3-8, 12 - 23**, Paul explains that there is a resurrection for both the saved and unsaved, some to everlasting bliss, and some to the eternal Lake of Fire. In **John 5:28-29** it is stated that all are not going to be raised to glory. This gives a resurrection for both the saved and the lost, whilst 1 Corinthians 15 gives the mechanics of the resurrection.

**Revelation 20:4-6** gives the first resurrection whilst **Revelation 20:11-15** shows the Last Judgment or the “second resurrection”.

In 1 Corinthians 15:23 it is explained that the resurrections are “in their own order” with the firstfruits being the Lord Jesus Christ; this setting a pattern. The resurrection of Christ is not an isolated incident but an integral part of the plan of the Father as are the virgin birth, perfect life, substitutionary death and ascension/session of Christ.

In **1 Corinthians 15:23-26** it says, “each in their own order”. The Greek word for order means “battalion” thus there is a battalion review as it were in view there. There are three battalions in the review, the first being the Lord Jesus Christ, the second are the saved whose destiny is eternal life with the Lord Jesus Christ whilst the third comprise unbelievers who will spend eternity in the Lake of Fire, with Satan and the demons, for this is the company they chose to join by their rejection of Christ. The Lord's resurrection is critical for all this activity in the future.

**THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE RESURRECTION**

1. Without the resurrection it is impossible for Christ to be glorified. Jesus Christ has to have a human body for his glorification. The humanity of Christ is glorified higher than the angels. (John 7:39, John 16:14.)
2. Resurrection indicates completion of justification. (Romans 4:25, 2 Corinthians 5:2 1)
3. Resurrection is a guarantee of ultimate sanctification. (1 Corinthians 1 5:20-23)
4. Without resurrection there is no priesthood. (Psalm 1 1 0:4, Hebrews 7:28, Hebrews 10:5, 10:10-14)
5. Without resurrection there is no fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant. (2 Samuel 7:8-1 6)
6. Without resurrection there is no mediatorship. (Job 9:33)
7. Historical proof of the resurrection:
  - (a) An empty tomb. (Matthew 28)
  - (b) The competency of the witnesses. Many of the witnesses died rather than change their testimony.
  - (c) Subsequent changes to the disciples after the resurrection.
  - (d) The day of Pentecost.
  - (e) The observance of the first day of the week as the worship day over 19 centuries.
  - (f) The historic existence of the church.

If the Lord is not raised we will not be raised, and neither will the unbelievers. If the unbelievers are not raised there is no judgment, no lake of fire, and therefore it does not matter what you believe in. Those who reject the resurrection reject the second coming and the Last Judgment. Most liberals who reject the resurrection reject almost everything else.

**CONTRAST BETWEEN THESE INVOLVED IN THE FIRST AND SECOND RESURRECTIONS**

1. The first resurrection is to commendation. The second resurrection is to condemnation.
2. The first involves witnesses of Jesus. [Revelation 20:4] The second involves those deceived by Satan. [Revelation 20:8]
3. The first are those that live. [Revelation 20:4] The second are the dead. [Revelation 20:12]
4. The first become priests and rulers with God and Christ. [Revelation 20:6] The second are tormented day and night. [Revelation 14:10,11]
5. The first are God's sons. [Revelation 21:7] The second there was found no place for them. [Revelation 20:11]
6. The first are not subject to the second death. [Revelation 20:6] The second are subject to the second death. [Revelation 20:14,15]
7. The first enjoy life eternal. [Matthew 25:46] The second suffer everlasting punishment. [Matthew 25:46]
8. The first are happy and holy. [Revelation 20:6] The second have weeping and gnashing of teeth. [Matthew 25:30]

In 1 Corinthians 15 we have the "Creed" of the early church. What Paul is saying is that Christ rose from the dead and that this doctrine, combined with the substitutionary efficacious sacrifice, are the foundations of the Christian faith. The resurrection proves who the Lord Jesus Christ was, that He is the God-man the unique person of the universe. He was not a dead martyr or a ghost; He is the God-man who died and rose again from the dead. If there is no resurrection, there is no faith, no hope, no truth no eternal life. When you have no hope you have no gospel. **John 14:6** is a hollow lie unless it is confirmed by the resurrection. Praise God he spoke the truth; we serve a living Saviour, not a dead hero!

Jesus prophesied his own death and resurrection many times. If Christ did not rise you have proved that He was not what He claimed to be and you have not got a Saviour, and certainly don't have a King and Lord. You can claim that the Bible is trustworthy as you have the Scriptures saying that Christ is going to rise from the dead, and He did rise and the early church believed He rose for good and sound historical reasons.



Some liberals believe that Christ rose from the dead “spiritually” in the disciple’s hearts on Easter Sunday morning. Where the liberal talks about the “Easter faith” that is probably what they mean. They believe that the disciples sat round after the crucifixion and said that Christ’s statements were still important, that his concepts live on, and that he has risen spiritually.

Rudolf Bultmann, who was a liberal, said that every time he preaches Jesus came alive, which is not unlike an English teacher saying that every time he read Shakespeare, he came alive. It intimates that Jesus Christ is still dead. If it takes a minister to bring Christ back to life every time he preaches on a Sunday, Christ is dead. Paul blows this liberal philosophy away in 1 Corinthians 15. We do not accept this liberal rubbish – we reject these people as brethren – they are enemies of the Cross and Resurrection faith that the apostles call us to uphold. Galatians 1:7-9, Philippians 3:18-19.

**THERE ARE TWO QUITE DIFFERENT CONCEPTS OF RESURRECTION**

Very few people understand the ancient Jewish and Greek concepts of resurrection which were very different to each other, and different to the views of modern man.

**Greeks**

[a] The Greeks believed that we all have two parts, the body and the soul - this is the belief called dualism. When the Greeks talked about resurrection they did not mean the resurrection of the body which was anathema to them. **THEY WOULD HAVE WELCOMED THE LIBERAL VIEWPOINT** – Paul has to argue in Corinthians that they must put it aside and accept the physical bodily resurrection – which they didn’t really want to believe!

The sooner they could die and get rid of their aging bodies the better. The Greeks looked forward to being released from their bodies so that they might be just pure spirit. The concept of the after life for the Greeks was the spirit life or “shades”; a spiritual existence, but no physical body to decay again. The Europeans have carried this concept through and most people think that that is what the Bible teaches – a ghostly spiritual existence after death. It is not a biblical picture, but this pagan nonsense has been brought into Westernized Christianity, and we must challenge it from the Scriptures.

**Hebrews**

[b] The Hebrews looked on our being as made up of three aspects, soul, spirit, and body, and that you cannot split us up into parts; that there was therefore a true unity, both in time and eternity. For the Hebrew mind to think about the resurrection it must involve the body, for to the Hebrew mind men and women are unified beings, not able to be split up, except for discussion purposes. When Paul is talking about the resurrection he is talking about a bodily resurrection.

The Corinthians were Roman-Greek pagan by culture, and they therefore did not believe in the bodily resurrection, as it was outside their cultural expectation and desire. They were spiritualizing the resurrection in Paul’s day, very much like the liberals of today, because they did not want to have a physical resurrection. They were in the Greek Platonic and Aristotelian tradition that looked forward to an eternal spiritual existence, after death “freed you” of your body.

Paul in effect, says to the Corinthians that, “whether you like it or not Christ rose from the dead, and whether you like it or not you will rise physically from the dead and live forever in a new body like the Lords”. In addition the unbeliever will go with a body into the lake of fire in a real and eternal body. You will have a body like Christ’s resurrection body. If you have not got a physical resurrection in your belief system you have not got a biblical and apostolic faith.

**OLD TESTAMENT PASSAGES WHICH REFER TO THE RESURRECTION**

It was the expectation of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that they would be resurrected at the end. Their concept of being buried with their family involved that. Family burial involved choosing with whom you were going to be resurrected. You chose your company in the resurrection by where you are buried - which is still a tremendous concept to have for us today.

The resurrection passages are the ones you read when you are burying a believer - **1 Thessalonians 4:13-18, 1 Corinthians 15, John 14:1-3, Philippians 3:21.**

When the Lord calls the people at the Rapture all these people are going to be together. **Job 19:25-27** gives a clear concept of bodily resurrection. Job is perhaps the most ancient of the books of the Bible going back to the time of the Patriarchs. He says that he knows that his redeemer lives, and that he will see him in his flesh in the latter days upon the earth. After death our body goes back to the minerals, which is no problem for the Lord. He can re-gather them and reorganize them in a new way. Don’t worry whether you are buried, or cremated, or blown apart, for in many soils nothing remains after a few years due to acidity anyway!

When we look at the Lord's resurrection body we are looking at a picture of ours in the future. The structure of the Lord's body was such that it could walk through walls, even though the wall and his body were both solid to touch when touched. People could recognize Christ who could eat, teach, breathe and be touched, but had abilities which He did not have in His pre-cross body.

God's plan for human kind was that each person would live forever. Physical death came into existence due to sin. The last enemy that is destroyed is death. We are all going to live forever. The question is where are you going to spend eternity; in heaven or in the Lake of Fire. In Creation we were created to live forever and we all will. Their personal rejection of the gospel is why unbelievers spend eternity in the Lake of Fire. This is a living death where they wish they could die but cannot. The concept of a spiritual resurrection is not new, but is a pagan religion Satanic lie from the beginning. This is what you are facing all the way through from the Gnostics to the modern cults.

The resurrection was one of the first doctrines to be attacked, with the Greeks re interpreting resurrection in 52 AD. In the Talmud and Mishnah (late 70s onwards) the Jewish religious leaders, who have rejected Jesus as Messiah, also then reject the concept of resurrection – the Sadducees win. This is why most Jews today do not believe in any after-life at all.

### **Evidence Of The Resurrection**

The Bible records 17 appearances of the Lord Jesus Christ including one in which there were 500 witnesses most of whom had survived until the writing of 1 Corinthians. Paul is saying that, 'if you do not believe my testimony get on a boat, go to Palestine and check it out with the hundreds of witnesses there'. In those days no one who seriously explored the facts doubted, because the evidence was overwhelming. There is supporting evidence by unbelievers of that day such as Tacitus, Seutonius, and Pliny who all wrote about the Christians who were always talking about the resurrection. Christos Anastasias - Christ is risen!

### **THE CHURCH AND THE RESURRECTION**

Every church in the ancient world was seen to be represented by Christ, the Cross, and the resurrection. There was not a meeting in which the resurrection was not mentioned. The early Church was for the first twenty years mainly Jewish and they met with other Jews at Sabbath services and shared worship as long as they could, until they were expelled by their unbelieving fellow Jews. For their worship of the Lord however, they met before dawn on Sunday rather than Saturday. Then, later in the first century in Palestine, then met in homes or Christian synagogues on a Sunday rather than a Saturday, for which they were vigorously attacked in the Mishnah and Talmud [written after 78 AD].

The early churches met on the resurrection day and at the dawn service they would sing a resurrection hymn. The response of "He's risen - truly He's risen", was used at these services as it still is in the Orthodox churches today. Nowadays we do not stress the resurrection as we should. If you look through the preaching of the apostles in ACTS ask yourself what do they say in the market places? They say, Christ died for our sins and He rose again, and they stressed the resurrection even ahead of the Cross. The Cross gets its meaning from the Empty Tomb!

The reason is clear to see; the resurrection proves the reality of the success of the sacrifice of the cross. This is why Satan attacks the resurrection as he has during the last 100 years or so, whether the churches emphasize it or not. If the resurrection is removed from the Christian message, the church that allows that to happen dies. Look at the last two hundred years of church history and you will see it littered with church buildings no longer in use for genuine worship. Without a resurrection there is nothing and no-one to worship or follow!

God who keeps the promise of the resurrection can obviously keep all the other promises in the Bible. Resurrection power is live power. We have the living Lord Jesus Christ in us. It is based on a physical, historical reality.

To be apostolic you need to stress the resurrection every week, as where believers do not know their resurrection-faith Satan will take what little they know away from them. As pastors we should get excited about what the Lord has done, will do and is doing and enthusiastic about teaching the Word. The Lord raised Himself, the Holy Spirit raised Him and God the Father raised Him from the dead. The Godhead broke the bands of death.

### **RESURRECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS**

1. This resurrection takes place at the Second Advent.
2. The body of David was still in his tomb according to Peter on the day of Pentecost. (Acts 2:25-29) David's body could not have then been resurrected in the scene of Matthew 27:51, 52.
3. Under the concept of Daniel 12:1-3, and Isaiah 26:19-20, the resurrection of the Old Testament saints is related to the second advent of Jesus Christ.
4. The dispensation of Israel is not yet completed, the resurrection occurs at the end of a dispensation, the end of the dispensation of Israel - Second Advent. The Age of Gentiles ended with Abraham's call but the saints from

that era did not get their resurrection bodies because Jesus Christ had not received his, the first fruits. (1 Corinthians 15:20)

5. The two witnesses of Revelation 11:3-13 are Moses and Elijah and they could not be killed if they had received resurrection bodies. (Revelation 11:7-8). Moses and Elijah therefore have not received their resurrection bodies by the middle of the Tribulation. Matthew 27:52-53 is a transfer scene not a resurrection scene. The transfer is one of saints from paradise to the third heaven of Ephesians 4:8. Some were given resuscitated bodies to witness to the Jews in and around Jerusalem, but later died again. They all still await the final resurrection.
6. The Abrahamic, Davidic, Palestinian and New Covenants are not fulfilled till the second advent of Christ. The resurrection of Israel corresponds to the fulfillment of these four unconditional covenants.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **MEDIATORSHIP**

1. Greek word is mesites which has as its root meaning, to have a neutral group/nation to stand between two warring nations to arbitrate and judge between them. The two concepts are judgement and peacemaking.
2. The mediator had to be equal to both parties and acceptable to each.
3. Old Testament usage of this concept is found in Job 9:9, 32, 33. Job calls for an umpire between man and God.
4. The Hypostatic Union of the Lord Jesus Christ qualifies the Lord to be the mediator between man and God as he alone is equal with both parties. 1 Timothy 2:5.
5. The Lord's work on the cross forms the basis of his mediatorship as he removes the sin barrier between man and God. Hebrews 9:12 1-5.
6. The Mosaic Law pre-figured the Lord's mediatorship. Hebrews 8:6, 12:24, Galatians 3:19, 20.

### **RESURRECTION**

1. The resurrection of Christ is central to the gospel. (1 Corinthians 15:3-4)
  - a) Had there been no resurrection then we would all still be in our sins. (1 Corinthians 15:17).
  - b) Resurrection indicates completion of justification. (Romans 4:25, 2 Corinthians 5:2 1)
  - c) Resurrection is a guarantee of ultimate sanctification. (1 Corinthians 15:20-23)
  - d) The resurrection is the Father's seal on Christ's completed work, and the public declaration of its acceptance.
  - e) Without the resurrection it is impossible for Christ to be glorified. The humanity of Christ is glorified higher than the angels. (John 7:39, John 16:14)
2. Historical proof of the resurrection (Acts 24:21ff, 26:4-26)
  - a) The empty tomb. (Matthew 28)
  - b) Many of witnesses died rather than change their testimony.
  - c) Subsequent changes and confidence of the disciples after the resurrection.
  - d) The day of Pentecost. The reality of the resurrection was so well known that when Peter preached the first two sermons in Jerusalem over 8000 people were saved. (Acts 2:41, Acts 4:3-4)
  - e) The observance of the first day of the week as the worship day. (Acts 20:7, 1 Corinthians 16:2, Revelation 1:10)
  - f) The historic existence of the church. The church worships a literal risen Saviour, and not merely the memory of a dead martyr. (Romans 5:12, 14, 17, 6:3-9, 8:2, 1 Corinthians 15:26, 54-55, Hebrews 2:14)
3. Baptism is a sign of the new resurrection life. (Romans 6:3-11, Colossians 2:12).
4. The Lord's Supper is a reminder of the expected return of the risen Lord. (1 Corinthians 11:23-26)
5. Order of the resurrections:-
  - a) The first for believers only including Jesus Christ which is divided into four parts.
    - i) The resurrection of Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:23, Romans 1:4, 1 Thessalonians 1:10, 1 Peter 1:3)
    - ii) The Rapture of the church (1 Corinthians 15:51-57, 1 Thessalonians 4:16-18)
    - iii) The Old Testament saints and tribulation martyrs at the end of the Tribulation. (Daniel 12:13, Isaiah 26:19-20, Revelation 20:4)
    - iv) The Millennial saints and those who survive the Tribulation to enter the Millennium in their physical bodies.
  - b) The second resurrection occurs at the end of the Millennium and is for unbelievers only. They are judged and cast into the lake of fire forever. (1 John 5:28, 29, Revelation 20:12-15, 2 Peter 3:7, Matthew 25:41)
  - c) Jesus, who must be the first eternally resurrected human., was not raised until three days after the crucifixion.

d) People in the Old Testament who were "raised from the dead" were merely resuscitated, and later died.  
 e) Matthew 27:52-53 is a transfer scene not a resurrection scene. The transfer is one of saints from paradise to the third heaven (Ephesians 4:8). Some were given resuscitated bodies to witness to the Jews.

6. The sequence of events at the Lord's resurrection is as follows:-

- a) Mary Magdalene, Salome and Mary the mother of James and Joses head towards the tomb followed by other women carrying embalming spices.
- b) The three find the stone rolled away. Mary Magdalene goes back to tell the disciples. (Luke 23:55-24:9, John 20:1-2)
- c) Mary the mother of James and Joses draws near to the tomb and sees the angel. (Matthew 28:2)
- d) She goes back to the women carrying the spices.
- e) Peter and John who have been advised by Mary Magdalene arrive, look inside the empty tomb and go away. (John 20:3-10)
- f) Mary Magdalene returns weeping, sees two angels and then Jesus. (John 20:11-18)
- g) As instructed by the Lord she goes to tell the disciples.
- h) Mary the mother of James and Joses meets the women with the spices and returning with them they see the two angels. (Luke 24:4-5, Mark 16:5)
- i) They also receive advice from the angels and, going to seek the disciples, are met by Jesus. (Matthew 28:8-10)

**IMMORTALITY**

1. Immortality means exemption from physical death and should not be confused with eternal life.
2. Immortality is used only with reference to the body (Romans 6:12; 8:11).
3. At this time only Jesus Christ has immortality as He alone has a resurrection body (1 Timothy 1:17; 6:16).
4. All men are currently mortal (Job 4:17; 1 Corinthians 15:22).
5. At the Rapture, our mortal body will put on immortality (1 Corinthians 15:51-54).
6. Death is then conquered and mortality is "swallowed up of life" (2 Corinthians 5:4).

**LESSON 17 – THE ASCENSION OF JESUS CHRIST**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
17	His Ascension and Ministry Now	John 14:1-4, 16-20 Acts 1:6-11 Luke 24:50-53 Hebrews 10:11-14 Jude 24-25	Ascension and Session Prophet Priest and King Rock

**INTRODUCTION**

The Ascension is something that is not stressed at all today, apart from it being an introduction to Pentecost. It is however very important, as it is the exaltation of the Lord Jesus Christ. This begins the heavenly Ministry of the Lord, which we are enjoying today, and will continue to enjoy until He comes for us or we go to be with Him.

**STATEMENTS ABOUT THE ASCENSION**

In the Old Testament - Psalm 68:18, cf Ephesians 4:8, Psalm 110:1 cf Acts 2:34

In the sayings of Christ - John 7:33, 14:12, 28, 16:5 in going to his Father and John 6:62, 20:17 in His ascension

In the New Testament - **Luke 9:51, 24:50-53, Acts 1:6-11, Ephesians 4:10, 1 Timothy 3:16, 1 Peter 3:22**

The Christian life is in three phases, salvation, the life on earth, the life in heaven.

The ministry of Christ falls into four areas, the pre-incarnate ministry, the ministry of the first advent, His present ministry and His millennial ministry.

In **John 14:1-4, 16-20** the Lord ties the Second Advent of the Lord to the need to "go away" physically from the disciples. He says that as certain as He is going, He will return after He has prepared a place for us. Later in the chapter He says that He will send us another comforter. John 14:16-17. At this point He foretells enormous changes coming in the lives

of the disciples after He has gone. The Lord's departure and the coming of the Church are inter-related. The doorway to our present place of amazing blessing was opened at the Ascension.

The Ascension marked the end of the period of Christ's humiliation, and His entrance into the state of exaltation. Even the forty days between His resurrection and ascension involved some limitation in what he did, as with respect to showing His glory. Notice that his post resurrection appearances did not startle the disciples as far as the appearance of His resurrection body was concerned. They were initially shocked and fearful but quickly adjusted. All is changed now, for he sits in heaven as God and Man, and is exalted forever – HE is on the throne - Lord and King of all!

**ASCENSION**

1. The resurrection body of Christ was capable of 'space travel'. The humanity of Christ in resurrection traveled through all three heavens. (John 20:17). (1st Heaven - the atmosphere, 2nd Heaven - Stellar Space, 3rd Heaven - the Throne Room of God).
2. The purpose of this space travel was to arrive in a human body at the throne room of God the Father. Although covered with no protective space suit, the resurrection body did not burn up as it traveled through the universe, it did not suffer fatigue but arrived in perfect condition (Romans 8:34, Colossians 3:1, Hebrews 1:3, 8:1, 10:12, 12:2). Upon his arrival, the Father said, "sit down at my right hand" (Psalm 110: 1, Hebrews 1: 13). Deity does not sit, only Christ's humanity sat down. This indicated the acceptability of the humanity of Christ (Ephesians 1:20) and guarantees the acceptability of regenerate mankind (Ephesians 2:6).

The seating or session of Christ declared Him superior to all angels, elect or fallen (1 Peter 3:22). Today believers are positionally higher than angels but in the resurrection body believers will be physically superior to angels. This is why God gives every believer at least one angelic servant - to some many more - a down payment that we will be one day superior to them (Hebrews 1: 14). Who made this possible? Jesus Christ through ascension and session.

3. The ascension and session of the humanity of Christ produced the visible sign of His victory in the angelic conflict – as Man and God he sits at the right hand of the Father, in victory. (Hebrews 1:3-13).
4. The ascension begins a new stage of the angelic conflict (Ephesians 1:20-22), 4:7-10). Hence the believer of the Church age is involved in the intensification of the angelic conflict.
5. The ascension and session begins the subjection of his enemies (Psalm 110: 1) as quoted in (Luke 20:42-43, Acts 2:33-34, Hebrews 1: 13).
6. The second advent of Christ will conclude the subjection process (Daniel 7:13, 14, Zechariah 13:2, Colossians 2:1 5, Revelation 20:1-3)
7. The ascension and session also completes the glorification of Christ. (Acts 2:33, Philippians 2:9, 1 Peter 3:22)
8. The ascension explains the uniqueness of the Church Age. (John 7:37-39)

The post ascension appearances of Christ to John described in Revelation 1 must have shown His glory much more vividly as John does not describe the Lord in any terms of reference to his earthly ministry – all is changed utterly! The ascension having taken place, Christ was then ready to begin other ministries in behalf of His own and of the world.

The Lord has been exalted in heaven and is full of glory. The ascension was His graduation, going back to the Father and hearing Him say "well done". The mission is accomplished, everything is done, He now begins a new phase of the eternal plan.

The Place - Towards Bethany - Luke 24:50 on the Mt of Olives. Acts 1:12

The Method - a gradual movement upwards as if supported by a cloud. Acts 1:9

The Promise was that he would return in a similar way.

**Acts 1:6-11** gives a short description of the Ascension. This immediately tells us that the Lord is coming again, the ascension is the guarantee of the second coming. It also tells us how He will come in exactly the same way He left us. It is an actual fact of history being recorded here – not a "spiritual reality".

It is not a symbolic thing. As it happened, so will the Second Advent happen; namely, literally and physically. From the past we have confidence in the present and assurance for the future. The ascension occurred near Bethany on the Mount of Olives. The Lord traveled as if He were supported by a cloud going up in a long upward movement. There is a companion passage in **Luke 24:50-53**. The disciples' response was to praise God for the ten days until Pentecost. They had victory in their souls after witnessing the resurrection and ascension.

**WAS THERE MORE THAN ONE ASCENSION?**

The problem passage which the liberals bring up is in John 20:17. Did He ascend to heaven before the public ascension? Some think that John 20:17, indicates one or more ascensions before the one detailed in Acts 1. However, the verb translated as, "I ascend", is most likely a futuristic present referring to the coming public ascension of Acts 1 and referring to it with certainty. It is as if the Lord were saying to Mary, "Stop clinging to Me". "There is no need for this, as I am not yet at the point of permanent ascension". "You will still have the opportunity to see Me". "However, there is no question but that I certainly will ascend to My Father".

The Ascension is the Lord's exaltation. The disciples watched as Christ was taken up and could see it as the beginning of the victory march. The Lord was glorified by the Father with the glory He had prior to the incarnation. He has been exalted above all principalities. The Lord was not only raised up from the grave but was raised bodily into heaven in praise and glory. In the ascension we have the beginning of the glorification of the Lord Jesus Christ who has won the victory in the angelic conflict.

**SIX POINTS ON THE PURPOSE OF THE EXALTATION:-**

- [a] He was glorified that He might glorify the Father.
- [b] That He might be a Prince and a Saviour.
- [c] That He might enter heaven as a forerunner for ourselves.
- [d] That He might enter heaven for Himself
- [e] That He might act as High Priest on our behalf.
- [f] That He awaits the complete subjection of His enemies.

The purpose was to show that the victory on the Cross might be shown as complete, that the victory might win the glory and that it might be appropriated by us.

There is a purpose in the ascension which is integrated into us as believers as the Lord Jesus Christ is acting on our behalf now. The ascension tells us that He arrived in heaven in victory and glory.

The post ascension ministries of the Lord Jesus Christ are as follows as far as Chafer notes them:-

**POST ASCENSION MINISTRIES**

- [a] God's great power is shown towards us.
- [b] We have a great high priest
- [c] Our great high priest is in heaven
- [d] In the blood of Christ we can be bold
- [e] Glory is the Lord's now and will be ours later.
- [f] Because of the ascension the Lord has received the promise of the Holy Spirit and poured it forth upon His obedient and believing disciples.
- [g] He has gone to prepare a place for us.
- [h] Because of His exaltation the believers will do greater works than Christ did in the days of His humiliation.
- [i] The power of the glorified Christ is available through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- [j] Jesus Christ has been exalted above the angels and received a name that is above every name, everything is subject to Him and has become His footstool.

The final triumph of the Lord Jesus Christ is at the Second Advent. The Rapture of the Church will be the victory march of believers to heaven. The Lord Jesus Christ is pictured at the right hand of the Father which is a position of power, authority and glory. The Lord has full glory now.

On earth during his first advent His glory was shielded, now it is full. This is the difference of His appearances after He arose and after He ascended. This is shown by Paul's meeting with the Lord on the road to Damascus. John on the Island of Patmos gives another idea of this. Here he sees the risen and ascended Lord which causes him to faint. It would have been great to walk with the Lord on earth but it is even greater to anticipate being with Him in glory. The Lord has become King of Kings and Lord of Lords at His entry into heaven. The biggest change in heaven is that a man is now seated at the right hand of the Father, the God-Man Jesus Christ.

God becomes man to be a Saviour. The Saviour is glorified through His victory and becomes our High Priest. The High Priest completes His job and takes up His crown to become forever King of Kings, and as God Lord of all lords.

**CHRIST'S PRESENT MINISTRY**

- [a] Head of the Church,
- [b] He is the priest for His people
- [c] He is preparing a place for us.

**THE LORD'S FUTURE MINISTRY**

- [a] He will raise the dead,
- [b] Reward those who believe in Him
- [c] Rule over the earth.

**IN HEAVEN**

- [a] He is High Priest,
- [b] He bestows spiritual gifts
- [c] He ever lives to make intercession for us
- [d] He appears for His own in the presence of God.

**ON EARTH**

- [a] He indwells His Church,
- [b] He abides with His Church,
- [c] He sent His Spirit to minister to the Church.

**Hebrews 10:11-14** gives the plan behind this. We should be keen about thinking of the return of the Lord, which was the motivation which sent the early believers throughout the world. He is awaiting his enemies becoming His footstool. The victor in the ancient world would sit on his throne on the battlefield and the conquered enemy would bow before him and become his footstool. The Lord has won the angelic conflict. The blood of Christ has dealt with sin. The Lord is waiting on His throne until the last enemy is brought in who will be subject to this sign of absolute total defeat. Satan, sin and death are the final enemies.

The writer to the Hebrews makes it clear that these things are certain. We must get a glimpse of the power of the Lord Jesus Christ every week. They must be aware that the victory has been won and we are involved in a mopping up campaign. The Lord is no longer on the Cross; he is seated in glory at the right hand of the Father. Our crosses are empty crosses in the churches, because the job is done. When we suffer pressure we should boldly approach the throne of grace where the Lord Jesus Christ is seated in glory, we are on the winning team. See yourself in the light of the ascension and draw on the power that the Lord has for you.

**DOCTRINES**

**CHRIST: ASCENSION AND SESSION**

**ASCENSION**

1. Jesus in His resurrection body travelled from earth to heaven. (John 20:17)
2. With Jesus Christ now in heaven, He has given His Spirit to indwell us on earth. (John 7:37-39)

**SESSION**

3. Upon his arrival in heaven, God the Father said "sit down at my right hand" (Psalm 110:1, Hebrews 1:3,13).
4. The session of Christ indicates the acceptability of the first man, Jesus Christ, into heaven (Ephesians 1:20) and guarantees the acceptability of all believers (Ephesians 2:6)
5. The session of Christ declared Him superior to all angels (Hebrews 2:6-8, 1 Peter 3:22).
6. The session of Christ produced victory in the angelic conflict. (Hebrews 1:3-13).
7. The session begins the subjection of His enemies "under his feet" (Psalm 110:1), fulfilled at the Second Advent (Colossians 2:15, Revelation 20:1-3)
8. The session completes the glorification of Christ. (Acts 2:33, Philippians 2:9)
9. Seated at the right hand of the Father, Jesus now ministers as our great high priest (Hebrews 7:23-25)

**CHRIST – THE ROCK**

1. Christ is the rock of salvation. (Exodus 17:1-7, 1 Corinthians 10:4)
2. Christ is the rock of judgment. (Isaiah 8:14, 1 Peter 2:8)
3. Christ is the rock of provision. (Isaiah 26:3, 4) Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace whose mind is stayed on thee because he trusteth thee. Trust ye in the Lord forever for in the Lord is the rock of ages.
4. Christ is the foundation rock. (Isaiah 28:16, Psalm 118:22)
5. Christ is the foundation rock of the Church. (Matthew 16:16, 18, 1 Corinthians 3:11, Ephesians 2:20-22)
6. Christ is the destroying rock of the Second Advent. (Daniel 2:35)

**CHRIST: PROPHET, PRIEST, AND KING [See page 66 above]**

**LESSON 18 – THE SECOND ADVENT**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
18	His Coming for His Saints	John 14:1-4 I Thessalonians 4:11-18 I Thessalonians 5:6-10	Rapture

**INTRODUCTION**

Christ is coming for His people. This has been a contentious issue since the start of the Church. In the early church they were living in the daily expectation of the return of Christ. This was the power and motivation behind the early church for the first three hundred years. This is a very practical doctrine of Scripture and not something to go overboard on. If you have a biblical view you will be practical rather than foolish. "Prophecy nuts" have not had a good result anywhere in the history of the church, but the practical application of prophecy always is beneficial!

It is important to realise that you cannot go to one place only in the New Testament to get a full explanation of the Second Coming. You should go through the New Testament in a chronological sense. For instance if the theme is mentioned in James you look at James first, then Galatians, 1 and 2 Corinthians, 1 and 2 Thessalonians and so on, in the order they were written, so that you see the revelation of truth in the sequence that the earliest believers received it.

**THE PROMISE**

In **John 14:1-4** we have the introduction of the Lord coming again. It is still future. The purpose of the knowledge of the Second Coming is that you might have peace of mind. It is that history has a purpose and that He is coming again. History is not going to end with a maybe or might but it will end with a definite coming of the Lord. The Lord's Ascension was not a cause for sorrow but he went so that he can return in fulfillment of John 14.

The expectation that He would return was so strong in the earliest church that they all expected to be present at the return of the Lord. Because there was such an expectation there was great consternation in some of the churches when some of the believers started to die.



## THE LETTERS TO THE THESSALONIAN CHURCH

The church at Thessalonica was a young and enthusiastic church but without a lot of understanding of God's Word, for they were young in faith. This is why Bible teaching is so important in the young church. Whilst some had died, others had been martyred and yet others had given up their jobs waiting for the return of the Lord. In 1 and 2 Thessalonians Paul gives them an answer. In chapter 4 verses 11 and 12 Paul tells them that as a part of their witness they should work honestly minding their own business. The Second Coming of Christ should not create people who have a bad witness. You should not stand in a white sheet waving a palm branch around as many "nutty" people have over the centuries.

In **1 Thessalonians 4:13-18** Paul says that he would not have them ignorant about this event. In verse 18 this news should bring comfort which ties in with John 14 where the Lord said that believers should not worry. As long as we have got it right we will receive comfort and not get upset. Conversely if you have not got comfort from the Second Coming you have got it wrong.

In God's plan you should act in conformity with the 20 Commandments of **1 Thessalonians 5:6-22** rather than the so called Ten Commandments. We are called to be living well beyond the Mosaic Law, to something greater, because we are looking forward to something greater than Moses was. Moses was looking forward to the Cross; we are looking forward to the Second Coming. Moses had the concept that the Messiah would come. We have the knowledge that He has come, and that He is coming again. If you understand that His Second Coming is imminent then you will be keeping the commandments in chapter 5 and everywhere else – as you will be Holy Spirit filled.

There is quite a lot of argument about this subject. Those who violently argue about this often do not measure up in their lives to either 1 Thessalonians 4:11-12 or chapter 5, let alone Matthew 7. If you come across people like this you should tell them that when they get their life in order you will sit down and discuss theology with them.

## VIEWS OF THE SECOND COMING

There are many different ideas on the Second Coming. There are the pre-millennial, pre tribulation, post tribulation, mid tribulation and Amillennial. The one that does not require the spiritualizing of Scripture is the pre tribulation, pre millennial viewpoint, which is the most anciently held view of the church. It is our view at EBCWA also.

This was the view which was held by the Early Church and conforms best we believe with the Word of God. It can therefore be classified as the conservative/orthodox position. The doctrine of the Second Coming should have an impact on our life. If it does not we have misunderstood it. If we argue violently about it we are not Spirit filled = we are wrong!

In the first two hundred years nearly all the Christians believed in a literal coming again, Rapture, Millennium, and it was not until Origen and Clement of Alexandria, and Augustine of Hippo, in the later centuries that you get the figurative interpretation. It is to these men that the Reformed group of theologians trace their origins to. There is better evidence for the orthodox view than that proposed by the Reformed groups. It is no historic accident that the churches of Alexandria and Hippo were powerless in the face of the Moslem invaders.

The Second Coming of Christ is said to be mentioned 318 times in 260 chapters of the NT and occupies one in twenty five verses. Therefore, if you think that the Second Coming is not important, one in twenty five verses in the New Testament say that you are wrong.

It is not an optional extra, although all the liberal churches side step it and many evangelicals do not hold a stated position because it is controversial. As one in twenty five verses in the New Testament deals with this subject you should have at least two messages a year on this subject.

## DIVISION OF THE SECOND ADVENT

This one doctrine is made up of two specific events, the first part is when He comes for his church, the second when He comes back with His people to judge the world and set up his kingdom. This first event is quite often referred to as the Rapture whilst the second is known as the Second Advent.

At the Second Advent we know exactly where He is going to come to, as the Mount of Olives will split in two when He arrives. We can go to Israel and stand on the Mount of Olives and say to the Lord that I know this is where you will arrive on your return. **Zechariah 14:4-5.**

There is a time gap of some duration between them and this is where the tribulation occurs. This is a cause of disagreement between the dispensationalists and the reformed theologians. It is essential with this subject that you teach something, thus it is important that you come to grips with it.

With unfulfilled prophecy you have to be guided by the Holy Spirit and what the Word of God says. Scripture must be compared with Scripture and find out what does fit together. There are a lot of good systems which are internally consistent but do not comply with the Word of God. The correct view will always get you out in evangelism, clam your doubts, and stimulate you to lead a holy life and do the Lord's will.

In Matthew 24 the disciples were totally unprepared for the statement recorded in John 14. In the former passage they had been prepared for the return of the Messiah to set up the kingdom, not that He was going away as stated in John 14. In the latter passage He is to prepare a place for them and return to take them to that place which was clearly heaven. There are therefore two separate events. The disciples, like most since, were initially confused by this. So is Satan – that's the point – only Holy Spirit filled diligent students of the Word of God will discover this.

**CONTRAST BETWEEN THE RAPTURE AND THE SECOND ADVENT**

The progressive revelation of this doctrine is important. There is a contrast between the Lord coming for His saints and coming with His saints.

<b>RAPTURE</b>	<b>SECOND ADVENT</b>
Christ comes for his saints to take them from the earth to heaven Living saints are translated The saints go to heaven The world is unchanged and continues in sin It is a deliverance from the day of wrath  It is imminent and could occur at any time It is a truth revealed only in the New Testament This relates to only those who are saved. Satan is not bound and is very active on the earth Saints leave the earth in their resurrection bodies The Rapture relates to the Church  A time of comfort	Christ returns to earth to set up His kingdom  No saints are translated The saints remain on the earth. The world is judged and righteousness is established. Deliverance for those believers who have survived the day of wrath. Preceded by many events This is a prominent doctrine in both Testaments Relates to both saved and unsaved. Satan is bound for the Millennium. Saints remain to repopulate the earth. The Second Advent and Millennium relates to covenants with Israel - Davidic and Palestinian A time of terror for unbelievers

This is the pre tribulation view, which contrasts with the post Tribulation view which has both items occurring at the same time. We at EBCWA believe that the pre tribulation concept is correct, based on the literal acceptance of the prophecy contained in the Scriptures while the Post Tribulational concept relies on symbolic interpretation of the prophecies.

The Lord could come for us at any time, with nothing in Scripture requiring fulfillment before the Lord can come for His church. The last statement or prayer in the Bible says, "Even so come Lord Jesus". They lived every day expecting the Lord to come and therefore the prayer was legitimate. There are also many verses in the Old Testament which deal with the Second Advent of Christ, thus those in the Tribulation will have a timetable for the Second Coming of the Lord. It will be an encouragement for them. We will study these things in later theology lectures - Eschatology.

It is a good idea while we discuss this subject, to think about leaving behind in our wills a statement of why we have disappeared. There will be more saved in the Tribulation period, not only due to the 144,000 witnesses, and the angels but also those to whom we have witnessed and leave messages for. Do we believe these things?

**DOCTRINES**

**RAPTURE**

1. The Rapture of the Church is the termination of the Church Age and is the taking of all believers since Pentecost to Heaven by the Lord Jesus Christ.
2. General Scripture (John 1 4:1-3, 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)
3. The Rapture and the 2nd Advent should not be confused, they are at least 7 years apart being separated by the Tribulation and have different characteristics.
4. Rapture
  - a) Not revealed in Old Testament.
  - b) Promises to the Church fulfilled.
  - c) Judgment seat of Christ rewards (1 Corinthians 3:12-15, 2 Corinthians 5:10-11, 2 Timothy 2:11)
  - d) Christ the Bridegroom and Head
  - e) Believers body changed (not creation) (1 Corinthians 15:51-58, Philippians 3:21)
  - f) Church goes to heaven. (1 Thessalonians 4:17)
  - g) Imminent - no signs to be fulfilled before the Church can be removed.
  - h) Time of comfort for believer. (1 Thessalonians 4:18)
  - i) Christ will meet the Church in the air. (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)
  - j) Private (only believers will see)
  - k) Before tribulation

- l) Believers go out of the world. (1 Thessalonians 4:16-18)
- m) Removal of the Holy Spirit. (2 Thessalonians 2:7)

5. Second Advent

- a) Spoken of by all major Old Testament prophets. (Zechariah 14:4)
- b) Promises to Israel fulfilled.
- c) Great White Throne Judgment (after Millennium) - unbelievers. (Matthew 25:31, Revelation 20:12-15).
- d) Christ the Messiah to Israel (Daniel 9:25)
- e) Radical changes in nature. (Romans 8:19-22)
- f) Church comes back to earth (1 Thessalonians 3:13) 4:17)
- g) Many details of prophecy yet to be fulfilled. (Revelation Chapters 6-19)
- h) Time of terror for unbeliever. (Revelation 6:15-17)
- i) Christ will come back to earth (Zechariah 14:4)
- j) Public - every eye shall see him (Revelation 1- 7)
- k) After tribulation.
- l) Unbelievers taken off the earth (Matthew 24:37-42)
- m) Removal of Satan (Revelation 20:1-3)

6. The Rapture is before the Tribulation. Thus the Pre Tribulation Rapture position is shown by nine factors.

- a) The worried Thessalonians (2 Thessalonians 2:1-6)
- b) The Restrainer removed (2 Thessalonians 2:7-12)
- c) The lack of the word 'Church' in (Revelation 13:9)
- d) The verb Tereo in (Revelation 3:10)
- e) Grace before judgment (John 14:3)
- f) Resurrections in their order. (1 Corinthians 15:22-26)
- g) The Covenant approach. The Abrahamic, Davidic and Palestinian covenant fulfilled at 2nd Advent.
- h) The Church is in heaven before the Seal Judgments (Revelation 4,5)
- i) The contrast between the 2nd Advent and the Rapture

**RAPTURE – PRE-TRIBULATION RAPTURE:**

(Why the Church will not go through the Tribulation)

1. On the basis of the distinction between Israel and the Church:

- a) God never deals with Israel and the Church at the same time.
- b) Because of the promises to Israel, yet unfulfilled, Israel must have a future. Evangelistic and missionary responsibility of Israel will be completed in the Tribulation.
- c) The nation Israel has not been completed.
- d) "Daniel's 70 weeks" not completed. (Jeremiah 25:11, 12, 29:10, Daniel 9:2, 24, 25)

2. Statement and Structure of Revelation:

- a) The statement (Revelation 3:10) "Tereo ek" (to keep out), not "Aireo" (to take out) used in context.
- b) The structure: Church Age/Tribulation/Millennium/Eternity. (Revelation 2-3, 7-19, 20, 21:1-8)

3. The Statement of Thessalonians:

- a) Removal of the restraining presence of the Holy Spirit is impossible without removing the Church at the same time. 2 Thessalonians 2:6, 7.
- b) In 2 Thessalonians 2:2 the incorrect translation in the A.V. confuses the entire passage. "Day of Christ" should read "Day of the Lord". (False teachers came with a forged letter supposedly from Paul which implied that the Day of the Lord, or the Tribulation, had already come).
- c) In 1 Thessalonians 4:16-18 the phrase "in Christ" refers to believers in the Church Age. Verse 18 emphasises a comfort which could not exist if the Church went through the Tribulation.

4. Remnant of the Tribulation:

- a) Christ returns to the earth with His saints. (1 Thessalonians 3-13, Jude 1 4).
- b) Jesus at the same time delivers saints at the Second Advent. (Zechariah 14:1-5)
- c) Christ cannot come with saints and deliver saints unless there are two groups of saints - Church and Tribulation. Obviously, both groups exist and both groups of saints are separated.

5. Grace before Judgment: God gives grace before judging.

- a) Warning - Noah was rescued by heeding God's warning.
- b) Rescue - Lot was rescued by God.

6. Imminence of the Rapture:

- a) No prophecy of Scripture has to be fulfilled before the Rapture can take place. (1 Corinthians 1:7, Colossians 3:4, 2 Thessalonians 2:1, Titus 2:13)
- b) Hence, the Rapture can take place at any time.
- c) Not so the Second Advent: much prophecy must be fulfilled before Second Advent.

7. Nature of the Tribulation:

- a) Purpose of the Tribulation: to bring judgment on a Christ-rejecting world. God demonstrates that man cannot provide a perfect environment when Satan has full control and restraining ministry of the Holy Spirit is removed.
- b) God completes His dealings with Israel, which allows the Jews to fulfil their missionary ministry begun after the Babylonian Captivity.
- c) God prepares Israel for the fulfilment of the Unconditional Covenants by the return of Christ during Israel's darkest hour and the low point of human history Tribulation).

8. Activity of the Church in Heaven (Revelation 4,5)

- a) Before the Church returns to the earth with Christ, they must appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ for evaluation of production in the Christian walk - rewards. (2 Corinthians 5:10, 1 Corinthians 3:11-15)
- b) Hence, some interval is necessary (7 years) before the Bride of the Lamb can be prepared.
- c) The marriage of the Lamb takes place in heaven. (Revelation 19:6-8) after which the Bride returns to the earth with the Groom. (Revelation 19:14). The wedding feast is held on earth. (Revelation 19:9)

**LESSON 19 – THE RETURN WITH HIS SAINTS**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
19	His Coming with His saints	Zechariah 14:1-5 Revelation 19:11-21 Revelation 20:1-15	Christ 1st and 2 <sup>nd</sup> Advents Judgment Seat of Christ Great White Throne

**INTRODUCTION**

The Second Advent is a term used for both the “coming for His saints” and “coming with His saints”. In the Old Testament we have a lot of references to the Day of the Lord. The Day of the Lord commences with the Tribulation period, ending with the coming with His saints to judge the world. It is important that one gets the vocabulary correct, the “Day of the Lord” is not a 24 hour day, it is at least seven+ years.

**INTERPRETATION**

The Lord's coming brings into focus the importance of interpretation. The way you interpret the Bible is going to determine the way that you view prophecy. If you have a literal approach to the Word of God you will have a different approach to that of a person who does not have a literal approach. A statement that is obviously meant to be figurative you take it in the normal grammatical sense, and that means you take it figuratively if that is clearly what is meant. “When the plain sense, makes common sense, then seek no other sense, lest you create nonsense”. Dr David L Cooper.

If you have a literal view you will end up with a pre Tribulational, pre Millennial view of prophecy. By taking a literal approach you are allowing the Bible to interpret itself, rather than superimposing your own concepts on it. Before you teach any prophetic book you should tell the people that you are taking a literalist view. Many ministers avoid the prophetic area because it causes too many problems, but that is because they are lazy and wont study. However if a minister teaches the Word of God thoroughly they will not have any problems that the Holy Spirit cannot resolve.

**USE OF KNOWLEDGE OF THE SECOND ADVENT**

In the news the signs of the end of our era are starting to be seen clearly. Even unbelievers can see them and are starting to speak of them. What should the believers do when they see what is happening. If you know what the Scriptures say you are not going to get upset with things falling apart.

When economically things go astray, as a believer, if you know what God's program is in advance, you can be relaxed in the middle of the pressure, simply seeking his will for your life. You are not going to be shaken as to what is going to happen. In the case of nuclear war in the Middle East (Ezekiel 38-39) you know that there is not going to be a nuclear winter, nor that the whole population of the world is going to be destroyed, for the Bible teaches that the Lord will return, and it will not be to a radioactive world spinning in a nuclear sunset.

Whilst there will be massive depopulation at the end of the Tribulation there will still be a percentage of the population living, and there will be believers in the real Lord Jesus, who will return to rescue them. This will give you a lot more comfort than the liberals will receive. If you teach it thoroughly in your church you will have a relaxed group of believers who know his Word and policy. When we see the “signs of the times” we should keep our heads down and keep working to do what the Lord requires of us before we leave this world.

The teaching of the Tribulation will be of great importance for those who are in it, as it will give them a timetable of events. The correct understanding of prophecy will make you a more active evangelist. If it does not do this, then you do not have it right. Many people will dissuade you from prophecy on the basis that people who become interested in that become unbalanced. About four percent of the New Testament contains verses about Jesus Christ coming with His saints. It is therefore very important. It is also important in regard to the Communion Service, which was instituted, "until he comes".

When will he come, how will he come? There are a number of questions that can be asked. A lot of Christians go through the rituals but do not think about their significance. When the Lord laid out the communion service He made it quite clear that He was coming again. When we take communion we are celebrating the death of the Lord, but also the future coming of the King. The liberals remember a dead martyr, we remember and anticipate a Victorious Saviour, and coming King.

The Great Tribulation is a subject very fully covered in the Old Testament, for it involves the remnant of the now believing Israel. The teaching on this time period in the Old Testament is so specific that the people of that time will be able to know the very day that the Lord will return. Matthew 24 lays out part of that timetable as well. The believers of that day will have tremendous assurance and will know when things are going to happen. This is essential because of their situation.

Biblical Prophetic truths are their survival manual and are also something to encourage us. Some people say that the Great Tribulation is "not so bad" but they betray by such a comment that they have not studied the Old Testament and New Testament passages that describe it. It is the "day of wrath", the "day of Jacob's trouble", and the "day of the Lord".

### THE DAY OF THE LORD

This is a doctrine which has been progressively revealed down the ages particularly through the Minor Prophets, Daniel through to Malachi. The key for understanding these things is however the book of Revelation, which is basically the chronological account, as it is detailed there in sequential detail.

In the majority of cases this period designated as the "Day of the Lord" covers the period from the Rapture to the Second Advent of Christ. In Zechariah 14 there is mentioned the final battles of the Armageddon Campaign which is quite a long campaign. It begins with an invasion that sweeps through Israel, with armies heading all over the place and it is clear that the Anti-Christ does not have things his way at all and of course he is defeated by the Lord in the end.

The Revived Roman Empire Force has an amphibious landing on the coast at Megiddo, which combines with the vast Eastern Army. The result is absolute devastation and a horrific campaign through Israel. In Zechariah 14 we have a sequence of events, but your system of interpretation is going to colour how you look at things.

Here it states that the Lord is going to return on the Mount of Olives which can be tied in with Acts 1 where the angels tell of the Lord's return. Prior to this there is going to be a horrific time in Jerusalem with half the city falling with many people being killed, raped, and devastation on a massive scale. A major earthquake occurs providing an escape route for the believers in the city .... There is great drama in this time, but deliverance in the end.

The book of Revelation provides the binocular viewpoint on what is happening. Revelation 19:11 shows the Lord Jesus Christ arriving on a white horse as the Word of God. The language here will tie you back to the day of the Lord. We have here the end of the tribulation period. It is the Lord who is referring to it ending it.

Daniel 2 shows the "rock" destroying the man made empires. It is extremely important to tie the whole drama of events together God's way, for the Lord will end the drama of man's rebellion. Daniel has revealed to him the chronological sequence of the great empires of man's rebellion against God as it is going to happen in the future. It is clear that this vision he has ties in with the Zechariah passage. Zechariah was the young prophet who Daniel farewell from Babylon when the Exiles returned, and he had trained him and taught him all that God had revealed to him.

The sequence of events that appears to be most accurately foretold by scripture is first the Rapture, followed by the Tribulation Period, Second Advent, Resurrection of the Old Testament Saints and Tribulational martyrs, the Millennium, the Release of Satan, the Last Rebellion, Last Judgment and then into Eternity itself.

It is important to realise that God's plan is not limited to the earth. This universe is just a bubble in eternity. The end of the present earth is not the end, but the new beginning. This world is not the last of God's creations. If you think about that, the thought will overwhelm you. Peter talks about it as elements melting with overwhelming heat. It is not possible that Satan will win, nor that the Lord will change His desire to save. **2 Peter 3:9-18.**

The whole plan is given in the Word of God. We should be excited that we are with the Creator and that we are on the winning side. We are going somewhere not because of what we have done but because of what God has revealed to us. The Plan started in eternity past and goes through to eternity future. This phase of the plan began with this heaven and earth, and will restart with a new heavens and a new earth.

The book Revelation is the key because in it we have John's chronological vision, which sets the norm for the interpretation for everything else. It will make sense to you when you have read and mastered the other 65 books first.

## DOCTRINES

### CHRIST: FIRST AND SECOND ADVENTS

1. Old Testament saints had difficulty in distinguishing between the two advents of Christ. (1 Peter 1:10,11)
2. Old Testament prophecy has Christ coming as a gentle lamb led to the slaughter. (Isaiah 53:7)
3. Old Testament prophecy has Christ coming as the conquering King and Lion of the tribe of Judah. (Isaiah 11:1-12)
4. Jesus commenced his ministry announcing the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand. (Matthew 4:17) This connects the first and second advents.
5. Old Testament Prophecy showed that the Messiah would:-
  - a) be born of a virgin. (Isaiah 7:14)
  - b) be of the tribe of Judah. (Genesis 49:10)
  - c) be of the house of David. (Isaiah 11:1, Jeremiah 33:21)
  - d) die as a sacrifice. (Isaiah 53:1-12)
  - e) be crucified. (Psalm 22:1-21)
  - f) be resurrected from the dead. (Psalm 16:8-11)
  - g) return to earth at his second advent. (Zechariah 8:3)
  - h) be seated at the right hand of God. (Psalm 110:1)
6. It should be noted that the return of Christ for the Church (the Rapture) as given in (1 Thessalonians 4:14-18) was not revealed in the Old Testament - it is a mystery doctrine of the Church (Colossians 3:4-6)
7. The day of the Second Advent is characterised by supernatural darkness
  - a) When Christ returns every eye shall see him (Matthew 24:29-30) Christ is the light of the world and he will return to a world covered in darkness (symbolic of sin).
  - b) The darkness is similar to the darkness of the day of our Lord's crucifixion which hid the Lord Jesus Christ from man's sight whilst he was bearing our sins. (Mark 15:33)
  - c) The Second Advent delivers the Jewish believers besieged in Jerusalem by the King of the North. (Daniel 11, Zechariah 12:1-3, 14:1-4)
  - d) Other passages indicating that the day of the Second Advent is a day of total darkness on the earth. (Isaiah 13:9-10, Ezekiel 32:7-8, Joel 2:10-11, Joel 3:14-15, Amos 5:18, Zechariah 14:6, Matthew 24:29-30, Luke 21:25-27, Revelation 6:12-17)
8. Heralds of the Two Advents of Christ  
A herald is a person who preceded a King in ancient times to announce his arrival. The King that we study is the Lord Jesus Christ.
  - a) First Advent
    - i) Human herald - John the Baptist (Matthew 3)
    - ii) Angelic heralds - Angels (Luke 2:1-15)
  - b) Second Advent
    - i) Human heralds - Moses, Elijah (Revelation 11)
    - ii) Angelic herald - The mighty angel (Revelation 10)

### JUDGEMENT SEAT OF CHRIST

1. There are three types of judgment for believers in the Church Age.
  - a) Judgment of Sins:- The Lord Jesus Christ on the cross substituted the payment of all man's sins. The penalty of sin is death. (Romans 6:23) There is therefore no judgment for those in Christ Jesus. (Romans 8:1). The substitutionary death is given in 2 Corinthians 5:19-21, Galatians 3:13.
  - b) Judgment of Self:- We are told that if we judge ourselves we shall not be judged. Failure to do so brings discipline. (1 Corinthians 5:1-5, 11:31, 32, 2 Corinthians 2:5-7, Hebrews 12:7, 1 John 1:9)
  - c) Judgment Seat of Christ:- This is the evaluation of the production of believers for the purpose of reward (2 Corinthians 5:10)

## EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

2. The Judgment Seat of Christ is a time of reward. Our human works (wood, hay, stubble) will be burned, our works in the power of the Spirit (gold, silver, precious stones) will be rewarded. (1 Corinthians 3:11-16).
3. At the Judgment Seat of Christ the believer can be denied reward but can never lose his salvation. (2 Timothy 2:12-13)
4. Backslidden believers have no reward at the Judgment Seat of Christ. (Hebrews 6:7-12)
5. The Judgment Seat of Christ is illustrated by the famous athletic games in the ancient world. (1 Corinthians 9:24-27)
6. Rewards at the Judgment Seat of Christ is based on grace. (James 2:12, 13)
7. Since we will be judged by Christ, we are not to judge each other (Matthew 7:1-2)

## JUDGEMENT: GREAT WHITE THRONE

1. The judgment of the Great White Throne is the last judgment. (Revelation 20:11, 15)
2. Only the unsaved are judged at the last judgment as there is no judgment for Christians. (Romans 8:1)
3. The last judgment occurs at the end of the Millennium. (Revelation 20:7-15)
4. The unsaved are judged according to their works from the Books of Works (Revelation 20:12)
5. The judgment is to show that the Human works of man cannot satisfy the justice of God. God is totally fair and shows that he is only satisfied by "The Good Work". The death of Christ on the Cross.
6. Having shown the unsaved they have failed to satisfy the holiness of God, the condemned are cast into the Lake of Fire. (Revelation 20:15)

## THE TRIBULATION OR TIME OF JACOB'S TROUBLE

General Scripture (Revelation Chapters 4-19)

1. Limits
  - (a) Start - Rapture
  - (b) Finish - 2nd Advent.
2. Length of Age - 7 years. (Daniel 9:27) This is the final section of the Jewish Age.
3. Means of Salvation - faith in Christ.
4. Scripture - completed Canon.
5. Evangelists - a special race - the Jews who have been scattered throughout the earth and speak almost every tongue - 144,000 evangelists (Revelation 7). It is noted that the tribe of Dan does not appear in this list - it was the tribe that led in idolatry.
6. Major judgments - the Tribulation is a succession of judgments culminating in the 2nd Advent.
7. At death believers - Heaven (2 Corinthians 5:8)
8. At death unbelievers - Torments, Hades.
9. Priesthood - specialised priesthood.
10. The Law - no Law (Matthew 5:17)
11. Holy Spirit - assists believers but does not indwell.
12. Environment - sinful
13. Satan - in Heaven or on earth for first 3 1/2 years, on earth only for second 3 1/2 years (Revelation 12:9)
14. Rebellion - Armageddon, one worldism politically and religiously.
15. Spirituality- resting in the promises of God.
16. Three sets of Judgments
  - (a) Seal Judgments (Revelation 6 and 8)
  - (b) Trumpet Judgments (Revelation 8)
  - (c) Bowl Judgments (Revelation 15,16)
17. The last 7 years of the Post Flood Civilisation.
18. Anti Semitism at its maximum.

## THE SECOND ADVENT

1. Israel under dispersion no longer represents Christ on this earth.
2. Israel is replaced by the Church, the Body of Christ. (Acts 2:47, 1 Corinthians 12:12-14, Ephesians 1:22, 23, 2:16, 4:4, 5, 5:23, 24, 30-32, Colossians 1:18, 24, 2:19)

3. The Body of Christ is being completed by entering every believer of the Church Age into union with Christ. (Colossians 2:10, Hebrews 2:10)
4. When the Body is completed, the Rapture of the Church occurs. (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)
5. Then the Body becomes the Bride, and is prepared for the Second Advent.
  - (a) The Bride receives a resurrection body like Christ's (1 Corinthians 15:51-57, Philippians 3:21, 1 John 3:1, 2)
  - (b) The Bride's old sin nature is removed. (Philippians 3:21)
  - (c) The Bride is cleansed from human good. (1 Corinthians 3:12-16)
6. The Bride returns in triumph with Christ at the Second Advent. (1 Thessalonians 3:13, Revelation 19:6-8)
7. Then follows the conquest-
  - (a) Satan imprisoned (Revelation 20:1-3)
  - (b) Demons removed from the earth. (Zechariah 13:2, 1 Corinthians 15:24, 25, Colossians 2:15)
8. The removal of the demons changes the environment of the earth and causes perfect conditions during the Millennium.
  - (a) Religion removed.
  - (b) False doctrine removed.
  - (c) Perfect environment restored.

## **SECTION D – PNEUMATOLOGY – THE HOLY SPIRIT**

### **LESSON 20 – THE HOLY SPIRIT – PNEUMATOLOGY**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
20	Holy Spirit Ministry – O.T.	John 14:15-17 Genesis 1:2 Genesis 6:3 2 Samuel 23:1-5 Psalm 51:1-12	Holy Spirit - Deity Holy Spirit - Old Testament Symbols of Holy Spirit

**John 14:15-17** – In this passage the Lord Jesus Christ calls the Holy Spirit “another comforter”. Here John uses the Greek word "allos" meaning another of the same kind, in contrast to "heteros", which means another of a different kind. The Lord is saying that the Spirit will be the same presence as He has been.

#### **THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD**

The deity of the Spirit is the same as the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ, and that of the Father. The word comforter is the Greek word "parakletos", which means the “one who comes alongside”. It means more than comfort, it means the person who communicates, helps, counsels, the one who lifts, the glory and the lifter of my head, as the Psalmist says, "he is the glory and the lifter of my head". **Psalm 3:3**

#### **MINISTRIES OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

The abiding of the Spirit is since the day of Pentecost forever. Abide means to stay with you until the end. This is unique to this age as it is only to the believers in the church age that Holy Spirit indwells forever. This was a big change that was not understood until after Pentecost when it became a reality. Prior to this the Holy Spirit was with believers and could be removed.

At Pentecost the Holy Spirit was no longer alongside but inside the believer. He comes permanently to indwell for the first time on that momentous day. People ask erroneously today for the Holy Spirit to fall on them. If the Holy Spirit is in you how can He fall on you? We should be concerned that we are filled with the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit fell upon them at Pentecost and indwelt them permanently. If the Spirit is not in you then you are not a believer. **Romans 8:9**.

In John 14 the Lord Jesus Christ introduces the disciples to this world changing event in verse 17 where He says that the Spirit is with you and shall be [future tense] in you. David could pray the prayer, “Lord take not thy Holy Spirit from me”, Psalm 51:11. We should not, as it not something that the Spirit does now. Rather we should aim to be filled moment by moment so that we do not quench or grieve the Holy Spirit by disobedience in our lives.

In **John 16:7-17** the Lord expands on this subject from John 14. After the Ascension, which we have recently studied, we have the Session of Christ, after which He sends the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit has a ministry for unbelievers just as



he has a ministry amongst us as believers. He is going to convict the world of sin, righteousness and judgment. The sin that the Holy Spirit convicts of is unbelief.

### **EVANGLISM**

When you are evangelizing, **Firstly** remember that the sin that is going to put the unbeliever in the Lake of Fire is unbelief, **John 16:8-11**, not those sins in their life that may be terrible, or more wrong than others to you.

**Secondly**, remember that now that Christ is not on the earth they have not got a visible standard of righteousness (other than you) so the Holy Spirit convicts the unbeliever of unrighteousness and the need of a Saviour.

**Thirdly** the Holy Spirit convicts of Judgment and giving them the fear of judgment that if they stood before Almighty God they would be condemned. When you witness to others claim these verses that they will be convicted of sin, righteousness and judgment. This is the Holy Spirit's job and such a prayer will be honoured.

The Holy Spirit is called the spirit of truth. He is the teacher and revealer of truth. He is the teacher of things that the Lord has said. The Lord said that there were many things that He wanted to tell them that the Holy Spirit would reveal to them. His job is to draw the attention of man to the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and not to Himself. He does this through the Word of which He is the author, as well as illuminating the Word.

In Church history it will be seen that it was not until the 4th century at the Council of Nicaea that the character of the Holy Spirit was discussed fully and explained. In the early Church they did not stress the Holy Spirit at all for his work was so obvious they never needed to discuss his identity and define his nature theologically – they were too busy being filled with the Holy Spirit. It is important however that you understand as well as walk in His person and His work. The Spirit is what we would call humble, and is standing back and ministering to and of the Lord Jesus Christ.

### **HOLY SPIRIT AND PRAYER**

We do not pray to the Holy Spirit. We should pray to the Father, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. We talk to God the Father through the Son, and in the power of the Holy Spirit. We get into fellowship by confessing any sins in our lives. The Holy Spirit then fills us and guides our prayers and life.

In the ancient world the early Christian's prayers always started, "Heavenly Father I have sinned". We do well to follow our spiritual father's example. With sin out of the way we are restored to a full functional relationship with the Father through the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit. We should be thanking the Lord for all that the Holy Spirit is showing us.

There is equality in the Godhead, the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. 2 Corinthians 13:14. The Holy Spirit is the one who puts His arm around you and carries you through. He is the ever present contact with the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. It is the Spirit which draws us near. Matthew 28:18-20 gives us the great commission and is again a Trinity text.

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT IS A PERSON**

The passages above show He is a person and not a force. Even believers talk about God the Holy Spirit as an influence and do not recognize Him as a person. Rejection of the Holy Spirit as a person often is replaced with the concept that He is the personification of the power for good whilst Satan is the personification of evil. This denial has occurred throughout Church History. It is false and a dangerous error which Satan is using today with the rebirth of paganism in many places.

It is important to realise that He is a person and worthy to receive love and honour and that you are not robbing the Holy Spirit of your love and adoration. He is a person who is infinitely divine, holy, loving, and wishes to get hold of us so that He can use us for the glory of the Lord Jesus.

If however you think of the Spirit as a power you may well consider that it is a power which you want to get hold of to use. This is the difference between those who are in the extreme Pentecostal area and evangelicals. The Biblical view is not that the Spirit is a power for us to use, the truth is the opposite; the Spirit being a person wants to get hold of your life and give power into your life. The issue comes down to worship. We do not ask the Holy Spirit to fall on us like pennies from heaven, but we do want the Holy Spirit to control us and to work within us. The only falling that should take place is falling on our knees in prayer. The concept that is being taught in the letters of the New Testament is walking in the Spirit and being led by Him.

If we understand Him as a person, then do we treat Him as a person? Do we know the communion and fellowship of the Holy Spirit as the disciples knew the fellowship of the Lord Jesus Christ whilst on earth? We should have a minute by minute walk with the Holy Spirit just as the disciples had a minute by minute walk with the Lord. We are not called to drama, but moment by moment fellowship and obedience to the leading of the Holy Spirit.

He came that we might have fellowship with Him. This is the answer to the many problems believers have with the gifts of the Holy Spirit. The issue is not seeking after dramatic signs and wonders; the issue is whether you are experiencing a

moment by moment communion of the Holy Spirit and accepting what he has for you, not making demands of him. There will be godly fruit of such a life. Galatians 5:14-26. The extreme Pentecostals may be rebuked by you in this way, and hopefully they will seek the walk with God that you show! We are called to be light. Some have moments of grandeur in which they may or may not be spiritual, but we are to show the moment by moment holy fellowship with the Lord through the indwelling Spirit. Fruit of the Spirit, not entertaining drama is the sign of the Holy Spirit's presence.

The doctrine of the person of the Lord Jesus Christ is of great importance in the Church. It is going to set the tone of worship, service, and spiritual, and even mental health in the church. The Holy Spirit produces stability. James 1:2-8.

It is a very important doctrine. Many conservative churches have suffered because of a lack of teaching in this area and people have then gone to extreme Pentecostal churches where they all too often get led astray on the role of the Holy Spirit. Many people in the extreme Pentecostal churches are physically and mentally worn out by chasing spiritual manifestations. They have spoken in tongues, seen miracles and healing, and yet they are depressed, still waiting for the Spirit to fall, or in their passionate enthusiasm they have gone into immorality.

These spiritually needy believers need to know the quiet comforter in their spirit in daily fellowship with the Holy Spirit, rather than the all too often fake drama of churches that chase experiences rather than holy service and focused worship. Those who are godly are seeking bible teaching churches where the truth of walking in the Spirit is fully and accurately taught. We must be light to those who stumble in darkness in this area. Galatians 6:1.

Note - In the Greek the word "spirit" is in the neuter, but by being in the neuter it does not mean that the object is an "it". Whenever the Holy Spirit is talked about there is a personal pronoun used. It is of interest that the word for child *brephos* is also in the neuter but is obviously not a thing. The other words for a young child, *teknon* and *paidion* are also in the neuter.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **HOLY SPIRIT: DEITY**

1. The Holy Spirit is God, the third member of the Trinity.
2. The Holy Spirit is Jehovah God (Isaiah 6:8, 9, Acts 28:25, Jeremiah 31:31-35, cf Hebrews 10:15).
3. He has the characteristics of God:
  - a) sovereignty 1 Corinthians 12:11
  - b) all knowing (1 Corinthians 2:10, 11)
  - c) all powerful (Genesis 1:2)
  - d) everywhere (Psalm 139:7)

### **HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

1. In the Old Testament, the Holy Spirit did not indwell all believers, since Christ was not yet glorified (John 7:39). Instead, He only came upon some Old Testament saints to perform special functions.
  - a) JOSEPH, a believer who was a prime minister. (Genesis 41:38)
  - b) Believers who were artisans occupied in the construction of the Tabernacle. (Exodus 28:3, 31:3)
  - c) Believers involved in administration. (Numbers 11:17, 25)
  - d) A believer who was both a political and military leader - JOSHUA (Numbers 27:18)
  - e) Certain Judges: OTHNIEL (Judges 3:9, 10) GIDEON (Judges 6:34) JEPHTHAH (Judges 11:29) SAMSON (Judges 13:24, 25, 14:5-6, 15:14)
  - f) Kings of Israel (1 Samuel 10:9, 10, 16:13)
  - g) DANIEL (Daniel 4:8, 5:11, 6:3)
  - h) Post exilic rulers (Zechariah 4:3, 12-14)
2. Believers in Israel could be disciplined by the removal of the Spirit:
  - a) SAUL (1 Samuel 16:14)
  - b) DAVID (Psalm 51:11)
3. A believer could obtain the Holy Spirit by request, but not as an indwelling presence. (2 Kings 2:9, 10, Luke 11:13)
4. Jesus gave the Holy Spirit without request to the disciples just before the ascension. Purpose: To sustain them for the ten day interim before the Church Age would begin. (John 20:22)

### **HOLY SPIRIT: SYMBOLS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

There are a number of symbols for the Holy Spirit in the Bible.

1. Dove. (Matthew 3:16)
2. Oil. (Exodus 35:28)
3. Water. (John 7:38-39)
4. Wind. (Acts 2:2)
5. Fire. (Acts 2:3)
6. Seal. (Ephesians 1:13, 4:30)
7. Pledge. (Ephesians 1:14)

**LESSON 21 – TRANSITIONAL MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
21	Holy Spirit Ministry – Transitional	John 16:8-11 Luke 1:12-17 Luke 2:25 -26 Luke 11:9-13 Matthew 12:22-37 Mark 3:22-30	Holy Spirit Ministry to Jesus Holy Spirit – Sins against

**INTRODUCTION**

This period occurred between the ministry of John the Baptist, the last of the Old Testament prophets, and the Day of Pentecost. This is a time of great spiritual change during which the Lord prepared the people for the changes that were coming. We now have a position in Christ with the indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit and we are in a highly superior position compared with the Old Testament saints. Most Christians do not understand what they have today, and how superior it is to earlier historical time periods. Satan was not ready for this to occur, and was caught by surprise, but sadly too many believers do not walk as they should in light of the changes the Lord's completed ministry brought in.

Three stages in the expanding ministry of the Holy Spirit are given in the Gospels.

**Stage 1 - Luke 11:9-13** - where the Lord tells the disciples to ask for the Holy Spirit, which was something that had not occurred in the Old Testament. This was just after the commissioning of the twelve in verse 8. As the people went out round the nation to preach, to heal, to raise the dead and cast out demons, a dramatic and taxing spiritual service, they came back knowing that they needed more power to do the work. This gave Jesus the opportunity to teach the principle of empowerment by the Holy Spirit.

They realise that there are major enemies to be fought and inner resources greater than man can supply is needed. He therefore says ask for the Holy Spirit. It is of interest that none of the gospels divulge whether any of the disciples took up the offer. It was so novel that they were all a bit hesitant about doing it.

**Stage 2 - John 14:16-17** - where He explained that the Holy Spirit would be **in them** rather than **with** them. This is about a year later than the passage in Luke. They realise that the Spirit is with them and that they need more and the Lord says that there will be more. He explains that on the day of Pentecost the Father will send the Holy Spirit and that they will not be left comfortless.

What is seen here is that the resources to face the enemy after the Cross/Resurrection will need to be better than it was at the earlier time, and the Lord is going to upgrade it by sending the Spirit to indwell. Rather than being with them on a temporary basis, there is then going to be a permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

**Stage 3 - John 20:21-22** - where the Lord gave them a temporary infilling of the Holy Spirit to assist them until Pentecost (temporary – as Pentecost is the permanent). It is clear that the Lord is tasking the disciples with replacing Him, as his witness in the world; a task we now have. This is shown clearly in Matthew 28:20 which is the great commission. As it is given both here and in Matthew 28 it is of great importance.

The Lord says that he is sending them out but not in their own strength but in the power of the Holy Spirit. This temporary gifting of the Spirit is going to last them for the ten days until the full giving of the Holy Spirit at the feast of Pentecost.

First He says, ask, next that he will pray, and thirdly He breathes on them to give them a temporary empowerment.

**Luke 24:49** - this is a few days after John 20. It is clear that what was happening in John 20 was temporary until the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

**Acts 1:4-8** - Luke is the author of Acts and thus the book of Acts follows. As the Cross/Resurrection is the centre point of human history so Pentecost is the start of this new period of human history. The expanded ministries of the Holy Spirit since Pentecost are very important, and are intricately related to the angelic conflict as it ups its tempo once Satan is defeated at the Cross and Resurrection. He now knows he is defeated, and his hatred has gone up a notch = we need every additional ministry of the Spirit that is provided to stand and serve in our Age.

### **THE CHURCH AGE - INTENSIFICATION OF THE ANGELIC CONFLICT**

The activity of Satan and his angels since the Cross/Resurrection has been greatly intensified over what it was before. The Cross/Resurrection is the defeat of Satan strategically. He is no longer "prince of this world", he is the defeated pretending prince – but we are Kings and Queens in Christ. **1 Peter 2:9-10**. A strategic defeat means that the enemy is beaten but he is not finished. The big battle has been won but there are a lot of little campaigns to be won before he is finally eliminated completely. His hatred of us is great, as we share in Christ's victory and he cannot stand it!

Satan knew from his total defeat at the Cross that he was finished, and it was from that time that he went into top gear with evil. If the Christian does not understand the absolute necessity of living and walking in the Spirit they are in trouble, as they will not have the resources to deal with Satan. In many ways the Old Testament saints had it easier than we do but we have more resources. It is therefore important that we know about them and use them.

Many believers fail because they do not walk in close fellowship with the Spirit, nor open their instruction manual the Bible. The normal Christian life should be one lived in the power of the Holy Spirit, and with an open heart to biblical truth. People that fail do so for one reason only, sin that leads them away from the control of the Holy Spirit. As a believer we must learn to live and walk in the filling of the Holy Spirit, hearing, believing and obeying.

Fundamentalists are afraid that if they teach about the Holy Spirit their people will become extreme Pentecostals. However if you do not teach it they will be lacking in spiritual power. By teaching this fully you can also help Pentecostals out of their problems into true spiritual power and genuine service also. You have nothing to fear if you teach this subject honestly. The Pentecostal church down the road probably teaches this subject inaccurately and you can assist them.

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT'S MINISTRY IN THE LIFE OF OUR LORD**

The Lord said that the believers would produce greater works than He did. What does this strange verse mean? This is based on the fact that whilst the Lord had a ministry of some three years, which was totally sustained by the Holy Spirit, believers today may have 30+ years to reach the lost.

The problem for us is that we don't use our time for ministry of which only 15% may be under the power of the Spirit. Any work done in the power of the Holy Spirit is first class work and copies the Lord Jesus Christ. Your greatest mission as a minister is to get your people out of the pews and into the street in the filling of the Holy Spirit. The difficulty is going to be with people who do not want to study and be obedient to God's Word, or are just lazy.

The sustaining work of the Holy Spirit was deliberately misconstrued by the Pharisees who said that Jesus was demon possessed and using the powers of Satan. This was the unpardonable sin in that day.

### **THE UNPARDONABLE SIN**

Pentecostals will often accuse fundamentalists of Blaspheming the Holy Ghost when they criticise the Pentecostals service format - this is a misuse of Scripture. Beware such argument, for you often find that those who cry loudest about the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit are often quenching or grieving the Spirit in their own life.

The unpardonable sin in Jesus day was to accuse him of being satanic and so reject him as saviour. He is not physically present today to do such a thing personally, but the unpardonable sin remains as total rejection of him as saviour. No believer can commit that sin, as they have accepted him as saviour. The most serious sin in the believer's life today is the quenching, grieving and resisting the Holy Spirit. A believer cannot commit the unforgivable sin. We are to live the Holy life, resisting sin.

**THE DAY OF PENTECOST**

In **Acts 1:8-14** they were to be baptized (identified) in the Spirit “not many days hence”. They were promised power after that the Holy Spirit came upon them. They were waiting for the Spirit to come upon them from the time of John 14 and Luke 24:49; waiting for Him to empower them for the rest of their ministry on the earth.

In Acts chapter 2 we have a record of the event. The Spirit came upon them, that is they were permanently indwelt as a group for the first time in this period. **Acts 2:1-4**. A new age is born that day and we live in it!

These people as a result go out and preach the gospel in many languages which were understood by people present that day, and many people were converted as result of hearing the gospel in a non Jewish language. In verse 4 they are filled with the Holy Spirit and from verse 5 onwards it shows what happened.

The baptism of the Holy Spirit occurred at this time uniting the Christians with the Lord Jesus Christ. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at one point in time, namely the point of salvation when we are united with Christ. The rest of the New Testament deals with the effect of what happened from this time, the birth of the Church.

We are also filled with the Holy Spirit at salvation and it is something that we lose when we sin. We are still indwelt but our Old Sin Nature (OSN) is in control. Whether you are working for the Lord for not depends whether you are in fellowship with Him or not, and that question is identical to your openness to the work of the Holy Spirit within you.

If we are going to live for Christ we have to do it in the power of the Spirit, if you are not filled you will fail.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY TO JESUS CHRIST**

1. The ministry of the Spirit in sustaining Jesus Christ was prophesied in the Old Testament. (Isaiah 11:1-3, 42:1, 61:1-3)
2. The virgin birth was only possible by the work of the Holy Spirit. Matthew 1: 18, 20, Psalm 40:6, Hebrews 10:5.
3. The Holy Spirit was given without measure (constant unhindered filling) to the humanity of Christ. (John 3:34)
4. The Holy Spirit was related to the baptism of Jesus. (Matthew 3:16)
5. The Holy Spirit sustained Jesus Christ during his earthly ministry. (Matthew 12:18, 28, Luke 4:14,15,18)
6. The Lord acknowledged the work of the Spirit in his works and miracles. Matthew 12:8 (Quoting Isaiah 44:1), 18, 28, Luke 4:14-21.
7. The sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit was withdrawn from the Lord when he bore our sins on the cross. Matthew 27:46, Psalms 22.
8. The Holy Spirit had a part in the resurrection of Jesus Christ. (Romans 8:11, 1 Peter 3:18)
9. The present ministry of the Holy Spirit to Jesus Christ (John 7:39, 16:14)
10. The same sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit is passed on to us at salvation, and we are commanded to make use of this ministry to grow thereby. Galatians 4:19, 5:16, Ephesians 3:16, 17, 5:18, Romans 13:14.

**HOLY SPIRIT: SINS AGAINST THE SPIRIT**

1. **RESISTING THE HOLY SPIRIT** (Unbelievers only) (Acts 7:51, John 16:8-11) This is hardening to the convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit.
2. **BLASPHEMY AGAINST THE HOLY SPIRIT** (Unbelievers only) (Matthew 12:31) The purpose of the Holy Spirit was to reveal the person of Jesus Christ. The Pharisees rejected this by claiming He was demon possessed.
3. **LYING TO THE HOLY SPIRIT** (Believers only) (Acts 5:1-3) A sin of false motivation. - Ananias and Sapphira.
4. **GRIEVING THE HOLY SPIRIT** (Believers only) (Ephesians 4:30) Any sin which the believer commits.
5. **QUENCHING THE HOLY SPIRIT** (Believers only) (1 Thessalonians 5:19) A believer who is not allowing the Holy Spirit to exert His full influence.
6. **UNPARDONABLE SIN** (Matthew 12:22-32)

- a) Rejection of Jesus Christ as God and Saviour is the only sin which cannot be forgiven. Revelation 20:10-15. This unbelief is shown in Matthew 12:24, denying the person and power of Jesus.
- b) It is impossible for a believer to commit the unpardonable sin. (Isaiah 1:18, Isaiah 44:22, 1 John 1:7)

**Notes**

**LESSON 22 – HOLY SPIRIT MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
22	Holy Spirit Ministry – NT	John 14:16-17 John 20:22 Luke 24:49 Acts 1:1-9, 2:1-4	H S - New Testament

**HOLY SPIRIT IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

We see a change in the work of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament compared with the work in the Church Age and in the transition period with the Ministry of the Holy Spirit during the period of Christ's Ministry.

As the Cross/Empty Tomb is the focal point in the "unfolding drama of redemption", so Pentecost is the turning point in the ministry of the Holy Spirit in the lives of believers.

The Four Gospels really belong in the period of history still covered by the rules of the Old Testament or the Dispensation of the Jews rather than those of the New Testament, or Dispensation of the Church. The exception is the Olivet Discourse, where Jesus speaks prophetically of the age that is coming at Pentecost.

In the Gospels the Lord Jesus Christ is teaching the disciples to become apostles, or sent ones not only to Israel but also to the whole world. This ministry of the Holy Spirit which we now enjoy they longed to enjoy, but had to wait until Pentecost for the door to fully open. We have a superior spiritual position after Pentecost than Isaiah and Jeremiah did.

So many people fail to live up to the tremendous position they have in Christ, the Old Testament saints longed to have the permanent indwelling of the Spirit, but we are often not using our great spiritual assets. The thought of this great privilege should purify us, and make us keen for service, as we are sealed, guided, empowered, indwelt and baptised. The three years before Pentecost, during the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ was a time of transition.

Looking back over 60 years, John sees that the change commences in **John 14:16-17**. Before Pentecost the Holy Spirit assisted believers often for a limited time to have a special function in the plan of God, since Pentecost the believer is indwelt forever; He is not with us but in us. How you view this will determine how you view spirituality and the Bible.

It has to be remembered that a lot of things which are said prior to Pentecost are going to be different once Pentecost has occurred. Once the Cross and Resurrection had occurred believers no longer had to bring lambs to be a physical sacrifice. Nowadays we obey Scripture by confessing our sins to God, not by killing animals and shedding blood.

As a Christian you do not go to Leviticus to find out what you do about sin, but this does not mean that you do not read Leviticus as a book that introduces you to the death of the Lord Jesus Christ on the Cross. In Leviticus now we discover wonderful things about the Lord and his sacrifice; about what they mean. We do not however go there to find out what we are to do about sin today

Similarly the ministry of the Spirit as seen prior to the Cross is not relevant to us today due to the change that took place at Pentecost. If you are going to live as a Christian should do now you must take into account the Cross, Resurrection, Ascension, Cession, and Day of Pentecost.

We have a superior position than believers before the completion of Jesus ministry on earth, in that we have a position "in Christ", sharing His victories, and the Holy Spirit **is in us**. We are in a position where we can spiritually really advance in service, but we often do not do so, because we do not know what the Bible is teaching, we do not believe it, or apply it into our lives.

This topic is vital in our lives especially with some in the modern Pentecostal movement who link up the Old and New Testament and get the application wrong. It is therefore essential that you teach the true and complete doctrine of the Holy Spirit to people so that they do not get confused. We should therefore understand our place in the plan of God. We are members of the Body of Christ and the Bride of Christ. We must live as the body and the bride. The central point of this is the ministry of the Holy Spirit as it is since Pentecost, not as it was beforehand.

We need to look again at the ministry of the Spirit in the three stages in which it unfolds:-

- [a] The ministry of the Holy Spirit in Old Testament times,
- [b] The transition ministry during the Lord's earthly ministry,
- [c] The ministry of the Holy Spirit during the Church Age.

In **Genesis 1:2** the Holy Spirit is said to flutter, like a hen fluttering its feathers over its nest over the face of the waters. It is clear from Scripture that the Lord Jesus Christ is the Creator. So why is the Holy Spirit fluttering over the waters? In **Deuteronomy 32:11** we see the co-operative work of the Spirit in relation to the Lord Jesus Christ in Creation. The Spirit is involved in creation with the Lord Jesus Christ.

He is also involved in revelation **2 Peter 1:21**, **2 Samuel 23:2**, **Micah 3:8**. In each case the Holy Spirit is involved with speaking, or the writing of the Word of God.

Prior to Pentecost the Holy Spirit still convicted people of the need to trust in the Lord Jesus Christ, but as He was revealed at that time – namely through the sacrificial system. This is seen in **Genesis 6:3** where before the flood the Spirit had a ministry which was being ignored. The Lord showed that there was a limit to what the Lord was willing to do. The Lord said that the Holy Spirit would not always strive with man. This verse says that they have got 120 years, but of course we have not often got that time now. Progressively the life span was cut. Genesis 6:3 dealt with a time when some people were living to 900 years of age.

The Spirit strives with all people so that they know they need to find God because once each person is dead it is too late. The word "strive" means to judge or convict. Today we have on average 70 years to respond to the gospel message.

We have not only the evidence that the blood of Christ covers all potentially but that the Spirit strives with all. With the exception of the eight who were saved at the time of the flood the Holy Spirit strived with perhaps hundreds of thousands of people for 120 years yet the rest rejected Him.

This convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit continues in a more detailed way in **John 16:8-15**. Another area in which the Holy Spirit has been universally involved in over man's history is regeneration. The Holy Spirit is the agent of regeneration.

In **Psalms 51:11-12** David speaks of his experience of walking with and failing to walk with the Holy Spirit. It deals with the time of David's terrible sin of adultery with Bathsheba, followed by the arranging of the murder of her husband, Uriah the Hittite. David was under great conviction and realised that he was under conviction by the Spirit and that it had a terrible influence on the Spirit in his life.

In this Psalm and **Psalms 103:8-16** we have the Old Testament form of **1 John 1:9**. Here he pleads the loving kindness and tender mercies of God, having dealt with his sin. He notes passionately, "I acknowledge my sin, my transgression is forever before me". In verses 10-12 of Psalm 51 David asks the Lord to create in him a new heart. All he has now is conviction and pressure, but in Psalm 103 he gets forgiveness, assurance, grace and mercy.

In verse 11 of Psalm 51 he asks for God not to take the Holy Spirit from him. This was a bona fide request for David but not for us today. After this time David went on to write more of the Psalms and was therefore controlled by the Spirit again. If we sin in the Church Age we are not in danger of the Holy Spirit being taken from us, for He is in you permanently, but we can grieve and quench the spirit's presence and power.

However if you have sin in your life He cannot strengthen, encourage or teach you even though He still indwells, but can only convict you of your sin. David however could lose the Holy Spirit, and did for a time.

**The extent of the work of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament.**

Three important areas: -

He was **indwelling** certain believers: Joseph: Genesis 41:38, Joshua :Numbers 27:18, Daniel in Daniel 4:8, 5:11-14,

He **came upon** some: Numbers 24:2, Judges 3:10, 11:29, 1 Samuel 10:10, 2 Chronicles 15:1

He **filled** Bezaleel: Exodus 31:3, 35:31

**Not all the believers** in the Old Testament experienced the ministries of the Holy Spirit beyond that of regeneration.

After regeneration the normal Old Testament believer understood the Word of God and applied it to their lives. In addition they tried to keep the Mosaic Law, and of course failed many times. When sin occurred they brought animal sacrifices, and then through each year they kept the feasts and festivals as a testimony that they believed the plan of God for history. In the New Testament we are saved by the same means (God's grace provision and faith), but we do not bring an offering, rather we accept the death of Christ on the Cross, confess sin, and grow by walking in the Spirit. The Old Testament believers were not asked to walk in the Spirit. **Ephesians 5:18, 1 Peter 1:10-13.**

In the New Testament we are saved by the same means, by grace through faith, but we do not bring an blood offering, but simply accept the death of Christ on the Cross for us, and grow by walking in the Spirit. The Old Testament believers were not asked to regularly walk in the Spirit. As shown above some people were given a special unction or anointing of the Holy Spirit that came upon them to function in a special way. When that job was over the Spirit was taken from them, and they simply waited for Messiah to come. Many today say that they would like to go back to the simplicity of the Mosaic Law, but we are in so much a superior position as to make such a thought quite inappropriate. From this it is clear why the apostles said that the Old Testament prophets longed to see this day. Are you walking in the Spirit and aware of His ministry in your life on a daily basis?

A thorough study of these doctrines gives us good information for those who are involved in the modern holiness movements to help them and empower them in truth about the Holy Spirit's ministry. You are too busy being led, taught, encouraged, corrected, convicted, and strengthened by the Holy Spirit to worry about erroneous manifestations. In the Old Testament there were no Baptism, Indwelling, or Sealing ministries of the Spirit.

The only person we know was assisted by the Holy Spirit for his whole life was John the Baptist who the Scriptures tell us was assisted from out of "ek" his mother's womb.

It is reasonable to assume that from Pentecost onwards there would be a greater working of the Holy Spirit than in previous ages and that is what we see through Church History.

Two examples of people at the time of Christ who were assisted by the Holy Spirit - Zacharias - Luke 1:11 ff., Simeon the priest Luke 2:25 who waited his whole life to see the Messiah and to give a single prophecy which is recorded in Scripture and which was a source of great blessing as Mary remembered it. Simeon's whole life culminated in this event for which he had the assistance of the Spirit.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT**

1. TO THE UNBELIEVER

a) RESTRAINING (2 Thessalonians 2:7)

If unbelievers were unrestrained in the Church Age the one world system which Satan is trying to establish would come. After the rapture of the Church it will come.

b) CONVICTING (John 16:7-11)

i) Sin - the barrier which remains in unbelief.

ii) Righteousness - God is totally righteous, man is only relatively righteous and needs God's righteousness for salvation.

iii) Judgment - Satan and all unbelievers are judged.

c) REGENERATION (John 3:5)

Man without the spirit cannot understand spiritual things. The Gospel is spiritual, the Holy Spirit makes the gospel a reality to the unbeliever when one believes and is "born again" or regenerated. (1 Corinthians 2:14)

2. TO THE BELIEVER AT SALVATION

a) Regeneration (John 3:1-16, Titus 3:5)



- b) Baptism (Acts 1:5, 1 Corinthians 12:13, Ephesians 4:5) We are baptized into union with Jesus Christ and become part of the body of Christ. This is not to be confused with the Filling of the Holy Spirit.
- c) Indwelling (Romans 8:9, 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20) From salvation on the believer is indwelt by the Spirit.
- d) Sealing (2 Corinthians 1:22, Ephesians 1:13, 4:30). This ministry relates to your future with God, the guarantee of eternal security.
- e) Distribution of spiritual gifts (1 Corinthians 12:11) Each believer receives a spiritual gift at the point of salvation in order to function in the body of Christ.

**3. TO THE BELIEVER AFTER SALVATION (Spirituality)**

The Ministry of the Holy Spirit after salvation is the means by which we live the Christian life ordained by God (Ephesians 2:10, 5:18)

- a) The Filling of the Holy Spirit (spirituality through confession of sin and surrender of the life). (1 John 1:9 Ephesians 5:18)
- b) The character of Jesus Christ is produced by the believer when he is filled with the Spirit. (Galatians 4:19, 5:22, 23)
- c) Glorification of Christ (John 7:39, 16:14, 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20)
- d) Fulfilment of the Law. (Romans 8:2-4)

**LESSON 23 – HOLY SPIRIT – REGENERATION**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
23	H.S. Ministry – Regeneration	John 3:3-8 Titus 3:5 Ephesians 5:25-26 John 6:63, 3:13-36 John 6:40-48 Ephesians 4:20-24 Colossians 3:10	Regeneration

**INTRODUCTION**

This is the work of the Holy Spirit which changes us from unbelievers to believers and therefore sons/daughters of God. This creates a mockery among those who do not believe that they need a Saviour. The unbeliever has to realise that only God can provide the power and the will to come to newness of life.

**Regeneration**

In **John 3:3-9** we see that regeneration means to be born again. The Holy Spirit is the agent of regeneration. We note that there are two ministries of the Holy Spirit, the convicting ministry and the enabling ministry. This is why the man who rejects the gospel is without hope at the Day of Judgment. That person has also rejected and spurned the work of the Holy Spirit.

He/she has three things against him, he has ignored the Word of God, they have ignored the testimony of creation, (the plan of God which is clearly working out), and they have ignored the command to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and be saved. They have been actively rejecting God in all three persons.

**Ministry of the Holy Spirit**

**Romans 1:16-32** - having cast aside the ministry of Christ in their life the rejection shows that there is no hope. Another passage which reflects this ministry is 2 Corinthians 3:6. "The letter killeth but the Spirit giveth life".

Ensure you take the evaluation in context. He does not mean that an evaluation of the Scriptures kills and the Spirit gives life. The contrast is between the written word in ink and the word written on the heart. It is the Holy Spirit who brings the letter to life.

The Word of God justly brings judgment but the Spirit gives life to those who accept rebirth. No amount of preaching irrespective of how orthodox it is will regenerate unless the Holy Spirit works. It is He and He alone that makes each obedient person a new creature in Christ Jesus.

Regeneration is the giving of a new nature, the nature of God. 2 Peter 1:4. It is the Holy Spirit who imparts this to us, makes us partakers of the divine nature. It is done through the Word. To put it in a word: The human heart is the soil, the preacher or teacher is the sower, the word of God is the seed, the Spirit of God quickens the seed, and the Divine nature is the result.

Not by works done in righteousness by ourselves but by his mercy we are saved. We can do no work of righteousness ourselves, nothing an unbeliever can do can satisfy God. Their human righteousness is as filthy rags in His sight.

**Analogy of Washing**

Both Paul and John used the same analogy of washing. The picture of cleansing and water comes through. Beware of people who try to twist this into Baptismal regeneration, that you are saved by total immersion. Baptismal regeneration is not taught here. There are no sins washed away when you are baptized. It is a sign of something that has already happened to you. It is a picture or memorial. Paul continues with this concept in **Titus 3:5, Ephesians 5:25-27, John 6:63**.

These passages need to be tied together in your mind. The connection of water and regeneration is given in **1 John 5:5-6**. Here the water is the Word of God and the spirit is the Holy Spirit. The work of regeneration involves the Word of God and the Holy Spirit. The two come together in a unique way in the life of the believer if they accept the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour.

Regeneration takes place when the Spirit takes the Word and enlivens it in their life by grace into a relationship of son or daughter of God.

We are in error if we equate the filling with the baptism of the Spirit. It is clear from Scripture that the baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at the point of salvation whilst the filling of the Holy Spirit occurs at all times when there is no unconfessed sin in your life and the Spirit has free reign within you. This confusion also occurs in the writings of many otherwise good bible teachers that allows for the infiltration of the extremist viewpoints that can bring in emotionally based sinful behaviours. We are called to godliness and that comes from Bible saturated, Holy Spirit taught believers, not enthusiastic chorus singers. We have been indwelt at salvation, but the daily call is to be holy, confess sin, and thereby be moment by moment filled and empowered by the Holy Spirit.

**Confession**

The Scripture commands you to be filled with the Holy Spirit. **Ephesians 5:18**. As a believer you have been indwelt, but the question is will you quench/grieve the Holy Spirit today, or will you be obedient, deal with any sin that has separated you from fellowship and be filled with the Holy Spirit's power to live to the glory of the Lord Jesus Christ? Whether you are filled with the Holy Spirit is up to you. The Holy Spirit is in you as a believer, He needs to be let loose in your life each and every day – this is "Filling". This is accomplished by confession of sins as per **1 John 1:9**.

Most of the questions you will be asked in the ministry are to do with the people not knowing the meaning of the words they use such as regeneration, expiation, propitiation and the like. Any question you are asked in this area please ensure what the questioner means first! You should ask them what they mean by any term they use, to ensure that they are aware of its true doctrinal meaning, and that they are correct.

It is clear that our relationship with God is spiritual and can only be attained through rebirth, and then the Holy Spirit's agency moment by moment. **Romans 8:26**. We receive a new nature, we have been reborn, we are re-created, we are resurrected; there are many implications to the act of regeneration.

Through our relationship with the Saviour we now have relationship with God; we are born again and will live eternally with the Lord. Our body however will fall apart, but praise God, we have a resurrection body. We are regenerated for eternity. We should always give praise for the work of the Holy Spirit for it lasts forever. The challenge is to allow the Holy Spirit to "FILL" us daily. Note that it is a command in Ephesians 5:18, so it is wrong to say, "Holy Spirit Come!" It is a command – that means you do something, you don't ask the Spirit to do anything! You do what you are told and HE will always fill you! What do you do? Confess anything that has brought a shadow between you and the Lord Jesus, and the Spirit will empower and the Lord Jesus will restore full fellowship. **Revelation 3:15-22**.

**Our New Nature**

We have a new nature in Christ Jesus, which has the ability to worship, obey and serve God in the Holy Spirit's power. We can in Holy Spirit power produce righteousness and true holiness. We have taken off the old and put on the new. We are new creatures in Christ. We are challenged every day to live worthy of the gift that we have been given, the gift of eternal life. We are told to deal with the up-swelling evils of the OSN and confess and forsake them.

If we recognize that everything we have as a believer is something we have received from God, we can pray that the Lord will help us to live worthy of the so great salvation. He answers this prayer through the ministries of the Holy Spirit. If a person gave you everything you could not repay him. We have been given everything in Christ Jesus. Do we see our

position in Christ in the way the Scriptures say it is and will be forever? Powerful Worship and Holy Spirit empowered Service flow from understanding these things and acting upon them.

**DOCTRINES**

**REGENERATION: BORN AGAIN**

1. General Scripture - (John 3:5-8) 'Ye must be born again [born from above] (v7). You are born of the Spirit. (v8) We then become new creatures in Christ.
2. Natural man cannot understand spiritual phenomenon (1 Corinthians 2:14). He lacks the ability to enter the Kingdom of God. (John 3:5). They are unable to please God. (Romans 8:7, 8)
3. New birth is a creation of the Holy Spirit. (John 1:12, 2 Corinthians 5:17, Ephesians 2:10, 4:24). Through the Holy Spirit we become aware that we are joint heirs with Christ. (Romans 8:16, 17)
4. The requirement for the new birth is belief on Christ, that He is crucified and risen. (John 1:12, 3:16-18,36). New birth occurs at the instant of belief.
5. Through new birth (Regeneration) the believer lives in Christ, and Christ in the believer. (Galatians 2:20, Ephesians 2:10, 4:24, 1 Peter 1:23-25, 1 John 5:10-12).
6. Once you are born you cannot be unborn.

**LESSON 24 – HOLY SPIRIT – INDWELLING AND SEALING**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
24	H.S Indwelling and Sealing	Romans 8:9-11 1 Corinthians 6:19-20 2 Corinthians 5:5 Ephesians 1:13, 14 Ephesians 4:30	Indwelling of Christ Seal

**INTRODUCTION**

There are a number of ministries of the Holy Spirit which occur at the point of salvation, and a number afterwards. Two that occur at the point of salvation are the indwelling and sealing of the Holy Spirit. The first time this occurred was at Pentecost. John 14:16,17. At Pentecost uniquely the ministries of the Holy Spirit for the Church Age period of world history were set up; including sealing, baptizing, the giving of gifts, indwelling and regenerating. This occurred uniquely on Pentecost Day within people who had been believers for a number of years and therefore mixing their maturity with these quite new "Church Age" phenomena the effect was dramatic.

This combination of maturity and the gifts of the Holy Spirit does not occur now, as these are given at the point of salvation when no spiritual growth has occurred. Nowadays until a person has grown they do not realise what gift(s) they have been given by the Holy Spirit. On the Day of Pentecost mature believers received the gifts, but they already knew their tasks and roles, and they had the words of Jesus all well known within their hearts and minds.

This is further evidenced by the fact that the apostle Paul warned against letting a new believer minister. It is for our period of world history very important to distinguish between the baptism, filling, and sealing of the Holy Spirit.

We will differ with good women/men on this, and we challenge all students to study carefully all the scriptures before "jumping to conclusions". Both R A Torrey and Martin Lloyd Jones combine, and therefore we believe, confuse these characteristics of the Spirit. This not only opens the door to the extreme Pentecostal movement but invites it. The result is, you will have people asking for the Holy Spirit, praying to be filled rather than obeying the Word, and walking in the filling of the Holy Spirit. Let us be very clear here, for we need to be walking in true power in this darkening world. We must get this right, so we are following orders 100% in these darkening days that are way more dangerous than even the late twentieth century!

This is shown in **Romans 8:9-11**- which shows the indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit. This is the proof of the person being a believer. If you are not indwelt by the Holy Spirit - you are not a believer! The Spirit allows you to deal with sin, fellowship with the Lord Jesus, eliminates fear of death, and produces the certainty of resurrection.

## Ministries of the Holy Spirit

In **2 Corinthians 5:5** the Spirit is called the “earnest of our inheritance”. Earnest money was a deposit on an item in the ancient world but unlike us nowadays when you put down earnest money you owned the item. It was a covenant and the item could never be lost.

**1 Corinthians 6:19-20** relates to dealing with sin in your life. Your body is the Temple of the Holy Spirit. Notice it is the temple which is a permanent structure and not the temporary tabernacle that is in view here.

## The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit

The indwelling Spirit is a gift of God to all believers, a gift that is not earned, or deserved, or asked for. In Christ Jesus we are all recipients of the gift. This is pure grace, as in sin none of us deserve anything.

**1 Corinthians 2:14, Romans 8:9, Jude 19** show that if you do not have the Holy Spirit you are unsaved. It should be noted that sinning believers are still continuously indwelt by the Holy Spirit, but they are under His conviction. They are grieving or quenching the Spirit. This fact is unlike the teaching of Arminius (the opponent of Calvin) who said we could lose the Spirit and our salvation, and that each week we could go from pagan to Christian many times – and if we died at a pagan point we were lost forever.....

## It is Permanent?

Reviewing the sins of the Corinthians in 1 Corinthians it is hard to imagine any sin which they did not commit, especially when you think of the believer who was committing adultery with his father’s wife in chapter 5. Many affected by the teaching of Arminius in the Pentecostal movement believe you are lost if you sin, but this church challenges that. The Keswick movement also made a lot of this as well. It is we believe a false view taken from letters like Corinthians alone. Think about this in relation to the two commands to believers; neither to grieve, nor quench the Spirit. You cannot grieve or quench the Holy Spirit unless you are involved in a relationship with the Spirit! The permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit also ties in with the sealing of the Holy Spirit. Now good women/men differ with us here, one of them John Wesley, so let us be polite with each other!

If you do not teach the quenching and grieving of the Holy Spirit you are going to lose the church to confusion by their mixing of many scripture and concepts that do not belong together. Now pause again and reflect that many good people will differ with you, and so teach as you are convicted, but do so with consistency, humility and respectfulness.

Some times during your Christian walk you are going to be aware of a lack of spiritual vigor in your life. It is most likely because you have walked away from the Lord and grieved or quenched the Holy Spirit in some way, but He remains within. Something has come between you and active living fellowship with the Lord and the Spirit. This is that quenching spoken of, and is remedied by confession of sin and obedience to the Word. With sin cleared away the Holy Spirit can fully function again, you don’t need to ask Him to do so, He will.....Just Confess – open your heart again, fully minus sin!

The answer to the problem of quenching the Spirit’s power is to deal with your sin and re-establish your self with the Lord. If you do not know these doctrines however you are going to be easy prey to false doctrine. If I have sin in my life the Lord will not hear me; this is told to us plainly in the **Psalms 66:18**. Sin breaks fellowship and stops spiritual function. Lack of this knowledge will keep the confused believer coming along and telling you that you have not got the Holy Spirit and trying to convince you that you or they need the baptism of the Holy Spirit. Many people will be looking for the dramatic “gifts” as evidence of the Spirit’s presence, whereas they should be looking for the filling of the Spirit, which will always lead to the “fruits” in their lives. **Matthew 7:13-23, John 16:8-11, Galatians 5:16-23, Ephesians 5:18**. We should examine ourselves and see what has come between us and the Lord, and deal with it. **2 Corinthians 13:5**.

**Acts 5:32**. Note this verse and ask, isn’t obedience part of indwelling? - if you take the verse out of context it may seem that way. Ask yourself who are being spoken to? It is the unbelievers; the Pharisees.

The people want to teach others to ask for the filling also say that the Bible is full of references to the temporary empowerment of the Holy Spirit. This is true but only before Pentecost. In **John 14:16** the Lord prophesied that such a condition would cease. We are now permanently indwelt since Pentecost, and the daily challenge is to let the Spirit loose in our lives, but that is through obedience to the Word and confession and rejection of sin!

## The Samaritans

An area of confusion occurs for some concerning the giving of the Spirit to the Samaritans, which appears to be both selective and subsequent to salvation. It has caused some people to go off on a tangent and seek a so called second blessing. The Samaritans were a special case, where the Lord wanted to prove to them that their new Christian faith was not a rival to the church in Jerusalem, and prove to the Jewish believers that the Samaritans were in no way inferior to them. These two people groups had hated each other so deeply for so many centuries that a special uniting was needed. This delay of the Spirit Indwelling reflected the “once for all” need to illustrate that the Jews and Samaritans were now

one in Christ. The baptism/indwelling of the Holy Spirit was delayed until the Jewish apostles were with the saved Samaritans, and this did away with the possibility of there developing two churches rather than one.

When we were young believes we were not necessarily as aware of the ministries of the Holy Spirit in our life. Hopefully, as you have matured in worship and service you are now far more aware. As we grow we become aware of the power of the Spirit. This is not however a second blessing. It is an aspect of maturity and should be every believer's experience.

You need good Bible teaching to proceed powerfully with your Christian life. As you mature you will be able to do more and more in your life. The laying on of hands was a picture of the delegation of apostolic authority. This was to show that they were to follow the apostles from Jerusalem from where the policy came. **Jude 3.**

What about the situation in Acts 19 - What does this passage show? As soon as they heard of the Lord Jesus Christ they were saved, baptized and received the Holy Spirit. The Apostles would spend hours with the new believers telling them about the Scriptures and soon after that they were baptized. In the early church there was no evidence for waiting a long time after salvation to be baptized.

The permanence of the indwelling of the Holy Spirit is seen in the sealing of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit enters the believer into union with Christ. That person is then God's and nothing will separate that person from Him. **John 8:31-32, 10:27-30.**

A person who sins and persists in that state, without confession, will lose the rewards they would otherwise have won in spiritual service through that time of separation, and they lose their function and joy, but not their salvation. If they persist in sin until the end then they may even be subject to the sin unto death (1 John 5:16-17), but will never lose their salvation. People often look for excuses for their sins, but people should always be aware of the obligation of a Spirit filled life, for without it they will achieve nothing of spiritual value in this world, and rob themselves of rewards in the next. **1 Corinthians 3:12-15, 2 Corinthians 5:9-15.**

### **Sealing of the Holy Spirit**

All believers are sealed with the Holy Spirit **Ephesians 1:13,14, 4:30** - the sealing is permanent until the day of redemption, until the Lord brings you home to glory.

Seals were a sign of nobility in the ancient world and showed ownership with security. A father and a son would have the same signet rings, which would indicate ownership of any article which was sealed. God sets His seal on you at the point of salvation. Once the mark of ownership is on you, you are His, and no one can change it - **Romans 8:38-39.** Your life is hid with Christ in God (Colossians 3:3) as you are sealed at the point of salvation. Acts 2:38. The seal is unto the day of redemption. **Romans 8:23, Ephesians 4:30.** We are now God's possession and His responsibility.

Ramifications of the seal are security and purity; a seal meant you were secure in the ownership of the one who held the seal, and the purity aspect was seen in the sealing of wine. We should be stable as a believer, secure in our position, and holy. There are many unstable people who are trapped by an extreme Pentecostal/Methodist viewpoint of perfectionism. You will also want to be pure; you will desire it, but you need to approach this subject biblically, and assist those who stumble due to their emotional viewpoints. The world needs to see stable Christians. Pray for a steady and clear witness to your confused brethren in churches that teach things concerning the Spirit that make them unstable.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **INDWELLING OF CHRIST**

1. The prophecy of the indwelling of the Lord Jesus Christ. (John 14:18-20)
2. There is a distinction between the indwelling of the Lord Jesus Christ and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.
3. The Lord Jesus Christ indwells for fellowship (Galatians 2:20), and a sign of the believer's position. (Romans 8:10)
4. In contrast the Holy Spirit indwells to teach, guide, direct, empower and correct. (John 14:26, 16:8-15, Romans 8:11, 1 Corinthians 6:19-20)
5. The purpose of the indwelling is that the believer may grow in fellowship with the Lord, learning to know and love him more. (Colossians 1:27, Ephesians 3:17-19)
6. We fellowship with the Lord within as we allow the Holy Spirit to teach us through the Word. (John 6:63, 8:31-32, Colossians 3:16)
7. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is permanent even though He may be quenched or grieved, but the Lord Jesus Christ can be locked out of the soul by the presence of sin or a negative attitude towards the Word. (2 Corinthians 13:5)

8. When the Lord is locked out, the Holy Spirit convicts the believer, the believer is miserable, with the Lord knocking at the door for admission. (1 John 1:9, Revelation 3:19-20)

**SEAL**

A seal has a number of different implications:-

1. Sanctification. Exodus 28:36-38 - Example: Seals on official documents set them apart from normal documents.
2. Identification. Ezekiel 9:4 - Use of the signet ring in 1 Kings 21:8; Esther 8:8-10
3. Possession. 2 Corinthians 1:21-22 - Example: A "sea!" on one's book
4. Utilisation. Ephesians 1:12-14 - Example: Bank account number.
5. Glorification. Ephesians 4:30 - Example: Letters are stamped and sealed so as to arrive at their destination.
6. Preservation. Revelation 7:3 -Example: Locks on doors or the seal on the tomb of Christ.
7. Destination. Revelation 22:4

**LESSON 25 – BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
25	Holy Spirit - Baptism	Ephesians 4:5 1 Corinthian 12:12-13 Ephesians 5:18 Acts 1:5 Galatians 3:26-28	Baptism of Holy Spirit In Christ

**INTRODUCTION**

In **Ephesians 4:5** we are given the motto of the early church - of "One Lord, One Faith, One Baptism". This is not water baptism, which while it is important, is not the one that all believers share in. Many believers do not have the time or opportunity to be baptized in water. The one baptism we all share in is the Baptism of the Holy Spirit that marks the beginning of the believer's association with Christ. It is our entering into union with Him.

The universality of this baptism is given in **1 Corinthians 12:12-13**. This event is common to all believers in the Church Age. If you have not been baptized by the Holy Spirit into union with Christ then you are not a believer. This is clearly seen in the Greek and it is therefore important to analyze it and understand it and live within its reality.

**Baptism - What is it?**

Baptizo, the Greek verb, means to baptize. It is in the aorist passive indicative; aorist means a point of time in the past, passive, we receive it at the point of salvation, and the indicative mood means it is a reality. You as a genuine believer some time in the past received the baptism of the Holy Spirit, you did not earn it or deserve it; it was given to you. Nothing was done to receive it. It was grace all the way. There are no exceptions. Even the poorest believer has received the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. Some spoke in tongues in ACTS, some did not, so we deduce then that these two phenomena were not necessarily associated even in the earliest church.

The meaning of "Baptizo" is to dip or immerse, to wash. However the primary meaning is **to identify one object with another so that the first object is changed and identified with the second**. A historical example was the baptizing of the hunting spears of the Greek soldiers of the army of Alexander the Great. In the day of Alexander the Great, before the army headed off towards modern Turkey, many of the Greek troops had not been in a battle. In order to enhance their performance the hunting spears which they took with them were dipped/baptized in a bucket of pig's blood in the belief that it changed the nature of the hunting spear into a warrior's spear by identifying it with blood.

By analogy once we were part of the world, but through the Holy Spirit's conviction, leading to our salvation, the Holy Spirit has identified us with Christ, so that we were changed into part of His body. This shows how critical the Baptism of the Holy Spirit is.

## Definition

The Baptism of the Holy Spirit is the work of the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation whereby He enters the believer into union with Christ, into the Church, the Body of Christ. This gives you your identity as a Christian. I am a member of the church, I am a member of the Body of Christ. This is done so that our love relationship may grow with Him and in Him. This opens the channel of blessing for us because it relates us to His church, His Body on earth.

Your attitude to the Baptism of the Holy Spirit will determine your attitude to the local church. The local church is based on the reality of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. Most Pentecostals are trying to get their people baptized by the Holy Spirit whereas the Biblical teaching is that we have all been baptized once and for all by the Holy Spirit into the church. What they really mean to say, and what we all need, is the daily empowering, "Filling of the Holy Spirit".

## Origin of the Church

One of the main reasons for confusion in this area is because some people believe that the church began in Abraham's tent or with the ministry of John the Baptist. This makes it much more difficult to understand the work of the Spirit in the Church Age, rather than understanding that the Church started on one specific day, at Pentecost, where the first Baptism of the Holy Spirit took place. The Church begins at Pentecost – not before.

Baptism is often taken as a synonym to the filling of the Holy Spirit but this is to confuse things. The Baptism occurs once and for all, but the filling is to be occurring every day. As a result of the Baptism we become believers, and as a result of the filling of the Spirit we are equipped to worship and serve. Many of the problems that occur are because Christians do not understand just how special they are through the ministries of the Spirit, but they confuse them.

It is important not to study Acts by itself. At Pentecost everything happens at once and it is therefore a unique, starting event. They are sealed, indwelt, regenerated, baptized, filled, and given spiritual gifts, but they are all mature believers on that first day, so all works of the Spirit could be received by them all. The following hour and the next day Peter is preaching the message. This is not a normal situation, for it was the start point, with mature believers in the Lord involved. Those saved as a result of Peter's preaching are like us when saved, baptized by/in the Spirit, and then receiving the ministries of the Holy Spirit as we do, through growth over time. From the first minutes after Peter starts preaching the people saved will be receiving things from the Spirit as they are open and ready, and over time.

In **Ephesians 5:18** we are told that as a Christian you should not get drunk, but be filled with the Holy Spirit for motive power. This is an on-going command, (present, passive, imperative), you are commanded to let this happen to you habitually, day by day. A literal translation would be to, "keep on letting the Spirit fill you!"

Read **1 Corinthians 12:13**. Now if you think that the Baptism and filling of the Spirit is the same, you have a problem for your view here, and I want it solved – for we must be daily filled, not daily baptized. You only need to be once and for all baptized, but you need to be habitually filled. We need to deal with sin in our lives and let the Holy Spirit control us. The spear was only dipped in the blood once and this made it in the soldier's mind a battle spear forever. **There is no command in the Scripture to be baptized by the Holy Spirit, for it is the work of the Spirit at salvation.**

Read **Acts 1:5** - when did it occur in the individual's lives? This is ten days **before the time** when they are going to receive the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit had not baptized anyone before that and everyone was looking forward to the Feast of Pentecost.

## Results of the Baptism of the Spirit

Two results of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit – **firstly** it joins us to the body of Christ with in **1 Corinthians 12:13** there being many varieties in the body. The unity is the baptism of the Spirit. It is only a relationship with the Lord that allows you to have a relationship with other believers. You are part of Him and therefore joined to other believers. This is our co-crucifixion with Christ. **Secondly** it identifies us with the death, resurrection and glorification of the Lord.

We are left on earth to learn more about what it means to be in union with Christ; to worship and serve Him, and bring eternal glory to His Holy Name through our Holy Spirit Filled work. If you are in an intimate relationship as wonderful as this is, you have a great responsibility attached. To all who receive "much", much is expected! **Luke 12:19-48**.

Every relationship has responsibilities; be it husband and wife, parent and child, manager and worker. The responsibility for us in Christ is to be obedient. **John 15:9-17**. The Lord's responsibility is to keep us safe. We should also get to know and love Him more. This is going to modify how you think about the Lord. The result is that you should walk worthy according to your calling. Ephesians 4:1, Colossians 1:10, 1 Thessalonians 2:12, 2 Thessalonians 1:5, 11.

The filling of the Holy Spirit allows you to work and is the evidence of a past baptism of the Holy Spirit. Many Christians have wasted a lot of time trying to emotionally "work up" the emotion they think should be present in the baptism of the Holy Spirit. We face the choice on this issue – be biblical and walk in holiness and worthy, or be fake and practice emotional religion. This is why you can have people heading up the "praise the Lord television show" and still be in gross sexual and financial sins. If you are going to focus on emotional experiences and depend on emotions rather than

biblical truth you are **not** going to have the Spirit control your life. The issue is obedience to the Lord and dealing with sin!

## **DOCTRINES**

### **BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

1. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit is mentioned in (1 Corinthians 12:13) "By means of one spirit are we all baptised into one body". The Baptism of the Spirit unites believers into the Body of Christ at the point of salvation.
2. The Baptism of the Spirit is different to His other ministries: indwelling, filling, sealing, regeneration, distributing spiritual gifts, all of which also occur at the point of salvation.
3. The basis of unity and union of believers is achieved by Baptism of the Spirit (Ephesians 4:5) "One Lord, one faith, one baptism" - we have one faith in one Lord and receive one baptism, which unites us in the Body of Christ.
4. The implication of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit is given in (Galatians 3:26-28) - all believers are united and "equal" in standing before God.
5. The Baptism of the Spirit provides identification with Christ - as the Body of Christ, we share everything that He has (eg righteousness, heirship, priesthood, kingship, etc) (Ephesians 1:3, Colossians 2:12)
6. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit was promised by Jesus Christ. (John 14:19-20, Acts 1:5)
7. The Baptism of the Spirit did not occur in Old Testament times. It is unique to the Church Age. Only Church Age believers are "in Christ" - that is, part of the Body (and the Bride) of Christ. (Colossians 1:25-26)
8. The Baptism of the Spirit begins the Church Age. In (Acts 1:5) Jesus said "Ye shall be baptised with the Holy Spirit not many (10) days hence". In (Acts 2:3) no mention of the Baptism of the Spirit is made but the experiential side of these happenings are described. In (Acts 11:15-17) Peter says that they received the Baptism of the Spirit just as it was in the beginning and quotes (Acts 1:5).
9. The Baptism of the Spirit has nothing to do with water baptism, nor with speaking in tongues. The Baptism of the Spirit is not an experience; it cannot be seen, felt, or experienced, it occurs instantaneously at salvation. (aorist tense excludes experience - "once and for all") (1 Corinthians 12:13)
10. The incidence of tongues at Pentecost was because many nations were present in Jerusalem at that time. Tongues fulfilled two requirements, evangelisation and the first warning of second expulsion of the Jews from the land which occurred in 70 AD. (This was warned of before the first expulsion in Isaiah 28:11.)

### **"IN CHRIST" – Positional Truth!**

1. At the point of salvation, every believer in the Church Age is entered into the Body of Christ, and is therefore united with Christ. Our position is now, "in Christ".
2. The baptism of the Spirit is how we are united with Christ. (Acts 1:5; 1 Corinthians 12:13; Ephesians 4:5) The Holy Spirit places the believer in union with Christ.
3. Positional truth belongs to the carnal as well as the spiritual believer, to the apostate believer as well as to the mature believer. (1 Corinthians 1:2,30)
4. Positional truth protects the believer from divine judgment in eternity. (Romans 8:1)
5. Positional truth qualifies the believer to live with God forever:
  - a) Eternal life (1 John 5:11,12)
  - b) Imputation of God's righteousness (2 Corinthians 5:21).
6. Positional truth is the key to both election and predestination (Ephesians 1:3-6).
7. Positional truth creates a new creature. (2 Corinthians 5:17; Ephesians 2:10) based on who and what Christ is, therefore what grace accomplishes - not what changes we make - at salvation or thereafter.
8. Positional truth guarantees the eternal security of the believer (Romans 8:38,39).
9. Positional truth has two aspects:



- a) Past - identification with Christ in His death (Romans 6; Colossians 2:12; 3:3)
  - b) Present (and Future) - identification with Christ in His "new resurrection life".
10. Current positional truth implies that the believer shares certain things in union with Christ:
- a) Eternal life (1 John 5:11,12)
  - b) Righteousness of God (2 Corinthians 5:21)
  - c) Election (Ephesians 1:4)
  - d) Destiny (Ephesians 1:5)
  - e) Sonship (John 1:12; 1 John 3:1,2)
  - f) Heirship (Romans 8:16,17)
  - g) Sanctification (1 Corinthians 1:2,30)
  - h) Kingdom (2 Peter 1:11)
  - i) Priesthood (Hebrews 10:10-14; 1 Peter 2:5,9).
11. Our new position in Christ means we are and must be separated from the world (Ephesians 2:6).
12. As new creatures in Christ, we have a new ministry as ambassadors for Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17-21, 1Corinthians 3:6, 6:4).
13. In Christ, we are never alone, (Colossians 3:4, John 17) we have communion with Him, and with His body (other Christians).
14. We are united with the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit forever- we are in the Father, He is in us - Ephesians 4:6, we are in Christ, He is in us - John 14:20, Colossians 1:26, we are in the Spirit, He is in us - Romans 8:9.
15. We are members of His body, branches of His vine, living stones of His building, sheep of His fold, part of his Bride, priests in his kingdom, saints set apart for his glory.
16. The characteristics of positional truth are six-fold:
- a) It is not an experience - neither emotional nor ecstatic.
  - b) It is not progressive - cannot be improved in time or eternity.
  - c) It is not related to human merit, ability, or human good. Here are the implications of retroactive positional truth. There is no place in the plan of God for human good.
  - d) It is eternal in nature, it cannot be changed by God, angels or mankind.
  - e) It is known only through the Word of God.
  - f) It is obtained in total at the point of salvation.

**LESSON 26 – HOLY SPIRIT – FILLING**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
26	Holy Spirit – Filling	1 Thessalonians 5:19 Ephesians 4:30 Galatians 5:16 Hebrews 4:1-4, Romans 12:1-2 2 Timothy 1:6 Hebrews 12:5-13 1 John 1:9 Galatians 5:16, 22-23 Ephesians 5:19-21	Holy Spirit – Filling Spirituality

**INTRODUCTION**

In **Ephesians 5:18-21** we are told, "Be filled with the Spirit". This is in the present tense, which demands continuous action, every day of our life as believers, until we are called home to heaven.

**DEFINITION** - It is the spiritual state where the Holy Spirit is fulfilling all that He came to do in the hearts and lives of the individual believer. John 10:10.

The filling of the Spirit did occur prior to Pentecost but it was always temporary and limited, and was observed only in a small number of individuals prior to the start of the Church Age.

Since Pentecost however the Holy Spirit indwells all believers from New Testament times. Everybody therefore has the opportunity to be daily filled with the Holy Spirit and can now be daily obedient to the command in Ephesians 5:18.

### **EFFECT OF THE FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

There is an observable difference in the daily life and character of Christians who are filled with the Spirit. Unfortunately there are few who can be characterized in this way. This is based on the failure of man rather than the lack of provision by God. God wants us to live supernatural lives and achieve all that He has designed for us to achieve.

With Satan so frantically active in the world since the Cross and Resurrection, we are told to be daily filled with the Holy Spirit. This is very important on a moment by moment basis in the intensified stage of the Angelic Conflict since the Resurrection. You need to be spiritually led by God as you walk through this present world, especially as the "One World" government impetus grows daily.

Pastors, if you can get your congregation to live under the control/filling of the Holy Spirit you are going to have a wonderful and powerful church; active, blessed, and very productive. If you are going to achieve this everything else will happen, you will never need to seek funds, there will be evangelism and spiritual growth, blessing and impact.

If you do not stress the importance of the work of the Holy Spirit in your people you will have a hymn singing social club. You will be counselling people who need obedient spiritual lives, not the wisdom of men, and you will have a mess on your hands which you will call a church. Without the dynamic power of the Holy Spirit in your church you will have to use all the "human viewpoint" gimmicks of "church growth" to get people to give and serve.

It is important that people come to church to know, love, worship and serve the Lord without human coercion. If you teach systematically, verse by verse, stressing the filling of the Holy Spirit, they will come and worship, and give and serve freely. If they are not interested in worship and service it is a sign that they are not filled with the Spirit. If the people do not come to worship the pastor should look at himself as to whether he is truly teaching or not.

In the church you should refer to the filling of the Holy Spirit every week. The Holy Spirit is the dynamic of the Christian life. If you have not got the Holy Spirit in your life you are not a Christian. This topic, and your attitude to it, is going to determine how you are going to run your church, or how God is going to make it really "run".

The secret of real spiritually powerful church growth is for the individual to pray the prayer, "let there be a revival in this place Lord and let it start with me". Pastor – it begins with you - you should walk with the Lord in the Spirit, study and teach the Word systematically. As you see people come alive, you then ask them to pray this prayer daily. Two or three people can change a church or a nation – but only when they are Holy Spirit filled.

### **Filling of the Holy Spirit Contrasted with Spiritual Maturity.**

The filling of the Holy Spirit will occur if you are mature or not. Indeed Christian Maturity occurs as we spend a lot of time in the filling of the Holy Spirit. The filling of the Holy Spirit should be the normal Christian life. It is only in that state that you are going to grow spiritually. The longer and more often you are under the control of the Holy Spirit the quicker you will mature and the more doors will open to serve the Lord. The baby believer does not spend a lot of time working under the power of the Holy Spirit.

Spirituality is therefore not the same as maturity, but consistent spirituality leads to maturity; it is the path to greater and greater service and worship. You are only spiritual if God rules in your life as He intended it to be. You are spiritual if there is no sin in your life and you are walking in the Spirit's filling.

### **Three Conditions for the Filling of the Spirit.**

- [a] Quench not the Spirit - 1 Thessalonians 5:19,
- [b] Grieve not the Spirit - Ephesians 4:30,
- [c] Walk in the Spirit - Galatians 5:16 and do not fulfill the lusts of the flesh.

### **Quench not the Spirit.**

Do not put out the fire, is the literal meaning from the Greek. Do not smother the Holy Spirit's work by human viewpoint activity. There are three components to a fire; called the "fire triangle" = fuel (Word), air (Spirit), and heat (Passion).

If you want to put the fire out you eliminate just one of the three items, remove the fuel, air, or heat and the fire will go out. A great example of a Christian getting cold is given by the ember that is taken from a glowing fire. As the ember is removed from the fire and laid aside it ceases to glow and becomes cold. It does not matter how strong a Christian you are, if you lose your spiritual ardor and fellowship you will grow cold. Stay in the middle of the fire, and do not quench the

Spirit. Sometimes it gets tough in the Christian life but we must keep the heat on and surround ourselves with other “hot” spiritually passionate believers.

We can also go cold if we have no fuel or the wrong fuel, and this is the spiritual food of the Word of God. In John 14-16 the Lord says that the Holy Spirit will lead you into all truth, and the Holy Spirit is like the “air”, the “pneuma”, bringing life to the Word and the believer who heeds it. It is important to feed upon the Word of God, and not just stories of people's experiences, however moving they may be, for they are not fuel for the Holy Spirit, they are fuel for your emotions. Only God's Word will strengthen you, and fuel you as a believer.

The third way to put a fire out is to rob it of air; also if you do not breathe you do not live. Inhale and exhale of air is a good picture of spiritual growth. As you are taking in the Word of God through the Holy Spirit's ministries you are “inhaling”, and you exhale by letting God's Word work through you transforming every detail of your daily life. After breathing in by means of a good message you breathe it out with a great hymn at the end of the service, and service in your community to reflect the Lord's role for your life. Passionate worship is our “heat”.

Paul says to Timothy, “stir up the gift that is in you”, **2 Timothy 1:6** – literally he is saying, keep the spiritual fire burning, and fire it up to higher, more powerful flames. Throw more doctrinal fuel on the fire. You can be smothered by the cares of the world, concerns of family and friends, or work pressure, especially if you are surrounded by pagans all the time. Do not let yourself get smothered by the evil of the world, but stoke the fires within and let your heat keep evil at bay.

**Romans 12:1-2** reminds us that we all have to commit ourselves to our spiritual life. “Present yourself a living sacrifice”, is a good picture of throwing yourself into a way of living – devoting time and energy to God's work, not distracting nonsense. Throw yourself into this new spiritual life because today is a day you will never have again.

#### **Grieve not the Spirit -**

**Ephesians 4:30** shows that you do this when you have sin in your life. You deal, with it quickly using **1 John 1:9**. If you do not use that verse you will be subject to **Hebrews 12:5-13**, which gives us the description of divine discipline. You are either going to be living under the power of the Holy Spirit in blessing, or under Divine discipline. In sin you will be miserable because the Spirit is quenched, miserable because the Spirit is grieved, miserable because of divine discipline. This is why disobedient/carnal believers are the most miserable and obnoxious of people on the planet!

#### **Walk in the Spirit -**

The word used by Paul “to walk” means “to advance in ranks”, making use of the assets you have to fight the enemy.

What does this mean? It means - Believe the Word, feed on it daily, and apply it. The Christian life is difficult as we are in Satan's world and are surrounded by evil, the world, the flesh and the devil. If you do not walk in the Spirit you will be walking with the enemy. You are either becoming strong in the filling of the Holy Spirit or you are being beaten. You have to have the intestinal fortitude to fight, and you have the equipment, (Armour of the Spirit – **Ephesians 6:10-18**) so use it or you will become a casualty. There is a battle being fought out there and the Lord wants winners. The Lord won on Calvary. You are in Him, you are a winner – so live and fight like one against sin and evil.

#### **Characteristics of the Filling of the Holy Spirit**

What are going to be the characteristics of the Filling of the Holy Spirit?

[a] Christ likeness, the fruit of the Spirit **Galatians 5:22-23**. Do not be impressed by miracles and signs because some people are going to be told to depart from the Lord at the judgment because they are unbelievers even though they have done miracles in the Lord's name. - **Matthew 7:13-23**. A lot of people claim miracles. Even when the miracles were legitimate it was nothing to say apart from the fact that they had power. The question is whether the power is from God or not. It is the fruit and not the signs that are important, by their fruit you will know them.

[b] You will have an evangelistic involvement, if they have no desire for souls, if they are not involved in teaching God's Word there is something wrong.

[c] Praise, worship, thanksgiving and submissiveness **Ephesians 5:18 ff**- this shows the basis of submissiveness that Christians should be mutually submissive. The basis of submissiveness is the filling of the Holy Spirit in Ephesians 5:18. Once you are submissive one to another you can be submissive husbands and wives as you are in submission to the Spirit. We as ministers need to lead as examples/mentors. Can we say, “Follow me...” Philipians 3:10-19.

#### **Characteristics of the Filling of the Spirit:-**

[a] The Power of the Spirit

[b] Holiness of Life

- [c] Ministries of the Spirit
- [d] Teaching you wonderful things
- [e] Guide into all things
- [f] Assurance of Salvation
- [g] True worship of the Lord.
- [h] Good prayer fellowship.

The major problem in the church is Christians who have grown cold. Obedience is the answer to spiritual coldness; we warm our spirit and soul by obeying the revealed Word of God and letting the Spirit loose again through confession of our sins. Do not be distracted by strange and weird things, for God is straight forward. The devil does not need to go after most believers for they trip themselves up easily by the sin and laziness. If you get someone spouting "words of wisdom" in a convoluted manner you know it is not of the Lord because the Lord is clear and succinct. The Lord is not into dramatic or weird things; he is into transformed and holy lives, living to praise his name.

Many of the healings that take place in today's so called "healing" services are found over time to have been psychological or fraudulent. If they are followed through medically they are shown not to be healings at all. That said of some cases, **genuine miraculous healings occur at all times in history** but we are not to be fooled, or look foolish in the eyes of the lost by claiming things that are clearly not true. Always seek confirmation of every "fact" in these areas. I myself was miraculously healed by prayer, and confounded my specialists who did not expect me to live!

At other times healing will not occur, and it shouldn't destroy our faith. Paul towards the end of his ministry was not able to heal his closest friend who he had to leave behind in Troas. **2 Timothy 4:20**. Miracles have always been rare, but they do occur; it is important however to be skeptical when claims are made and always check facts, or the Lord's name and the faith will be held in derision by the unbeliever who will see through false miracles easily!

Paul was, when the Lord's will was for healing, able to achieve great healing miracles, and he used the healing ministry to present the gospel. He did not heal for healings sake, but worked miracles whenever the Lord opened the door, and there was always an evangelistic purpose. He also saw a vision of heaven which he was told not to speak about and he kept silent on what he saw. Paul was not into drama, he was into obedience to the Holy Spirit and the Word; so must we be! Acts 5:16, 8:7, 19:11-12, 28:8-9.

The Word of God moving transforming lives in the power of the Holy Spirit is all important, not any additional signs and miracles. Where they are bone fide they will always lead to more evangelism and to people studying the Word and growing through obedience to it. The filling of the Holy Spirit is all important, and the evidence of that is the fruit of holiness in the life. I have been personally miraculously healed by prayer and so I believe in miracles, but I see that obedience is the key here, and we listen to what God is doing, we do not demand our will be done, but seek His Will.

**DOCTRINES**

**HOLY SPIRIT: FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

1. The Holy Spirit indwells every believer. We are commanded to allow Him to fill (or fully control) our lives (Ephesians 5:18).
2. The filling (controlling) of the Spirit can be broken by:
  - a) Grieving the Spirit (Ephesians 4:30) - sin, doing something you shouldn't.
  - b) Quenching the Spirit (1 Thessalonians 5:19) - not doing something you should (like quenching a fire, allowing the flame to go out).
3. The filling (controlling) of the Spirit can be restored by confession of sin and full surrender to do the will of God (1John 1:9)
4. The Spirit produces the very character of the Christ in the believer: (Galatians 4:19, 5:22, 23, Ephesians 3:16, 17, Philippians 1:20, 21, 2 Corinthians 3:3)
  - a) The fruit of the Spirit:
    - i) Galatians 5:22-23 - Love, Joy, Peace, Patience, Kindness, Goodness, Faithfulness, Gentleness, Self-control.
    - ii) Romans 14:17 - Righteousness, Peace, Joy.
    - iii) Colossians 3:12-15 - Compassion, Kindness, Humility, Gentleness, Patience, Forgiveness, Love, Peace, Thankfulness.
    - iv) 1 Thessalonians 1:3 - Faith, Love, Endurance, Hope.

- b) Rejoicing in Christ (Philippians 3:1, 4:4).
- c) Loving one another (John 15:12, Romans 12:10, Ephesians 5:2).
- d) Striving for the faith (Philippians 1:27, Jude 3).
- e) Putting away all sin (1 Corinthians 5:7, Hebrews 12:1).
- f) Abstaining from all appearances of evil (1 Thessalonians 5:22).
- g) Submitting to injuries (1 Corinthians 6:7).
- h) Subduing the temper (Ephesians 4:26, James 1:19).
- i) Shunning the wicked (2 Thessalonians 3:6).
- j) Abounding in the works of the Lord (1 Corinthians 15:58 1 Thessalonians 4:1).
- k) Showing a good example (1 Timothy 4:12, 1 Peter 2:12).
- l) Following after that which is good (Philippians 4:8, 1 Timothy 6:11).
- m) Perfecting holiness (2 Corinthians 7:1, 2 Timothy 3:17).
- n) Hating defilement (Jude 23).
- o) Overcoming the world. (1 John 5:4-5)
- p) Adorning the gospel. (Philippians 1:27, Titus 2:10)
- q) Forgiving injuries. (Romans 12:20)
- r) Living peaceably with all. (Romans 12:18, Hebrews 12:14)
- s) Visiting the afflicted. (James 1:27)
- t) Sympathising with others. (Romans 12:15, 1 Thessalonians 5:14)
- u) Honouring others. (Romans 12:10)
- v) Submitting to authorities. (Romans 13:1-7)
- w) Being content. (Philippians 4:11, Hebrews 13:5)
- x) Walking worthy of the Lord. (Colossians 1:10, 1 Thessalonians 2:12)
- y) Walking in the newness of life. (Romans 6:4)
- z) Walking as children of light. (Ephesians 5:8)
- aa) Glorifies Christ in his body. (Philippians 1:20, 21)
- bb) Christ is at home in his body. (Ephesians 3:16,17)
- cc) A lifestyle which honours God in the presence of men. (2 Corinthians 3:3)

5. The filling of the Holy Spirit in every believer only occurs in two dispensations:

- a) Church age Ephesians 5:18, Galatians 5:22,23
- b) Millennium - Joel 2:28, 29 (characterized by ecstasies)

**SPIRITUALITY [See page 33 above]**

**LESSON 27 – HOLY SPIRIT – OTHER MINISTRIES**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
27	Holy Spirit – Other Ministries	1 John 2:26-28 Romans 8:9-18 Psalm 119:105 Romans 8:26-28 1 Corinthians 12:7-13	H S – Comforter, Teacher Guidance Gifts – Spiritual Gifts

The other ministries of the Holy Spirit comprise, giving of Spiritual Gifts, Teaching, Guidance, Assurance, and Prayer. When choosing friends and church officers we have to look for these things evident in their lives. Not all Christians can be trusted. Many are out of fellowship and carnal most of the time, and such believers are often less trustworthy than an honest pagan. **Matthew 7:13-23** is an important passage on this subject, as are Jesus words, John 8:39-47.

**1 Corinthians 3:11-15** shows that the only things worth doing are those done under the power of the Holy Spirit, which produces what is called gold, silver and precious stones in the life of the obedient believer.

**SPIRITUAL GIFTS**

Receiving gifts happens at salvation. Most believers are unaware of the gift that the Holy Spirit has given them at the point of salvation as it needs maturity to discern it. We grow into them spiritually as we relax into the filling of the Spirit.

Many believers never know what gift the Holy Spirit has given them because they never reach spiritual maturity and use it properly under the filling of the Holy Spirit.

The Greek word for spiritual gifts is “charisma” or grace gifts. It is a God given ability for service for the benefit of the entire church. A natural talent that one has as an unbeliever, such as the ability to sing may be used, but is not the spiritual gift, which is bestowed only at salvation. If you are a successful businessman it does not mean that you will be a great deacon, if you are a public speaker it does not mean that you will be a great pastor or should be a pastor at all. If

you have not been given the gift of pastor or teacher at salvation, you are not a pastor or teacher. You will only know as you “grow into it” in the regular habit of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

If a person apparently has a gift they need to be checked against the Scriptures, to ensure they conform to the behavioural requirements such as is specified in the Pastorals. 1 Timothy 3, Titus 1. The Lord can use people who are Holy Spirit gifted and regularly filled irrespective of their visible natural talents. A good example is Moses who had a stutter. He was not a naturally gifted public speaker but he became in the power and gifting of the Holy Spirit the pastor of Israel. There is danger in the ministry to have a person with great natural ability in the wrong position in the church and not walking in the power of the Holy Spirit. Many of the liberals come from this natural talent background.

In **1 Corinthians 12** it is clear from verses **7-13** that no one should ask for gifts from the Holy Spirit, as the Spirit sovereignly gives as He wills. The Spirit knows what gifts are needed in each place. He did the selecting at the point of salvation so it is too late to ask. You do not ask for a gift, if you do it is no longer a gift. The Holy Spirit looking down the corridors of time knew precisely what your gift would be and how you are required use it. Remember God has seen all things from before space-time was made! The Plan is perfect and every single gift functions within God's Plan!

The extreme Pentecostal movement is based on asking for the gifts of the Spirit, especially the gift of tongues. This is all distracting and unnecessary, and it is **WRONG**. Every new believer receives at least one gift and we will always be blessed by discovering what the Spirit has given. Every gift is necessary for the church to function. The Holy Spirit assigns the gifts that are needed, in what mix, so that every church can function. We have no need to second guess the Holy Spirit; he knows what the church needs and what our part in the eternal plan is! This is why it is crucial that we are open to be led to different churches at various times in our life, to meet local needs in terms of God's Plan.

If you have ten people in your church you will have all the gifts that are needed. You just need to have the people in the church filled with the Spirit to function. Those who use their spiritual gifts under the power of the Holy Spirit are personally satisfied and also a recharge and joy to others. Gift exercise is for church body function.

In a number of areas all believers are told to function. For instance we are all told to witness, but there is a gift of evangelism, which will allow a special ability in this area. We are all told to give and pray but there are gifts to give a person a special ministry in that area.

**1 Corinthians 14:1ff** says that the congregation should desire the expression of the best communication gifts with educational/growth benefits because it is those which allow people to know more about the Lord and grow. The word for “desire” is in the third person plural, so that it is the whole congregation that should desire this and not an individual.

In this chapter Paul made it clear that he was trying to curb the use of tongues in the Corinthian church and promote the gift of preaching and teaching.

### **TEACHING MINISTRY**

**1 John 2:26-28** is a commentary on John 16, which refers to the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit. It is important to note that the Apostle John ends this passage with the importance of abiding in Christ. We have to use 1 John 1:9.

You do not need to be taught by others as to your gift, as you have the right teacher inside you who is going to lead you into all truth. There is no lie in the Spirit's work, and he gave you the gift, so knows it. However there were and are seducers about. This is the point that John is bringing into focus. If you are not being taught by the Holy Spirit, you are being taught by the other side and receiving worldliness or human viewpoint. Those not led/taught by the Holy Spirit are fooled about what is happening and are able to be led away from the truth.

John is not running down human teachers but saying that the Holy Spirit is in you, and needs to be in control if you are going to understand spiritual things. John, for instance, was communicating the truth to them by the Holy Spirit. Man is the means of communication, the Holy Spirit is the required and always provided dynamic force involved in the teaching. When you go out to teach God's Word in your own strength alone you will fail because it is you rather than the Holy Spirit. The Christian life is not meant to be lived in human strength, but in supernatural strength.

Prayer saturation is required when you teach the Word, so that it is indeed the Holy Spirit working through your words. When you teach in a Holy Spirit filled manner you will never be exhausted by your teaching ministry – you will feel uplifted and blessed after any teaching session. The fruit of the Holy Spirit's ministry through you will always be joy and peace. Beware of bible teachers who need to rest after preaching – for they are working in their own strength – the Holy Spirit always uplifts us. Every gift when exercised in the Holy Spirit's power blesses the person using it.

### **GUIDANCE**

You will have people coming to you in the ministry seeking guidance as to what God wants them to do from day to day, seeking Divine guidance. You must be prayerful and careful in your words, and ensure that they have dealt with any sin and are spiritual before you even start to explore their decision making and the challenges involved.

Guidance does not come out of a vacuum; guidance comes out of a context. Guidance depends on the teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit, fellowship with the Lord Jesus Christ, and your own spiritual growth and the spiritual growth/discernment of the person seeking guidance. In **Romans 8:9 -18** we are told that we are led by the Spirit of God and are the sons/daughters of God. This is the reminder that the Father will always guide his children, and our challenge remains the same every day – to stay in loving and obedient fellowship with our Father, so we hear his guidance. If you do not deal with sin in your life you cannot receive guidance from the Father through the Holy Spirit. Guidance therefore depends on living and holy fellowship.

Being led by the Holy Spirit is one of the signs of being a child of God. You can be led in two ways, by the ear/nose like a bad schoolboy as per Hebrews 12, Isaiah 37:29, or led by the eye and hearing truth quickly like a good student with a mature attitude. **Psalm 32:5-9**. You have to know the Lord Jesus Christ so well through fellowship in his Word that you know His policy. When your mind is saturated with bible doctrine you are looking in the eye of the Lord. Every decision you make is therefore made in the light of eternity. It is the closeness of your fellowship that determines how well you are going to be guided. We have to ask what is the Lord's policy in this matter, and discern what is important, what we are to do, and then making our decision on that basis.

In **Psalm 119:105** we have the Hebrew word for light, which is the word for a little light, like a small torch rather than the sun. We therefore have sufficient light to see the next step but not necessarily a clear view, miles ahead. You only see what you need to see as you walk through this life, but need to be aware that He who provides the light knows the complete picture. Do not expect there to be a fantastic vision of the future. This comes rarely to God's servants. While Paul knew that the Lord wanted him to go west there is nothing to say that he knew well in advance what the Lord wanted him to do. Paul did not know what was going to happen to him in five years time, just the next step, and so like the apostle let us walk with the Lord into the path he has prepared for us. **Jeremiah 10:23-24, 2 Timothy 1:9-12**.

It did not worry Paul where he was going, for he knew the Lord as his companion, and it should not worry us where we go, so long as we fellowship with our Lord on the road. Haggai 2:4-5. The Lord will show you what you need to know when you need to know it. Your life is woven into the Lord's plan, and it is His timing in all decision making that counts. If you are walking with Him you will not stumble. You must be willing to be guided if you are to progress in the Christian life, and that means daily prayerful fellowship, and "waiting upon the Lord at times", and often waiting a lot longer than you think you should need to wait. It is God's timetable we are to walk and work to, not our own.

In **Acts 11** guidance to Peter was through prayer in v 5, by thought, the Word of God and providential circumstances v 10-11, the filling of the Spirit v 12, and through fellowship with others v 13-14.

## ASSURANCE

This is not something that can be separated from the other ministries of the Holy Spirit - **Romans 8:9, 16**. When the Holy Spirit guides you, you will have assurance and comfort within. This confidence grows as you mature in the Christian life.

The normal worry of the young believer is whether you are saved or not. As a mature Christian however this is not a problem as you can look back on the performance of God in your life and His proven faithfulness. All the ministries of the Holy Spirit are real in the life of the believer who walks with the Lord, and there is growing assurance through time.

Once you have been a Christian for a long time and have experienced not only the blessing of the Holy Spirit, but the convicting ministry when you have been out of fellowship, you know you are saved, and saved on a permanent basis.

Many of the extreme Pentecostals have a false system whereby they say that they will give you assurance of salvation. They invite you to have a person lay hands on you and then you "speak in tongues", indicating to them that you are saved. This is a false assurance, and we are called to give the real truth about the assurance that we can all have, Pentecostal and non-Pentecostal. Assurance is not dependent on any "gift" but upon the indwelling presence of God with us, signified most often by the fruit of the Holy Spirit, and the use of any genuine gift always multiplies fruit.

You can have a humanly generated experiences, or the "real spiritual thing" that is based on fellowship and the Holy Spirit fellowshiping with your spirit. You can be sick, depressed, or in pain, but you know you are in a relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ, because he is real and active in your life. Assurance can also be seen in 2 Timothy 1:12 where Paul, just before his death, says that he is absolutely persuaded that God is able to keep him. This is the assurance that people should have when facing death. You only have it if you are fellowshiping with the Lord and walking with him.

Dying grace is also a feature of this. The Lord provides assurance as you go through the valley of the shadow of death. One day we will all walk through the valley of the shadow of death, and we need to walk through it in fellowship, and we need to have walked in fellowship for years before. You cannot turn it on like some turn on "tongues". When you are under pressure you cannot produce an emotional action and change things.

Living daily fellowship with God alone changes things. Many so called "spiritual giants", according to Media, crack up under pressure, because they depended on an emotional experiences, rather than the real presence of the filling of the Holy Spirit. Such failures of faith are a very bad witness to unbelievers who then mock the gospel and remain in unbelief,

and yet if the so called church leader was not Holy Spirit filled, they may not have been a believer at all, just one of Satan's fakes. Counterfeits are incredibly effective in sowing discord and chaos – not ever signs of the Holy Spirit.

## **PRAYER**

We see the Holy Spirit assisting us in our prayer life in **Romans 8:26-28**. This is obviously not the gift of tongues, as the words here note clearly these emotions "cannot be uttered". When you are going through things too deep for words the Spirit is praying for you. Sometimes you get to a situation where you cannot pray you are so stressed, and you have to leave it to the Lord, and you have the assurance here that the Holy Spirit will pray for you. The Spirit never ceases to make intercession for us. We also have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. **1 John 2:1-2**

## **DOCTRINES**

### **GUIDANCE: THE WILL OF GOD**

1. Three categories of will in history
  - a) Divine will (sovereignty)
  - b) Angelic will.
  - c) Human will.
  
2. Main areas of the will of God (1 John 3:23)
  - a) For the unbeliever - salvation (2 Peter 3:9)
  - b) For the believer - spirituality (Ephesians 5:18)
  
3. Christ has free will (Matthew 26:42, Hebrews 10:7, 9)
  - a) No free will in mankind would imply no free will in Christ.
  - b) The basic principles of divine guidance however is based on the fact that man possesses free will to choose for or against God.
  
4. Type of will of God as related to the human race (e.g. Balaam)
  - a) Directive (Numbers 22:12) -what God directs.
  - b) Permissive (Numbers 22:20) - What God allows
  - c) Overruling (Numbers 23) - When God overrules
  
5. Principles of Guidance
  - a) Knowledge of biblical principles in the believer (Psalm 32:8, Proverbs 3:1-6, Isaiah 58:11, Romans 12:2)
  - b) Surrender and filling of the Holy Spirit (Romans 6:13, Romans 12:1-2, Ephesians 5:17-18, 1 John 1:9)
  - c) Growth - to eat meat and not rely on milk (1 Corinthians 3:1-4)
  
6. Categories of the will of God
  - a) Viewpoint will of God - What does He want me to think?
  - b) Operational will of God - What does He want me to do?
  - c) Geographical will of God - Where does He want me to be?
  
7. An example of the will of God (Acts 11) - the Guidance of Peter
  - a) Guidance through prayer (vs 5)
  - b) Guidance through the mind (vs 6)
  - c) Guidance through the word (vs 7-10)
  - d) Guidance through providential circumstances (vs 11)
  - e) Guidance through the filling of the Spirit (vs 12)
  - f) Guidance through fellowship and comparison of data (vs 13-15)
  - g) Guidance through remembering Scripture (vs 16)

### **HOLY SPIRIT: COMFORTER**

The Holy Spirit is the Comforter (paraclete = one called alongside to help)

1. He abides forever with the saints. (John 14:16)
2. He dwells in the saints and is known by them. (John 14:17)
3. He teaches the saints. (John 14:26)
4. He imparts hope. (Romans 15:13, Galatians 5:5)
5. He gives us the love of God. (Romans 5:3-5)



6. He testifies of Christ. (John 15:26)
7. He communicates joy to the saints. (Romans 14:17, Galatians 5:22, 1 Thessalonians 1:6)
8. He edifies the church. (Acts 9:31)

**HOLY SPIRIT: TEACHER [See page 11 above]**

**GIFTS: SPIRITUAL GIFTS**

1. Three general passages which list spiritual gifts (Ephesians 4:11, 1 Corinthians 12:28-30, Romans 12:3-8).
2. The purpose of spiritual gifts is to serve and build up the church (Ephesians 4:8-13)
3. The gifts are given by the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation (1 Corinthians 12)
4. Some gifts were temporary (1 Corinthians 13:8-10) and others permanent (1 Corinthians 12:28 cf. 1 Corinthians 13:8)
5. A temporary gift was one used before the canon of scripture was completed. The purpose of temporary gifts was to function in the place of a completed canon of scripture, (1 Corinthians 13:8-10), until the death of the last apostle.
6. The operation of a spiritual gift depends entirely on the filling of the Holy Spirit to be effective (Acts 2:4)

**SECTION E – AGES OF WORLD HISTORY**

**LESSON 28 – DISPENSATIONS**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
28	Dispensations	Ephesians 3:1-5	Dispensations

**Definition**

A dispensation is biblical term, and is defined as a period of world history from God's viewpoint; a period of "stewardship" for a group to operate under God's specific instructions for that period. It is a period of time within human history during which God's dealings with man has significant differences compared with other times.

This is a subject which generates a lot of heat from reformed theologians. Because it generates heat a lot of believers avoid it, but that is not the biblical way. We are called to study honestly the whole counsel of God's Word and avoid nothing. The subject is a biblical subject as shown in Ephesians. What we need to do is to see what God reveals about the subject, not what Reformed theologians say, nor what Dallas Seminary says!

The word "dispensation" is used because it is the English translation of the Greek word "oikonomia", which means a period of administration, or stewardship. It is firstly a word that describes a period of time when a people group is put in charge of things in God's economy, and at a later time the responsibility before the Lord is passed, with new instructions, from one to another.

**Firstly**, a concept of a dispensation is never to be forced onto history. The Scriptures show where the divisions come, we should not make our own divisions. In the biblical record God makes the distinctions; we simply recognize them.

It is **secondly** a spiritual category not a racial, political, or social one. There are spiritual dispensations and also political ages. In the middle of the Jewish dispensation, half way between David and the Cross, we have the so called "Age of the Gentiles" beginning in 605 BC, a new political phenomena, but the dispensation remains the same. The age of the Gentiles is the period of Gentile nation dominance, and we still live in that period of history, but now spiritually we are in the Church Age/Dispensation.

**Stewardship**

In every part of history there are a group of people who are responsible to God for his Word and Plan, and who stand as "his people" in the world at that time. These are those who are held responsible by God for carrying the torch of doctrinal truth. This torch comes from Israel to the Church at Pentecost, and eventually will go back to Israel again when the Church is removed from the earth at the Rapture. As we will see later the Tribulation Period is actually a re-starting of Israel's Age.

There are a number of things that do not change as ages/dispensations change however, salvation being one. Salvation is always by grace through faith, and this was the same for Adam, Moses, David, and is still the same today. The way we express our faith has changed, as we no longer cut lamb's throats on the altar in our churches. Each "Dispensation" has its own way to express faith, but the object remains the same – the person and work of the Saviour. There is a different way to express our faith today, but the object of faith remains the same, as we see that Christ was the lamb that died once and for all for our sins.

In Israel the believers grew through the application of the Mosaic Law, through sacrifices and the celebrating of the holy days, whereas we grow by the taking in of Bible doctrine and growing in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ given under the power of the Holy Spirit.

Major changes have occurred even from the Patriarchs to the Law at Sinai, then with the Law giving way to the Church at Pentecost. The family altar was changed to the national altar at Sinai, with its specialized priesthood, a specialized tabernacle and law that complemented it. These are important milestones in human history and they mark changes in what the bible calls dispensations. Don't hear and follow men; hear God's Word on this subject and walk with Jesus in understanding history.

If you ignore this subject you are robbing yourself of a major tool in Bible study, and an important aspect of biblical history. Unless you see the changes that have occurred you are not going to be able to rightly divide the Word of Truth knowing what verses apply to you and what applied in an earlier, or a future time period. **2 Timothy 2:15-16, 3:14-17**. In reformed theology the theologians deny dispensations as a theological concept, but they practice it in their services; for they no longer kill a lamb on the table/altar at the front of the church, which they would be obliged to do if the Age of Israel was still in place.

We can see that God's Eternal Plan has unfolded in stages through space-time, but all need to be studied and understood. "Dispensationalists" who are Biblical do not cut out passages from the Bible and throw them away. It is a matter of ascertaining where we are in relation to this unfolding plan of God and working in accordance with the rules that govern our age/stage in the unfolding drama of redemption/history. Not all practices of the past are legitimately applied today. For instance if you applied Leviticus 2 to today you would build an altar and start cutting lamb's throats. The reason we do not do that nowadays is because we are living in the age **after** the Cross/Resurrection, Ascension, Cession, and Pentecost. A new age/dispensation has dawned with new methods/modes of faith expression to express the same saving faith that Moses did.

Each epoch or dispensation has a different test and expression of faith. In every period of history man is found wanting, needing God's grace, mercy and faith provisions, whether it is perfect environment or not. In all the ages there are tests that people fail. In the garden it was the tree, in the Age of Israel it was the Law, during the Church Age it is the Cross and our facing our sin.

It is essential that we orientate ourselves to our age in history. It is important to understand that history has a termination point and is going to end in due course. Everything is part of God's plan that is going somewhere. You cannot read Genesis through Revelation without the idea that God has a plan, and it is going to work out to the glory of the Lord Jesus eternally.

By knowing your area in history you know where you stand and where others in the past stand. You can also be aware of the spiritual climate in which you live. Since the Cross there has been an increase in intensity of Satanic activity, for he knows his days are numbered, and unless you understand the assets that you have, and the promises that have been given to you in your age/dispensation of the church, you are going to be a casualty in the angelic conflict. **James 4:7-10, Revelation 12:12**.

When you realise where you are and then go back into previous dispensations and see how it was for people in those times you will start to become a theologian. At the time of Galileo, when he said that the earth was not the centre of the universe the foolish church leaders rejected truth because they thought of themselves as more important than they really were. With a correct understanding of the various dispensations however the understanding of them will put you in your place and humility and appropriate service will be the result.

We are royal priests, and members of the Royal Family of God, in the Church Age – and this dignity of position has never been enjoyed by believers before. **1 Peter 2:9-10**. We are not the "be all and the end all" but we are the climax of history. There needs to be right orientation towards believers in past history, and to those in the future. True theology should make you humble and thankful. This is the difference between theology in Spirit and in truth, and the theology from books and manuscripts. Biblical theology will tend towards Holy Spirit filled worship and work, never divisive arguments.

Some Christians have claimed promises which they have had no right to claim. For example the old Afrikaner claim to South Africa was the misapplication of the conquest of Canaan by Joshua. As they crossed the Orange River they believed that they were crossing the Jordan and they claimed the land and killed the Canaanites who were there, in the form of the black inhabitants. This was the theological premise which created the Orange Free State and the Transvaal. It was false theology, and today thankfully has been set aside, with Black and White serving the Lord together as royal family in a new South Africa.

This was a false application of a passage of Scripture which was for Israelites, and not for members of the Church. As another example there were things that Noah was told to apply which are still applicable today whilst there are some that are not. The altar and sacrifice are not, but meat eating is. Learning to make the right distinctions and applications in accord with your place in God's unfolding drama of redemption is what theology is all about.

Both the hyper dispensationalist and the non dispensationalist wrongly divide the word of truth, and Satan tries to get people off

this narrow road to the truth. If the enemy can get us applying the wrong passages into our life, or stop the true application of a passage, then he has won, for we are distracted and off the path of God for us in our time and stage of history.

The Three principles of Biblical Dispensational application are -

[a] The Principle of literal interpretation - where the Lord chose to speak to us using language, it should be interpreted using the normal standards and protocols of the grammar of the time of the revelation.

[b] A belief in progressive revelation over the ages, unfolding more and more details and completing his written revelation when John laid down his pen in Ephesus around AD 96.

[c] Supersession - where the later revelation in many ways supersedes those things that were before, but does not eliminate it as instruction, it provides the new context for application.

For example – regarding the Mosaic Law - There is a trilogy in Galatians, Romans and Hebrews, that explains the shift from the Mosaic Law to the new dispensation of the Church. The Mosaic Law was superseded by the “Law of the Spirit of Life in Christ Jesus”. Previous instructions may not necessarily apply in the following period. As a believer in the Church Age If you are living at a level lower than what is required you are legalistic and living out of step with the time in which you should be living.

The estimate of the number of dispensations into which the Bible is divided can vary depending on how precise people are trying to be about the changes that have occurred (examine below). Dispensations are particularly important with your prophetic view. If you know what has happened in the past it gives you a much better appreciation of what is going to happen in the future. If you know what God has done in the past you can be confident of what he will do in the future.

Once you have, from scripture, seen what dispensations mean, you will tend to find that you have a different view of prophecy. From this study you will get a pre Millennial, pre Tribulational viewpoint.

**DOCTRINES**

**DISPENSATIONS**

1. General Scripture (Ephesians 3:1-5) Key words -  
 Verse 2 - dispensation - stewardship or administration.  
 Verse 3 - mystery - Church age.  
 Verse 5 - other ages - Gentile and Jewish ages.

2. Definition: A dispensation is a period of time expressing the viewpoint of God in relation to the history of man. During each dispensation God entrusts the spreading of the Gospel to specific people. Failure to fulfil their responsibility causes God to end a Dispensation and usher in a new one.

3. Human history is divided biblically into 4 Dispensations.  
 (a) Gentile or Family.  
 (b) Jews.  
 (c) Church or Grace.  
 (d) Christ or the Millennium.

4. In all cases salvation is the same - faith in Jesus Christ but due to the position of the cross varies in its viewpoint of the sacrifice from prophetic to historic.  
 (a) The Gentile and Jewish ages looked forward to the cross by means of animal sacrifices, the Tabernacle and Old Testament scriptures.  
 (b) The Church age looks back at the cross as an accomplished fact in history.  
 (c) The Millennial Age looks at the present person of Christ on earth.

5. Greek words related to time.  
 (a) Chronos - a succession of events - chronology - a history of Israel. e.g. reign of Saul, reign of David, reign of Solomon.  
 (b) Kairos - an epoch or period of time which is used for categories of times - dispensations.  
 (c) Oikonomia - translated dispensation - means to administer an estate, be a responsible steward of an important item.  
 (d) Aion - age - very similar to Kairos but allows for a break in an epoch such as occurs in the Jewish age with the Tribulation occurring after the Church age.

6. Diagrammatic layout of Dispensations.

Gentiles	Jews	Church	Jews	Millennium
Adam	Abraham	Pentecost	Rapture	2nd Advent

7. Responsible Agents for the Gospel.  
 (a) Gentiles - the head of the family responsible for the gospel.

- (b) Jews - a special race based on regeneration responsible for the gospel. The Jews are often called the sons of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, all 'born again' believers.
- (c) Church - a spiritual race based on regeneration responsible for the gospel.
- (d) Christ - the God/Man himself responsible for the gospel.

8. Civilisations

As a parallel system to dispensations are civilisations of which there are three. In all cases the civilisation starts with believers only and finishes with judgment.

(a)	Civilisation Pre Flood Adam	Post Flood Noah	Millennial 2nd Advent
(b)	Dispensation Gentile Adam	Jews & Church Abraham	Millennium 2nd Advent

We are thus in the Church Age dispensation and Post Flood Civilisation.

**DISPENSATION OF THE GENTILES OR FAMILY**

1. Scripture: Genesis 1-11
2. Limits: Adam to Abraham.
3. Divided into Three Sections
  - a) The Age of Innocence (Genesis 1:28-3:22)
  - b) The Age of Rebellion (Genesis 3:23-8:20)
  - c) The Age of Nations (Genesis 8:21-11:32)
4. Characteristics
  - a) One Language. (Genesis 11:6)
  - b) One race - the Gentiles (Genesis 11:6)
  - c) No written scripture
  - d) No missionary agency; every believer responsible for the gospel - particularly the father.
  - e) Means of salvation - belief in Christ. (Romans 4:3)
  - f) Time span - approximately 2,000 years
  - g) Major judgments - Noah (flood) (Genesis 7)
  - h) At death believers went to Paradise.
  - i) At death unbelievers went to Torments.
  - j) Priesthood - specialized - particularly the father.
  - k) The Law - no Mosaic Law.
  - l) Holy Spirit - assisted a selected few believers
  - m) Environment - perfect in the garden, progressively worse after sin (Genesis 1:31, 3:17-18).
  - n) Satan - In heaven and on earth.
  - o) Rebellion. Adam and Eve. Tower of Babel. (Genesis 11:1-9)
5. During this Age, God established four institutions for mankind to live by:-
  - a) Free Will (Genesis 2:16,17)
  - b) Marriage (Genesis 2:22-24)
  - c) Family (Genesis 4:1)
  - d) Human government and Nations (Genesis 9-11)
6. During this Age, Satan attacked these frameworks.
  - a) Free Will (Genesis 3) - the fall of Adam and Eve.
  - b) Marriage and Family (Genesis 6)- the angelic infiltration.
  - c) Nationalism (Genesis 11:1-9) - Internationalism in the tower of Babel.

**DISPENSATION OF THE JEWS OR ISRAEL**

1. Scripture: Genesis 12 -Acts.
2. Limits: Abraham to Second Advent.
3. Divided into Three Sections
  - a) The Patriarchs - Abraham - Moses.
  - b) The Law. Moses - Pentecost.

c) The Tribulation - Rapture - 2nd Advent.

4. Characteristics

- a) Length of Age - approximately 2,000 years.
- b) Means of salvation - faith in Christ (James 2:23)
- c) Written Scripture - Old Testament completed 425 BC
- d) Evangelists - The Jews
- e) Four Unconditional Covenants:-
  - i) Abrahamic (Genesis 12:1-3)
  - ii) Davidic (2 Samuel 7:8-16)
  - iii) Palestinian (Genesis 15:18-21)
  - iv) New. (Jeremiah 31:31-34)

These are fulfilled at the Second Advent, when Jesus, the Messiah returns to earth to reign as King.

- f) Specific discipline for failure to comply with Divine Direction include:-
  - i) Where a foreign country rules the Jews (e.g. Rome from 60 BC. to 70 AD.)
  - ii) Where the Jews are removed from the land (e.g. Babylonian captivity 586 to 516 BC)
- g) Major judgments - Babylonian captivity.
- h) At death believers - Paradise (Abraham's Bosom) (Luke 16:19-31)
- i) At death unbelievers - Torments (Luke 16:19-31)
- j) Priesthood - Levitical (Exodus 28-29)
- k) The Law - given to Moses (Exodus 19-24)
- l) Holy Spirit - assisted a selected few believers - eg Gideon, David, Samson.
- m) Environment - sinful.
- n) Satan - in heaven and on earth.
- o) Rebellion - Idolatry, rejection of the Law of God.
- p) Many languages -(Genesis 11:9)
- q) Many races of people (Genesis 11:9)
- r) Spirituality - resting in the promise of God. (Hebrews 3:17-4:12, 11:8-40)

5. The Jewish Age is interrupted at the crucifixion of Jesus Christ (Daniel 9:26-27, 11:36-45). Instead of accepting their Messiah, the Jews rejected and crucified Him.

God therefore has temporarily set the Jews aside and ordained the Church as His ambassadors on earth Romans 11:17-25.

When the Church is removed from the earth (known as the Rapture), God will re-institute the Jews as His ambassadors. This will last for a period of seven years (Daniel 9:26b-27), known as the Tribulation (see below), during which time the Jews will repent and call upon their Messiah. The Lord Jesus Christ will then come back to earth at the Second Advent to regather Israel and establish His kingdom on earth.

6. See "The Tribulation" below.

**DISPENSATION OF THE CHURCH**

1. Limits: Pentecost to Rapture

2. Divided into Two Sections

- a) Pre Canon to 100 AD Period of temporary and permanent gifts. (1 Corinthians 13:10)
- b) Post Canon - period of permanent gifts only where the whole Bible is complete.

3. Characteristics

- a) Length of Age - Unknown - but possibly about 2,000 years.
- b) Means of Salvation - Faith in Christ. (Acts 16:31)
- c) Written Scripture - Old Testament - Pre Canon; Whole Bible - Post Canon.
- d) Evangelists - all believers (Matthew 28:18-20 2 Corinthians 5:20)
- e) Major Judgment -- Nil
- f) At death (believers) - Heaven, face to face with the Lord (2 Corinthians 5:8)
- g) At death (unbelievers) - Torments, Hades.
- h) Priesthood - all believers as priests (1 Peter 2:7-10)
- i) The Law - grace, the law having been fulfilled by Jesus Christ (Matthew 5:17)
- j) Holy Spirit - indwells all believers (John 7:39, 1 Corinthians 6:19)
- k) Environment - sinful.
- l) Satan - in Heaven or on earth
- m) Rebellion - Apostasy (2 Timothy 3:1-6)
- n) Many languages - (Genesis 11:9)
- o) Many races of people - (Genesis 11:9)
- p) Spirituality - filling of the Holy Spirit (Ephesians 5:18)

- q) Every believer in union with Christ. (1 Corinthians 12:13)
- r) Every believer indwelt by Christ. (John 14:20)

4. The Church Age is not mentioned in the Old Testament.

- a) The Church was a mystery to Old Testament writers. (Colossians 1:25-26)
- b) The Old Testament Scriptures include everything such as the Incarnation, the Cross, the Resurrection, Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ. The Old Testament Scriptures then skip over the Church Age to the Tribulation, Second Advent and Millennium.
- c) Examples of scriptures in the Old Testament where the great parenthesis occurs are Daniel 2:40,41, 7:23,24, 9:26a,26b, 11:35,36, Hosea 3:4,5, Isaiah 61:2a,2b

**DISPENSATION – CHURCH AGE – INTERCALATION OR INSERTION**

- 1. The CHURCH AGE is not mentioned in the Old Testament. It has been inserted later by God.
- 2. Since the Church is a mystery it was not revealed to Old Testament writers. (Colossians 1:25,26)

The Old Testament Scriptures include everything such as the Incarnation, the Cross, the Resurrection, Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ. The Old Testament Scriptures then skip over the Church Age to the Tribulation, Second Advent and Millennium.

- 3. Therefore all doctrine pertinent to the Church Age is intercalated or inserted.
- 4. Scriptures in the Old Testament where the Great Parenthesis occurs are:

Daniel 2:40 and 41  
 Daniel 7:23 and 24  
 Daniel 9:26a and 26b,

Daniel 11:35 and 36  
 Isaiah 61:2a and 2b

The period of the great parenthesis is a period of the intensified state of the angelic conflict. It was not included in the Old Testament Scriptures because it would have confused believers of that age. They would have been quite probably envious of church age benefits such as the universal indwelling of the Holy Spirit, universal priesthood, indwelling of Christ, etc.

- 5. All believers in the period of intercalation are called into full time Christian service.

**DISPENSATIONS – THE TRIBULATION OR THE TIME OF JACOB'S TROUBLE**

- 1. The Tribulation is actually the last seven years of the Age of Israel (see above)
- 2. General Scripture (Revelation 4-19)
- 3. Limits: Rapture to Second Advent
- 4. Characteristics:
  - a) Length of Age - 7 years. (Daniel 9:27)
  - b) Means of Salvation - faith in Christ.
  - c) Scripture - completed Canon.
  - d) Evangelists - 144,000 Jewish evangelists (Revelation 7). Also angelic evangelists (Revelation 14:6-7)
  - e) Major judgments - a succession of judgments upon the unbelieving world (Matthew 24:21)
  - f) At death believers - Heaven (Revelation 15:12)
  - g) At death unbelievers - Torments, Hades.
  - h) Priesthood - specialised priesthood - Jews.
  - i) The Law - no Law (Matthew 5:17)
  - j) Holy Spirit - assists believers but does not indwell.
  - k) Environment - sinful - Antichrist and Satan rule the whole world.
  - l) Satan - in Heaven or on earth for first 3 1/2 years; cast down to earth for second 3 1/2 years (Revelation 12:9)
  - m) Rebellion - Armageddon, one world political and religious system
  - n) Spirituality- resting in the promises of God.
  - o) Three sets of Judgments - seals (Revelation 6), trumpets (Revelation 8), judgments (Revelation 15,16)

**DISPENSATION OF THE MILLENNIUM**

- 1. General Scripture: Many Old Testament passages, Revelation 20

2. Limits: Second Advent to Great White Throne Judgment

3. Characteristics:

- a) Length of Age - 1,000 years.
- b) Means of Salvation - Faith in Christ.
- c) Scripture - the person of Christ.
- d) Evangelists - the person of Christ.
- e) Major Judgments
  - i) Baptism of Fire (Matthew 3:12, 24:36-41)
  - ii) Last Judgment (Revelation 20:11-15)
  - iii) Destruction of Universe (2 Peter 3:7-13)
- f) Death extremely rare in the Millennium. Extended life span. (Isaiah 65:20)
- g) At death, unbelievers - Torments.
- h) Priesthood - Christ.
- i) The Law - no Law, Jesus Christ has fulfilled the law. (Matthew 5:17)
- j) Holy Spirit - universal indwelling of the believer. (Joel 2:28-29)
- k) Environment - perfect (Isaiah 11:1-9)
- l) Satan - chained in the abyss until the end of the Millennium (Revelation 20:2-3)
- m) Rebellion - unbelievers at the end of the Age. (Revelation 20:7-9)
- n) Spirituality - filling of the Holy Spirit (Joel 2:28,29)
- o) No human religion - Satan bound - no influence on the earth. (Isaiah 2:3, John 8:44 cf Rev 20:1-3)
- p) Israel -restored (Isaiah 35:3-10)
- q) Universal peace (Psalm 46:9, Hosea 2:18, Micah 4:3)
- r) Perfect government with Christ as King (Isaiah 11:1-5, Zechariah 14:9)
- s) Universal prosperity (Psalm 72:7)
- t) Universal knowledge of God. (Isaiah 11:9)
- u) Radical changes in nature - restored to perfection as in the Garden of Eden
  - i) Mankind loosened from the bondage of sin. (Romans 8:19-22)
  - ii) Sin has no adverse effect on nature (Genesis 3:17-18 cf Isaiah 35:1-2,7)
  - iii) Animals will lose their ferocity (Isaiah 11:6-8, 65:25)
- v) Millennium - begins with believers only.

**LESSON 29 – THE COVENANTS**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
29	Covenants	Galatians 4:21 – 5:1 Hebrews 7:1-12	Covenants

**INTRODUCTION - KNOWING OUR PLACE IN HISTORY**

Covenants are contracts between God and man. There are eight major contracts, or covenants, which have been progressively revealed from the Garden of Eden to after the Cross. Covenants characterize the dispensations and are the foundations for understanding them.

Dispensations are progressive and unfold in stages. Different dispensations = different covenants = different rituals. The only rituals we have in our dispensation are the Lord's Table and Baptism. In other periods of history there have been different rituals and different operating procedures for faith to be lived/expressed. Remember the object of faith remains the same, and faith is always by grace, but the way faith is expressed differs through the time periods.

In **Galatians 4:21 - 5:21** we see that it is important to get your spiritual life and your witness in the place that it should be. The major attack of the enemy is not getting us to commit gross sin (for your Old Sin Nature will do that), but getting you off the track; to make you live in a way that is not right for your period of history. Believers do not need Satan's help to sin; we all have Old Sin Natures.

Where Satan really attacks is in the area of distraction and time wasting. He can be depended upon to try to get you to put into place those things that do not apply now, and put aside those things that do. The Galatians had returned under an old dispensation, which did not apply to them as members of the Church. They were under a new dispensation with a new covenant in place. They were however going back and starting to live under the Mosaic Covenant again. Paul is saying here that they had been born under an old dispensation, but that it had passed away. They were acting like Hagar, in bondage as slaves, but now they were actually members of the royal family "In Christ". The message was clear - Do not go back to the old, stand fast in the area where Christ has set you free. **Hebrews 7:1-12**

This is a problem that continues today because some people will not differentiate between the dispensations and covenants and identify which rules/standards/practices apply to them now and which do not. Old Testament spirituality depended on the Law being kept, and Feasts being practiced, whilst Church age spirituality depends upon walking in the filling of the Holy Spirit and obeying the commands that come through the Lord through the Word, taught by the Spirit.

Before that time shifting Day of Pentecost, Moses was the one the believers followed, but since Pentecost it is the Holy Spirit who has been the guide. You need to get into the plan, where/when you live, and live with the changes, and not go back into something that no longer applies.

God's eternal plan is revealed in Scripture and centres in solemn covenants and promises that God has made. At least eight covenants are recorded, most of them being in the form of a declaration of divine purpose which will certainly be fulfilled. Here we are discussing the revelation of God's plan for mankind. It is not only to do with our salvation but pre-eminently His glory. History is the fulfillment of the eternal purpose of God.

### **Biblical Covenants**

With the Biblical Covenants you have conditional and unconditional covenants. Conditional covenants are those in which God's action is in response to those actions of man. It guarantees that God will do His part once man's part has been done. If the human part is not fulfilled God is not obliged to fulfill His part of it. The conditional covenants are the Edenic and Mosaic covenants.

### **Unconditional Covenants**

There are six unconditional covenants that are dependent on God's character alone and will be fulfilled.

### **The Eight Biblical Covenants**

[a] Edenic Covenant - Genesis 1:26-31, 2:16-17 - Conditional covenant with Adam. He had the responsibility to tend the garden and not eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Man failed and he was removed from the Garden of Eden. At the time he ate of the tree he died spiritually – and sin and death entered the creation.

[b] Adamic Covenant - Genesis 3:16-19 - an unconditional covenant where God declares what man's lot is going to be because of sin. We are still under the Adamic covenant, and all through history man will be, as it expresses and makes clear that the wages of sin is death. We are sinners and we need a Saviour. Other things that make this clear are: God tells Adam that he is going to die and earn bread by the sweat of his brow, and that humans will also have problems in childbirth. We also now have lordship of male over female, and we have basic authority systems in society itself.

[c] Noahic - Genesis 9:1-18 - an unconditional covenant that introduces new principles in human government to curb sin. This can be classified as the post-diluvian covenant, which we are also still under. This is the passage where you take vegetarians who do not believe that Christians should eat meat. They would have been correct before the Flood but not after. Under this covenant all meat and vegetables are available for food. Capital punishment is included as well for authority to use to eliminate evil people before they hurt others.

[d] Abrahamic - Genesis 12:1-4, 13:14-17, 15:1-7, 17:1-8 - an unconditional covenant. This is one of the great revelations of God considering history and contains profound prophecies. Regarding posterity he will have many sons. He is also promised a great nation and a promise of spiritual blessing which will come through his line. Messiah comes through him.

[e] Mosaic Covenant - Exodus 20:1-31:18- Conditional covenant given through Moses for the children of Israel. If Israel obeyed they were blessed if not they were disciplined. Leviticus 26, Deuteronomy 28-31.

[f] Palestinian Covenant - Deuteronomy 30:1-10 - An unconditional covenant dealing with the final position of Israel in the land. This has still to be fulfilled and will be during the Millennium. It is belief in this which is causing Israel to adopt the political posture that it does at this time.

[g] Davidic Covenant - 2 Samuel 7:4-16, 1 Chronicles 17:3-15 - An unconditional covenant which promised David a ruler who would reign over the Jews forever. This ties in with the position of the Lord Jesus Christ in the Millennium and the eternal kingdom. (If you get the biblical covenants in your mind clearly you will understand prophecy better. The prophecy given by God always fits in with the covenants.)

[h] The New Covenant - Jeremiah 31:31-33. These are two unconditional covenants here; one to Israel and the other to the Church. There could therefore be said to be nine biblical covenants. The one to Israel will be fulfilled in the Millennium. - Jeremiah 31. The New Testament part of the New Covenant deals with the Church and is given in Matthew 26:26-29, Mark 14:22-24, Luke 22:19-20, 1 Corinthians 11:23-24. Both sides of this covenant come from the sacrifice of the Lord Jesus Christ.

### **Theological Covenants**

These are two conservative schools of the interpretation of these covenants, or theological systems; the dispensational and the covenant theologians. We disagree with "covenant theology", which we believe leaves some things obscured.



In defining the eternal purpose of God, the Covenant Theologians have advanced the theory that it is God's central purpose to save the elect, those chosen for salvation from eternity past. Accordingly they view history as primarily the out working of God's plan of salvation. In developing this doctrine they have expounded three basic theological covenants. The basis of their theological covenant system is election, whereby the sovereign grace of God works out, and all of world history is seen as the working out of God's plan to save only some. We disagree believing in Unlimited Atonement within the Plan of God.

(Our view differs to Covenant Theology in that we see God's main purpose as bringing glory to his name. Remember as we discuss these things, that this is a disagreement amongst brethren, and so let us be polite, for we will be in heaven together.)

Their three covenants are:

- [a] A covenant of works, which is said to have been made with Adam, where Adam obeyed and did what God said.
- [b] A covenant was made between God the Father and God the Son in relation to the salvation of man in eternity past, a covenant of redemption. This is known as the divine decrees.
- [c] The covenant of grace in salvation with Jesus Christ as mediator.

While these concepts have truth at their heart, it is not the salvation of the elect which is the ultimate purpose of God's plan, although obviously it is a truth. The **ultimate purpose of the plan of God is to show His character/glory eternally.**

He does this not only by saving people but also by his relationship to, and what he does with, Israel, the Church, and the Gentile Powers who oppose him in history. Even the eternal fate of the lost will bring glory to God. The doctrine of election and predestination is the force behind covenant theology; these are reviewed from a biblical perspective below. Dispensational theology, however stresses as central the doctrine of the Character of God, and identifies the concept that God is not only sovereign, but there are other equally important characteristics which are not to be separated. Rather than the three covenants of the other group the dispensational theologian identifies the eight covenants, which do give the essential purposes of God, and includes the plan of salvation, always non-meritorious, by grace through faith.

The Basis of Covenant Theology - Covenant theology is the basis of the Dutch reformed theology as well as some of the Baptists. They stand on the basis of the fifteenth and sixteenth century reformers who did truly understand grace, but we believe they got sidetracked by their views of election/sovereignty.

It was the rediscovery of teaching of the books of Galatians and Romans which kick-started the Reformation. The Reformers emphasized the covenants and built a system on them but they did not discern the dispensations. Covenant theology has tended to go in two directions; it goes towards legalism or liberalism. Many of the denominations which have gone into liberalism have been those who have been based on covenant theology, and legalism based five point Calvinism.

Sadly Calvinism will tend to make you either a sceptic or a hard legalist if really understood. We are reminded of the Lord's words, "By their fruits you shall know them". (Matthew 7:15-23). If their life is not manifesting the fruit of the Spirit it is likely that the person is not theologically correct. If our behavior does not resemble the Apostles we are not standing in apostolic tradition and teaching. Jude 3.

The Dispensational theologian will agree that there are covenants, and that they are important, and that they are working out in history, but that the Covenant theologians do not go far enough and accept the dispensational shifts that have occurred. Now remember we do not break fellowship with those we differ with over these matters; we agree to differ and pray for the Lord's blessing on them.

### **The New Age Movement**

Another misuse of the covenants, albeit probably not a conscious one, is made by the so called "new age movement". They have the concept that if we eat vegetarian food and we think the right things we will eliminate war and evil, and people will live in harmony. This is a Satanic lie, but has been around since the beginning – the first murderer, like Adolf Hitler was a vegetarian. Genesis 4:1-8. It guarantees nothing! The "New Agers" think that they can get back to the Edenic Covenant, which was cancelled when man sinned. Before we criticize them in isolation we need to be reminded that it is just as wrong to be a legalist and to live under the Mosaic Law, which has been set aside, as 100% fulfilled in Christ.

We are all still under the Adamic Covenant. We are all sinners and need a Saviour. When Adam and Eve sinned and fell they were removed from the Garden of Eden. It is important to distinguish the covenants. Vegetarian Christians are either expressing a personal eating preference, or are theologically mixed up, as they do not understand which covenant they are in. It is very important for people to know where they stand in relation to the dispensations and covenants.

## **DOCTRINES**

COVENANTS

1. A covenant is a contract or agreement between God and man.
2. Some covenants are unconditional - God will fulfil them, irrespective of man's obedience. Other covenants are conditional upon man's obedience.
3. Christ is central to all of the covenants in Scripture:
  - a) EDENIC - Christ is the second Adam (1 Corinthians 15:45-47).
  - b) ADAMIC - Christ is the seed of the woman (Genesis 3:15).
  - c) NOAHIC - Christ is the greatest son of Shem (Luke 3:36; Genesis 9:23-27).
  - d) ABRAHAMIC - The seed to whom the promises were made (Genesis 22:18).
  - e) MOSAIC - He fulfilled this covenant (Matthew 5:17).
  - f) PALESTINIAN - He lived as a Jew in the land and will inherit the land
  - g) DAVIDIC - Christ is the King of the Jews and will rule forever (Luke 1:31-33; John 19:19-22).
  - h) NEW - Christ's sacrifice is its foundation and focus in the Millennium (1 Corinthians 11:25).

**EDENIC COVENANT**

1. The covenant in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 1:28-30; 2:8-17).
2. Main points:
  - a) To be fruitful and multiply (Genesis 1:28).
  - b) To subdue the earth (Genesis 1:28).
  - c) To have dominion of the animal creation (Genesis 1:28).
  - d) To eat the herbs and fruit (Genesis 1:29).
  - e) To till and keep the garden (Genesis 2:15).
  - f) Not to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil (Genesis 2:17).

**ADAMIC COVENANT**

1. The Adamic covenant deals with the fall and restoration of mankind and creation. When Christ returns creation is removed from its bondage. (Romans. 8:21)
2. Satan's means of bringing sin into the world, the serpent, is cursed (Genesis 3:14) and goes from being the most beautiful of God's creatures to the most repugnant. The brazen serpent raised by Moses in the wilderness (Numbers. 21:5-9) becomes a picture of Christ being made sin for us (2 Corinthians 5:21), the brass representing judgment; the serpent sin.
3. The promise of a redeemer (Genesis 3:15). The seed of the woman descends through Seth (Genesis 5:3-7), Noah (Genesis 6:8-10) Shem (Genesis 9:26,27) Abraham (Genesis 12:1-4) Isaac (Genesis 17:19-21) Jacob (Genesis 28:10-14) Judah (Genesis 49:10) David (2 Samuel 7:5-17), ultimately fulfilled in Jesus Christ (Isaiah 7:9-14; Matthew 1:20-23).
4. The judgment on the woman (Genesis 3:16) in four areas.
  - a) Increase in sorrow and pain regarding conception.
  - b) Sorrow in relation to children
  - c) The woman would be attracted to the man
  - d) The woman would be subject to the man (1 Timothy 2:11-14, Ephesians. 5:22-25, 1 Corinthians 11:7-9)
5. The judgment on man (Genesis 3:17-19)
  - a) The ground is cursed
  - b) Sorrow is inevitable in this life.
  - c) Man is to work for a living rather than having it provided (Genesis 3:17-19)
  - d) Man will eventually die (Genesis 3:19)

**NOAHIC (EVERLASTING) COVENANT**

1. The covenant with Noah never to flood the earth again (Genesis 8:20- 9:27)
2. The relation of man to the earth is confirmed (Genesis 8:21).
3. Seasons, day and night and harvesting confirmed (Genesis 8:22).
4. Human government introduced (Genesis 9:1-6).
5. A curse is given to the Hamitic races (Genesis 9:24,25) – but specifically to the sons of Canaan. The curse is broken always by salvation by any member of this extended group.
6. The Semitic races will be the source of spiritual wealth (Genesis 9:26,27).
7. The Japhetic groups will be politically dominant (Genesis 9:27).
8. The earth will never be judged with water again (Genesis 8:21; 9:11).
9. The rainbow given as the sign of the promise

**ABRAHAMIC COVENANT**

1. Abrahamic Covenant (Genesis 12:1-3) founds the nation of Israel
2. It is confirmed with Abraham with emphasis on the land (Genesis 13:14-18), the spiritual seed (Genesis 15:1-6) and its everlasting quality (Genesis 17:6-8).
3. It is an unconditional covenant - God will fulfil it. (God caused Abraham to fall asleep as He ratified the covenant alone Genesis 15:12-18)
4. The seven-fold covenant (Genesis 12:1-3) is fulfilled as follows:-
  - a) PROMISE "And I will make of thee a great nation.  
FULFILLMENT Jews (Genesis. 13:16; John 8:37), Arabs (Genesis. 17:20), In Christ (Romans 4:16-17, 9:7-8; Galatians 3:7,29).
  - b) PROMISE "I will bless thee".  
FULFILLMENT To Abraham (Genesis 13:14-17, 15:18-21. 24:35), To believers in Christ (Genesis 15:6; John 8:56)
  - c) PROMISE "And make thy name great.  
FULFILLMENT Abraham is renowned, not only in Christianity but also in Judaism and with the Moslems.
  - d) PROMISE "And thou shalt be a blessing.  
FULFILLMENT With the work of fulfilment of Abraham's seed, Jesus Christ, he was a blessing. (Galatians 3:13,14).
  - e) PROMISE "And I will bless them that bless thee.  
FULFILLMENT This is seen in the rise of many nations eg Britain in the 19th century, the rise of the USA.
  - f) PROMISE "And curse him that curseth thee.  
  
FULFILLMENT The decline of nations such as the Spanish Empire after the Armada, the fall of Nazi Germany, the fall of the Czars of Russia, the decline of Egypt at the Exodus. Scriptural examples:(Deuteronomy 30:7; Isaiah 14:1-2; Joel 3:1-8; Micah 5:7-9; Haggai 2:22; Zechariah 14. 1-3; Matthew 25:40-46).
  - g) PROMISE "In thee shall all the families of the earth be blessed.  
FULFILLMENT The whole world can be blessed through Jesus, the son of Abraham. (John 8:56-58; Galatians 3:16).
5. It is clear that the we should support the Jew as it is a sure means of enjoying divine blessing.

**PALESTINIAN COVENANT**

1. The Palestinian Covenant deals with the Jews controlling an area of land in the Middle East which was unconditionally given to Abraham. It should be noted that the Jews have never possessed the land as specified, but will do so during the Millennium. (Deuteronomy 30:1-9, Isaiah 11:10-12, Jeremiah 23:3-8, Ezekiel 37:21-25).

2. The Palestinian Covenant gives:
  - a) Dispersion for disobedience (v 1) (Deuteronomy 28:63-68).
  - b) The future repentance of Israel (v 2).
  - c) The return of the Lord (v 3) (Amos 9:9-14; Acts 15:14-17).
  - d) Restoration to the land (v 5) (Isaiah 11:11,12; Jeremiah 23:3-8; Ezekiel 37:21-25).
  - e) National conversion (v 6) (Romans 11:26-27; Joel 2:14-16).
  - f) Judgment of Israel's enemies (v 7) Joel 3:1 -8).
  - g) National prosperity (v 9) (Amos 9:11-15).
3. It is unconditional - God will fulfil it in his Millennial Kingdom, Ezekiel 40ff, Revelation 20.

### **DAVIDIC COVENANT**

1. Israel will have a king forever 2 Samuel 7:8-17.
  - a) A descendant of David in the Davidic line (v 12)
  - b) He will have a kingdom to rule over. (v 12)
  - c) God will provide a throne. (v 13)
  - d) The throne will be forever. (vs 13,16)
  - e) The Davidic Covenant is restated in (v 16)
2. The covenant has one condition - disobedience will be rewarded with discipline but will not cause the cancellation of the covenant. (2 Samuel 7:15; Psalm 89:20-37)
3. Discipline came with the division of the kingdom under Rehoboam. (1 Kings 12:16-20)
4. Discipline continued with the captivity of Samaria in 721 BC and Judah in 586 BC.
5. Since then the only King of David crowned in Jerusalem has been crowned with a crown of thorns. (Matthew 27:29).
6. The Davidic Covenant was confirmed to Mary. (Luke 1:31-33; Acts 2:29-31).
7. The Davidic Covenant will be fulfilled at the Second Advent of Christ when He will commence His everlasting rule with the 1,000 year reign of the Millennium. ((Luke 1:32, Acts 2:29-30, Revelation 20:4-6)

### **MOSAIC COVENANT**

1. The covenant between God and Israel, given through the Law of Moses (Exodus - Deuteronomy)
2. It was a conditional covenant - it depended on man's obedience (Deuteronomy 28:1,15)
3. It had three main parts that were indivisible (all had to be fulfilled – not just the first section):
  - a) Section 1 - The Commandments - proves that no man can keep the Law. All men are proven sinners, and therefore need a Saviour.
  - b) Section 2 - The Tabernacle and Sacrifices - Pictures Christ as the Saviour, the only sacrifice which can pay the eternal penalty of sin.
  - c) Section 3 - Social Code - Laws to preserve the nation Israel - law, hygiene, morals, taxation, etc.

### **NEW COVENANT**

1. The New Covenant guarantees eternal blessing under the Abrahamic Covenant (Jeremiah 31:31-37, Hebrews 8:7-9).
2. It is unconditional - God will fulfil it. "I will" (Hebrews 8:10,12) rather than "If ye will" (Exodus 19:5).
3. The New Covenant is said to be better than the Mosaic Covenant. (Hebrews 7:19; Romans 8:3,4).
4. Obedience is from a willing heart (Hebrews 8:10) whilst that for the Mosaic Law was fear (Hebrews 2:2; 12:25-27).
5. In the New Covenant all shall know God, from the least to the greatest (Hebrews 8:11).

6. The sins are forgotten under the New Covenant (Hebrews 8:12).
7. The New Covenant relies on the completed sacrifice of Jesus Christ (Hebrews 9:11-12).

## **SECTION F – ANGELOLOGY AND SATANOLOGY**

### **LESSON 30 – ANGELS**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
30	Angels and their Role	Matthew 22:30, 13:39, Matthew 25:31 1 Corinthians 4:9 1 Peter 1:10-12	Angels

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The Bible makes it clear that we are not alone in this universe and especially on this planet - we have other creatures here who are rarely seen called angels. Who are they? What is their destiny? How do they relate to us? This is a very important study. It is one of the more difficult ones because of its reflection on who Satan actually is and his policy, and many students find when they study him they have troubles! He doesn't apparently like us knowing much about him.

Many seminaries do not cover this subject at all. They believe in flying saucers but do not believe in angels at all. However this is countered in our world by an ever more obvious demonstration of the work of the operative fallen angels called demons. Satan's forces are less subtle in their work as we draw closer to the end of this present age, so more people are speaking of these things today in the 21<sup>st</sup> century than did ever before.

The angelic conflict is something in which we are involved, and to fight well in our age, so that we have an impact for our Lord, we must know our position and know our enemy fully. This is the power struggle between God and Satan, which God is going to win, that began before the creation of man. If you are a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ it is important that you know where you stand, how to stand, and what to do to be a victor rather than a casualty.

There is an increasing awareness of another dimension, which has been brought forward by the New Age Movement and by the Spielberg movies especially. From Star Wars and the like, the theology of many unbelievers takes a form that some sort of force is with them, a force of good. There is also a great expectation by a large number of unbelievers of extra terrestrials making contact with humanity. We must counter this new age deceived belief with the biblical truth.

We look here at the subjects, angelology, demonology, and eschatology. What we see on the move around us in the changing belief systems of our neighbours is a significant trend. Satan has a propaganda machine going at the moment, and those involved are preparing the world for something. In this regard it is important to teach proper biblical demonology, eschatology, or prophecy.

This area of theology will also be attacked by covenant theologians who will look down on it, and sadly in their beliefs will tend towards liberalism. While people may deny angels the bible makes it clear by their reported activity that they exist.

#### **BIBLICAL STATEMENTS ON THE EXISTENCE OF ANGELS**

There are over 300 verses in the Scriptures that refer to angels in 34 separate books ranging from Genesis to Revelation. There are 65+ references to angels in Revelation alone and 100+ in the Old Testament. If you believe in the Scripture you have to believe in angels as real creatures. Do not take your theology from the painter Rubens; who showed angels as fat pink babies with wings, or from Hollywood, or your own culture's pictures of them, but take your views from the bible, and let it correct your views.

Some of the angels are seen helping the servants of the Lord, opening prison doors. How commentators deal with angels in their commentaries often will give you an indication as to what theological viewpoint they have. A good verse to check out commentators on is **Matthew 22:30**. If you believe the Lord Jesus Christ is the God man, he will not tell you anything false. He refers to something that must be true, that the angels neither marry nor are given in marriage. The Lord believes in them, do you, or do you know better than Jesus? Was he just a "child of his time" as one minister said?

#### **GREEK AND HEBREW NAMES**

The word "angels" is from the Greek word "aggelos" which means messenger. In the Hebrew it is "Mik", meaning messenger from which the word Malachi is formed. In the Scriptures the word for angel or messenger can be either human or angels, and so we must exegete the passage carefully, keeping it in its own context.

**OLD TESTAMENT**

The Old Testament, which speaks of angels over 100 times, always presents them as real creatures. In the 34 occurrences of angels in the Torah they do things in character with their service as special messengers of God.

As examples, Abraham met and ate with angels Genesis 18, an angel executed judgment on Israel 2 Samuel 24:16, Isaiah refers to a seraphim, Isaiah 6:2, Ezekiel to a cherubim Ezekiel 10:1-3, Daniel mentions Gabriel 9:20-27, and Michael 10:13, 12:1, Zechariah mentions angels as agents of God [chapter 1] and in the Psalms 34:7, 91:11, 103:20 they are shown as the servants of God.

**NEW TESTAMENT**

The New Testament speaks of angels some 165 times with 65 references in the Book of the Revelation alone. This is more than any other book in the Bible.

The gospels attest to the ministry of the angels to Christ in His birth, life, resurrection, ascension, Matthew 2:19, Mark 1:13, Luke 2:13, John 20:12, **Acts 1:10-11**.

In the book of Acts we have them opening prison doors **Acts 5:19, 12:5-11**, directing Philip and Cornelius in ministry **8:26, 10:1-7**, encouraging Paul during a storm on his voyage to Rome. **Acts 27:23-25**.

There is also clear references to angels in the writings of Paul - Galatians 3:19, 1 Timothy 5:21, the writer to the Hebrews 1:4, Peter in 1 Peter 1:12, and in Jude 6.

**THE TEACHINGS OF CHRIST**

Angels were present to assist Jesus Christ after his temptation in the wilderness Matthew 4. He taught that human beings after the resurrection would, like the angels not procreate, Matthew 22:30, and that they would separate the good and wicked, Matthew 13:39, and will accompany the Lord Jesus Christ at the Second Advent, Matthew 25:31.

Even with this overwhelming Biblical evidence many different commentators will adopt the false belief of liberalism, that Jesus Christ either,

- [a] was accommodating people's primitive beliefs,
- [b] was a child of his times, was confused, limited or a liar,
- [c] really did not know,
- [d] was telling the truth, which of course is the fact of the matter.

It is of note that some, otherwise reasonably good commentators, will take one or other of the above four concepts. It is a subject that really separates biblical believing commentators from the "other" ones.

**ARE ANGELS RELEVANT TODAY?**

Are the angels still active? Is it important for us to study them? "Yes", is the answer to both questions if we take the Bible seriously. With the media you see modern man's fixation with super creatures so it is important to study the real super creatures to be ready for what the enemy is doing presently. Satan doesn't waste his effort on a subject of no significance, and he has put a great deal of media into this subject over the last half century. He is preparing unsaved mankind for something big.

**1 Corinthians 4:9** - Paul says we are here, upon the earth, on the stage; we are a spectacle for men and angels. **Hebrews 12:1ff** also. Both are watching us. **1 Peter 1:10-12** mentions, that these things, with which we are involved, the angels are interested in and are getting to know things through us. The angels are enthusiastically interested in all the features of God's plan. As Peter and Paul are discovering things, so are the angels – they are not omniscient.

**DOCTRINES**

**ANGELS**

1. There are two kinds of angels:
  - a) Elect Angels (1 Timothy 5:21) - those which have chosen to remain with God.
  - b) Fallen angels - those which have rebelled against God and followed Satan:
    - i) imprisoned ones (Jude 6, 2 Peter 2:4) - apparently active on earth prior to the Flood (Genesis 6)
    - ii) demons, currently active on earth (1 Corinthians 10:20,21, Mark 5:1-20)
2. There are various orders in the angelic realm.
  - a) Cherubim (highest order) -. (Genesis 3:24, Exodus 25:19-20) Cherubs were originally the defenders of divine holiness. Lucifer (Satan) was a cherub (Ezekiel 28:14)
  - b) Seraphim - (Isaiah 6:2). Seraph means burning ones.

c) Rulers, Principalities and Powers - can refer to human authorities, but usually refers to angels (and generally to fallen angels). (Ephesians 3:10, 6:12, Colossians 1:16). They control certain segments of the human race, they can control the voice and the mind. (Mark 5:1-20).

d) Ministering Angels

- i) Guardian angels. (Hebrews 1:14). Protect and assist believers.
- ii) Angels of the waters. (Revelation 16:5). Water is used as a prison. Abyss (Greek), refers to an underwater prison.
- iii) Angels of the abyss. (Revelation 9:1,11 ). An angel which has a special responsibility for the abyss.
- iv) Angel of fire. (Revelation 14:18).
- v) Angels of judgment. (Revelation 8:2, ch 15,16) - trumpets and bowls.
- vi) Watcher angels. (Daniel 4:13).

3. Appearance of angels:

- a) Angels can appear as human beings (Genesis 18:1-2, Hebrews 13:2)
- b) Angels are described variously as having wings, many eyes, many faces (Isaiah 6:2, Ezekiel 1) and often glow with brilliant light (Matthew 28:2-3).
- c) Lucifer (Satan) was the most beautiful creature ever to come from the hand of God (Ezekiel 28:12-17)
- d) Angels are NOT pink fat babies with wings, or red skinned creatures with horns and forked tails.

4. Named angels:

- a) Lucifer, son of the morning, was the covering cherub over the Throne of God (Isaiah 14:12). His name is now Satan, the accuser/slanderer (Revelation 12:10)
- b) Gabriel a messenger angel (Daniel 8:16, 9:21, Luke 1:19,26)
- c) Michael a fighting angel (Revelation 12:7, Jude 9) and guardian angel of Israel. (Daniel 10:21, 12:1)

5. Angels and Christ's Incarnation

- a) At his birth - (Luke 2:9-15)
- b) At his temptation - (Matthew 4:11)
- c) At his resurrection - (Matthew 28:2)
- d) At his ascension - (Acts 1:10)
- e) At the Second Advent - (Matthew 13:37-39, 24:31, 25:31, 2 Thessalonians 1:7)

6. Angels and Man

- a) Angels were watching at the time of creation. (Job 38:7)
- b) Angels were present when God gave Moses the Law. (Galatians 3:19, Acts 7:53).
- c) Angels are watching us now. (1 Corinthians 4:9, Ephesians 3:10, 1 Timothy 5:21, 1 Peter 1:12.)
- d) The elect angels rejoice whenever someone is saved (Luke 15:7-10).

7. Many times revelations from God were mediated through angels -

- a) The Law of Moses -, Exodus 3:2 , Galatians 3:19, Acts 7:53, Hebrews 2:2
- b) Prophetic announcements to Daniel - Daniel 7:16, 8:16-26, 9:20-27, 10:1-12:13
- c) Prophetic announcements to Zechariah - Zechariah 1:9, 2:3, 4:1,5, 5:5, 6:4,5
- d) Announcement of the birth of John to Zacharias - Luke 1:11-20
- e) Announcement of the birth of Jesus to Mary - Luke 1:26-38, and Joseph - Matthew 1:20-21

**LESSON 31 – ANGELS [continued]**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
31	Angels and their Role [continued]	1 Corinthians 6:1-6 Hebrews 1:13,14 Ephesians 3:8-13 Matthew 4:8-11	Angelic Conflict

**INTRODUCTION**

In **1 Corinthians 6:1-6** Paul is criticizing the Corinthians for taking each other to court and appearing before pagan judges. The problems should be settled within a church. In this passage he says that we are going to judge angels. Even the least astute of you in Christ ought to be able to judge between yourselves, he argues. You need to be Spirit filled, to be a good judge. In the end time you are going to judge the world and angels!

**ELECT AND FALLEN ANGELS**

The elect angels take great interest in you and are cheering you along from the stands of heaven, along with all the saved of ages past (Hebrews 12:1-3); the fallen angels also take interest in you because one day you will be judging

them. They hate you! **John 15:18ff.** This makes it very clear why demons and Satan are so antagonistic to believers as they know in the end that you are going to deal with them. Satan walks around like a roaring lion seeking whom he can devour. Lions only attack the sick or weak. Lions sit and wait for hours and will pick the weakest. Satan and his team hate us, and understanding the judgment, as they do, we can see why! As the local thief hates the local judge, so he hates us. Given this biblical fact this is not something to be ignorant of.

The name angel means that the individual is related to God's plan. God has a plan and these creatures are related to a part in it. They are keen spectators as shown in Hebrews 1, and 12. They are not only spectators but also actively involved in the believer's life. This is known from a passage on guardian angels **Hebrews 1:1-15**. We are not inferior creatures, in Christ, to the angels, but have superiority through our unity with Christ over all the angelic realm. We have the Holy Spirit in us, **1 John 4:4**, and so "greater is he that is in us than he that is in the world", but also, in Christ we have superior position to all angels and demons.

### GUARDIAN ANGELS

We are in union with Christ therefore we are positionally superior to the angels. Physically they are superior to us at this time and are more powerful personally, yet even here, through the power of the indwelling Holy Spirit within us, we have more power than they do right here and now.

That we are "heirs of salvation" is shown in many passages, and that means we are recipients of special provisions from the Lord. The angels are under His orders and when a person believes in the Lord Jesus Christ, it would appear from the Hebrews text, that the Lord allocates one angel to each believer at salvation as their guardian angel.

We therefore have a super creature with us, who is responsible for controlling the unseen spiritual environment about us, and making sure that we are protected in areas which we may not recognize as dangerous. We should remember that because the Holy Spirit is in you and we are in Christ and we have a guardian angel we are very well protected as believers, especially if we have our spiritual armour on. **Ephesians 6:18ff.**

Angels can materialize and disappear, and they have powers to work what man sees as miracles, and are from a different dimension. We, in union with Christ, are superior to them, and that is why they serve us. In Christ we are higher than the angels. He is seated at the right hand of the Father; an honour never accorded an angel.

We therefore, in union with Christ, have superior spiritual resources to Satan, Michael, and Gabriel. You are therefore in an unassailable position when walking fully armoured in the filling of the Holy Spirit. So if you are living as a spirit filled believer, you should be aware of your position in Christ and fully spiritually armoured, be serving in confident power. Are you as a spiritual believer in any danger from Satan? The answer is "no" while you walk obediently.

When the believer is out of fellowship they become "carnal" and technically an enemy of God, and can become a fool, and made a fool of by Satan. Knowing where you stand causes us to appreciate the angelic conflict. If you do not understand this, possibly you are a "sitting duck" for him to shoot, or are you a disobedient "turkey".

Confess sin, restore fellowship, and open the Word again and so leave the "target zone" and get back to service.

### ANGELS AND GOD

Angels are created and are therefore not in any way equal to God. There is not, in the scriptures, the Asian concept of Ying and Yang with both being equal. There is no possibility of Satan winning because of this. Angels do not procreate, so there are not little angels or cherubs as we see in some earlier European paintings.

Genesis 6 and Jude 6 show that they had, prior to the Flood, relationship with human women by being involved with sexual immorality. Those that did this great evil were chained up until the end for judgment. In the angelic realm however they do not procreate. From the reading of Scripture it would appear that all elect angels always appear as non-sexualized males. It is of interest that many demons have taken the form of women (pagan goddesses) to entice men, and if a "sexually alluring female angel" is seen, then it is a shape shifting demon for certain. There is no enticement or temptation from the elect angels, only specific information to be passed. The number of angels that were originally created still exists today. They existed before the creation of this present world as shown in **Job 38:7**.

The reason that man was made a little lower than the angels, is related to their fall, and our role in their destiny. They are watching us because their eternal fate is being played out by our choices in time; for if we, as inferior creatures, accept the Lord, then it proves God is just and right in judging those that fell with Satan. If an inferior creature can exercise positive volition and be saved, then these superior creatures could have resisted Satan's temptations and followed God also.

It appears that Satan argued with God after he fell, saying that he couldn't help but to sin and rebel, for that was the way God made him. Man, as a lower being, becomes the test case. The salvation of men proves Satan's argument wrong, and seals his doom. That is one reason why he hates everyone who believes in the Lord, for their



volition proves his culpability in the evil of his rebellion. An inferior condemns/judges him = he hates us with passion.

They were created holy and some fell. They have emotion, intelligence and will. These creature are created superior to man, they know the Scriptures well, and as they have existed for millennia are able to predict what man is going to do, but cannot read men's minds. Satan does not know what you are thinking. The great danger in this study of angelic creatures is to either under estimate, or over estimate their power and ability.

Though there are similarities between angels and deity, and angels and men, angels are a distinct class of beings. Like deity they do not die, like deity they are superior to men, but they are not omnipotent, omnipresent, nor are they omniscient, and in our position with Christ we are now superior.

Like both God and us they have personalities. They are spirit beings but are limited in power and ability by God. We are both physical and spiritual. Angels do not procreate as we do. Man is a "little lower than the angels", unless we are in union with Christ, when he becomes higher through this position in Christ than the angels. In union with Christ each of us is in a position to judge angels. **1 Corinthians 6:3, 1 John 4:4**. Through this union, and in Holy Spirit filled status, the believer is actually superior to the angels.

### **DEMON POSSESSION**

The whole area of demon possession is by invitation of the person involved only. Only unbelievers can be demon possessed and their possession is even then limited by their will. How can they get rid of the demons? By bowing before the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour. This is demonstrated by the man with thousands of demons living within him amongst the Gadarenes, who even though his voice was controlled, was still able to show his heart desire, and request to Jesus, by falling at His feet. Mark 5:1-17.

If you are dealing with a demoniac you don't talk much to the demon, you talk to the person and preach the gospel to them, rather than "exorcise" them. Dramatic exorcisms are, on the whole, more about Hollywood than about biblical theology. In Acts we see the genuine exorcism and it is totally different to those portrayed in movies. The demon possessed person may only be able to throw them self at your feet, but the demon possessed person can still exercise volition and faith. Do not touch demon possessed people until they reach out to you for salvation. Do not take on Satan head on; its not ever about you, its about Jesus. You need to recognize your position, recognize the unbeliever, and give him/her the answer to their problem, which is the gospel, and let the Holy Spirit win the battle within them. **You are not fighting Satan's demons, God is through the Holy Spirit within you!**

Much of the trouble within the dramatic groups who want to be "casting out demons", is that they do not understand the deviousness of the evil one. Satan is a great counterfeiter, and may counterfeit all the biblical gifts and if people seek power, and through pride, want great gifts, Satan is ever ready to provide an alternative to the bible while pretending it is Christian. Be biblical in all things and be safe from deception in this area. Remember the Lord's words in Matthew 7:13-23, as the "fruit" of being fooled by demons is immorality, addictive behaviours and worse. So when an exorcist introduces you to their fourth wife/husband and offers you a drink you can be reasonably sure they are "wolves in sheep skins", and they have been living off BBQ lamb for a while!!!!

Evil is very real, and it is something that needs to be understood. No one has the power of exorcism. Be careful of all who argue that it is about "taking authority". We are "given all authority", Matthew 28:18-20, but we operate under biblical orders! It is the Holy Spirit who takes on evil, and we must be filled in the Spirit to be active in this area at all. When the demon possessed person has been delivered they need biblical counseling for a significant period to get them going on the right track, but most of all they need systematic bible teaching to stabilize them as they grow away from their old evil path. Demon possession is always the result of choices about a life path and there is need for total life transformation, and only the Holy Spirit does this, and he does it through daily walking in the Word of Truth.

These are unbelievers who have gone to the pits and need to get stabilized, for at the root of their problem is often pride and other sin patterns that need to be broken in the power of the Holy Spirit, and with steady obedience to the bible over time. It is important to be stabilized through obedience to the Holy Spirit and the living Word of God, and fully know your position in Christ. Don't be impressed by the dramatic, rather be corrected by the biblical, and walk humbly before your God, in obedience to the Word, in the filling of the Spirit, and in worship, never arrogance. Fruit!!

### **CLASSES OF ANGELS**

There are seven classes of elect angels revealed. They do not "mimic the pagan gods", the pagan gods are demons and mimic them!

[a] Michael - the archangel

[b] Gabriel - the principle messenger of God.

[c] Elect Angels - 1 Timothy 5:21

[d] Principalities and Powers which seem to be both elect and fallen. There is an incessant warfare between the elect and fallen angels. These are different ranks of angels showing that there is organization in the angelic realm.

[e] Cherubim - these are the defenders of the holiness of God.

- [f] Seraphim - in Isaiah with a function which appears to be a worship function.  
 [g] The Angel of Jehovah who is the pre-incarnate Lord Jesus Christ.

**CATEGORIES OF FALLEN ANGELS**

There are two categories of fallen angels (demons) -

- [a] Those that are free to roam about looking for “targets” - commonly called demons  
 [b] Those that are bound and are in a compartment of Hades called Tartarus. These are mentioned in Jude and 2 Peter, and they are there because of offences in the past.

The organisation of angels is given in **Ephesians 3:8-10**. Paul is saying here that everything that has been revealed in the way of doctrine in the Church is to teach principalities and powers in heavenly places. Both the elect and the fallen angels are very interested in everything that Paul is communicating is a challenge to believers and a statement of fact as well. They are not all knowing but Paul says that what he is saying, they are paying attention to.

Paul in **Ephesians 6:10-18** gives us a description of the armour of God. The fallen angels are the implacable enemies of the believers. The protection we have is the armour of God so that we can be protected from the fallen angels. In the angelic conflict the Christians must be prepared for warfare. In Ephesians 6:12 we have principalities, powers and wickedness in high places. The fact of organisation is given in the fact that there are archangels, the chief princes. These are also given in Daniel 10:13 where the prince of the king of Persia. There is therefore much evidence of structures of a military type in Satan's army.

We have angels of the seven judgments, guardian angels of the seven churches, personal guardian angels. We are surrounded by the angelic conflict, which we cannot see but we can be aware of incredible spiritual pressure. We should pray and study the Scriptures daily, and daily/hourly put on the whole armour of God.

We do not know how many angels there are. From Matthew 18:10 there is an inference that the number of human beings as believers from the beginning to end of time is the same as the number of fallen angels. There are therefore many millions of fallen angels if that concept is correct. We will only know in the end – don't waste effort speculating now about something we cannot ascertain – a thing we will know here-after.

Believers must not think that they can have victory without any prior organised spiritual discipline. Such training is absolutely vital. You are called to fight as a soldier in the Lord's army. Most Christians should be court-martialed because they are disobedient to their commanding officer, His written orders in the Bible, and to the Holy Spirit, as they are not walking with the Lord. In addition they are often not obedient to the teaching of the under shepherd, the pastor of the church.

We must be feeding on the Word the Pastor is teaching. The enemy is organised, so we must be organised. You cannot go it alone in this battle. If you do the odds against you are overwhelming. You must be in communication with your Commanding Officer all the time in prayer, and you must stand shoulder to shoulder with Christians who are doing the same. Only then can the enemy be beaten in your area of the world. Team work brethren!

The church therefore must be organised, spirit filled, prayer saturated, and evangelistic. Satan is in the business of splitting and distracting churches. He is not interested in hotels and beer houses as much as churches, which he wishes to close down, split or immobilize. He already controls the beer halls – he wants the churches closed down or even better, immobilized by lack of biblical preaching. We must pray daily against him and walk in Holy Spirit power alone when facing evil.

**ROLE OF ANGELS**

The elect angels praise God, worship Him, rejoice in what He does, serve Him, appear before Him and are instruments of His judgment. Relationship to the ages or epochs of history, dispensations, the creation and the Garden of Eden is also of interest in this topic, so we will examine some of these things now, and many more through the Bible book studies on the Diploma Course.

When Abraham was visited by the three “men”; two of them were angels, one was Jesus. Genesis 18:1ff. At the giving of the law and at the first advent of Christ the angels sang with the shepherds and were observing the Cross. During the first few years of the church they were also active with such events as the freeing of Peter from prison. They will be active again prior to the Second Advent. Between these two event time-frames angels are still active but not as visible as they were in the first few years of the Church Age, or will be in the Tribulation period. As the days darken we may see much more of the work of the elect angels who stand by to help us, but be assured, they will do what the Lord requires of them to help us, we wont need to plead for their involvement. God's orders, God's Plan!

Michael is the special Arch-angel for Israel. There are many who are trying to influence the nations and their leaders. In Matthew chapter 4 with the Temptations Satan offered the Lord the kingdoms of the world and the glamour of

them. He could do this because his demonic influence controlled the nations of the world. Most of the leaders in the ancient world were under the influence of demons, probably very little has changed nowadays. Matthew 4:8-10.

If we examine politics today we have some politicians making some very peculiar decisions because they are under some sort of demon influence. The principle of the fallen angels influencing unbelieving leaders and the elect fighting them gives the principle of the guardian angel. This shows that God checkmates Satan everywhere he works and that His hand is on history. Even though Satan has the world generally in his pocket he is still constrained by God as to what he can do. The Lord is still on the throne and His Plan will work out – be part of it by prayer and Holy Spirit filled living.

### **JUDGEMENT ACTION OF ANGELS**

The judgment action of the angels; they announce judgment and execute it at times. Angels will separate the righteous from the unrighteous. It is also, of interest that the angels who are the protectors of the believers are also those who execute judgment on the unbelievers.

The Lord is either your Saviour or judge, and the angels are either your protector, or executors of judgment. We therefore have the relationship between the Lord and angels, the Lord and man, and man and the angels.

### **ANGELS IN RELATION TO THE CHURCH**

They help as ministering spirits; they have a communication function in Revelation. In Acts they aided in winning people to Christ, they presently observe us, whilst in Ephesians 3:10 they encourage.

Sometimes it has been reported that in the real missionary area, help for the believer is given by angels. Many missionaries have testimonies regarding angels. God chooses to employ the intermediate ministry of the angels from time to time. In Acts 12 the Lord released Peter from prison through an angel. When an angel is involved the Lord gets the glory, when the Lord is involved, the Lord gets the glory. Paul was encouraged by an angelic messenger.

The angelic ministry is a very important part of our life on the earth but most of our lives we are unaware of angelic ministry. It is very important that we take angels seriously and study the subject. The believer must be filled in the spirit and put on the armour of God. The super creatures were here before the creation of man in the form of angels. They are a lot smarter than us and are very active for both bad and good. The evil angels/demons can be manifest as “angels of light” in bodily form, but their “fruit” is they get the glory. 2 Corinthians 2:10-11, 11:13-15.

Because of the nonsense talked about angels in some churches, (such as one pastor telling his followers to paint crosses on the soles of their shoes to crush demons), many conservative churches do not tackle this subject. Do not be put off by these foolish people, for this study of angels is biblical and necessary.

We can expect to see great increase in demonic activity as the days darken ahead of us, perhaps in the form of what masquerade as “extra terrestrials”. Satan is devious and we must not under-estimate his lying deviousness. The demons presently involved in pagan séances are saying through their “mediums” that it will not be long before “real contact” is made. Keep remembering the Lord's Word, that, Greater is He that is in you than He that is in the world. 1 John 4:4. You have to have doctrine and have the armour of the Holy Spirit on for greater deception than we have seen to date will occur in the world soon.

### **DOCTRINES**

#### **ANGELIC CONFLICT**

1. There is an angelic conflict and it is intimately related to our presence in this world.

2. ETERNITY PAST

[a] Initially God created angels. At creation we are told that there was unity as all the angels sang in unison.

[b] Satan as Lucifer with the title Son of the Morning was the head of the angels. Isaiah 14. Ezekiel 28:12-15

[c] It is noted that the Lord Jesus Christ is now called Son of the Morning in 2 Peter 1 showing that the Lord replaced Satan as a result of His victory at the Cross.

3. FALL OF SATAN

[a] Satan became proud and attempted a coup d'etat against God in Isaiah 14:12-17

[b] When Satan fell he took one third of the angels with him. Revelation 12:9.

[c] The angels who exist forever therefore fall into two permanent groups

- (i) Elect Angels who remained faithful to God (1 Timothy 5:21)
- (ii) Fallen angels who chose to follow Satan who fall into two categories:-
  - (1) Imprisoned ones who were made inoperative at the time of the Flood (Jude 6, 2 Peter 2:4)
  - (2) Demons who are currently operative (1 Corinthians 10:20,21, Mark 5:1-20)

[d] There is therefore a spiritual warfare between elect and fallen angels, which affects the human race. (Ephesians, 6:12, Revelation 12)

#### 4. SENTENCE ON THE FALLEN ANGELS

[a] In eternity past Satan and the fallen angels were judged and sentenced to the Lake of Fire - Matthew 24:51

[b] It would appear that Satan appealed against his sentence and said "how can a God of Love sentence any of his creatures to the lake of fire?"

[c] The answer is in the character of God who is HOLY as well as LOVE. His holiness can only judge sin and rebellion.

[d] The lake of fire therefore was not created for man. Man ends up in the lake of fire due to his own negative attitude towards God.

#### 5. MAN'S ROLE IN THE ANGELIC CONFLICT

[a] This sentence which was given before man existed has not yet executed and will not be so until the end of the Millennium in Revelation 20:10.

[b] There must be a long lapse of time before the sentence is executed with this period being taken up with the whole of human history. Therefore the purpose of the existence of the human race and its relation to God can only be explained as a testimony to the angels.

[c] Through the creation of man God provides a clear legal witness to Satan and his angels of their sin. The whole of human history is to prove certain points to the angels. Things can happen in your life as a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ and these can only be explained as a testimony to the angels.

#### 6. FALL OF MAN AND VICTORY OF THE GOD MAN

[a] Man starts off lower than the angels. Hebrews 2:9 tells us that Jesus Christ made Himself a little lower than the angels.

[b] Although Adam failed to be victorious the Lord Jesus Christ replaces Adam in history and won the battle in His humanity. 1 Corinthians 15:22 tells us that in Adam all die, in Christ shall all be made alive.

[c] A new form of creature judges come into existence and will judge the angels 1 Corinthians 6:1-3

#### 7. SIMILARITIES BETWEEN ANGELS AND MAN

[a] Angels and mankind have a number of parallels with human free will being tested in exactly the same way as angelic free will.

[b] Angels began in innocence and full obedience to God (Job 38:7 Ezekiel 28:14-15)

Man began in innocence (Genesis 2:25)

Angels sinned - rebellion of Satan (Isaiah 14:12-14)

Man sinned - rebellion of Adam (Genesis 3:1-7)

Angels are divided into two categories - elect or fallen.

Man is divided into two categories - believers and unbelievers. (John 3:36)

#### 8. ADAM AND FREEWILL

[a] God created Adam and Eve, to show Satan that mankind, created lower than angels (Hebrews 2:6-7), would choose to obey God. Mankind therefore, by a choice of freewill, would decide whether to obey God and be blessed, or to disobey God and be judged (the same choice that Satan had).

[b] A test was instituted for man's freewill - obedience to God or disobedience. (Genesis 2:16-17). Adam - and therefore all mankind - sinned and thereby rebelled against God. All of mankind, therefore, is in the same condition of sinful rebellion as Satan.

[c] However, God instituted another test of freewill for mankind - will they choose to return to God through Jesus Christ, or will they choose to continue in sin and rebellion (John 3:16, 2 Peter 3:9).

[d] Anyone who chooses to return to God will be saved; anyone who chooses to remain in rebellion to God will be judged in the lake of fire, the same fate as Satan (Matthew 25:41)

[e] Therefore, by the work of Christ on the cross, and man's freewill faith in Christ, God has vindicated His love to save and His justice to judge.

#### 9. RESOLUTION OF THE ANGELIC CONFLICT

Stage 1 - Salvation - by faith, man is saved and made positionally superior to angels (Hebrews 2:6-7)

Stage 2 - Christian Walk - by faith, the believer overcomes Satan (Ephesians 6:10-17)

Stage 3 - Eternity -in Christ, the believer will judge Satan and his fallen angels (Hebrews 2:8, 1 Corinthians 6:3)

#### 10. THE CLOUD OF WITNESSES

Angels watch the human race. (1 Corinthians 4:9, Ephesians 3:10, 1 Timothy 5:21, 1 Peter 1:12). Elect angels rejoice every time someone is saved (Luke 15:10)

#### 11. THREE BASIC QUESTIONS

The angelic conflict answers three basic questions:-

[a] Why man? Inside man is a soul with mentality and freewill which when linked together resolves the angelic conflict, (Colossians 2:14-15, Hebrews 2). The cross is the real victory in the angelic conflict.

[b] Why sin? Sin resolves stage 1 of the plan of God (see paragraph 9). At the cross sin was judged and the barrier between man and God was removed so that man's relationship with God depends on his free will. Every time a person accepts Christ, elect angels rejoice. In the garden man was innocent and all he had to do was stay away from one tree. Now man is guilty he has to come to a tree (the cross). (Genesis 2:17, 1 Peter 2:24).

[c] Why suffering? Suffering resolves the issue in Stage 2. Suffering involves the promise principle. (1 Peter 1:7-8, Romans 5:2-4). Suffering is designed for blessing and is a further blow to Satan. It is to demonstrate the love of God in a way that cannot be done in eternity as in eternity there is no more sorrow, pain or death. (Revelation 21:4)

#### 12. STAGES IN THE CONFLICT [SEE SATANIC ATTACK ON THE PLAN OF GOD]

[a] From the fall of man to the ascension of Christ the line of Christ and Jesus Christ himself were the target of attack. Once the ascension was a fact in history Satan was unable to attack the line of the Saviour.

[b] The resurrection, ascension and session of the Lord Jesus Christ caused intensification in the angelic conflict.

[c] Once Christ is glorified at the right hand of the Father the angelic conflict becomes intensified in the Church age.

[d] Every Church Age believer is now a target and because of this every believer has had special provisions made for him:

- (i) Indwelling of the Holy Spirit (John 14:17)
- (ii) Indwelling of Jesus Christ (John 14:23)
- (iii) Completed canon of Scripture (1 Corinthians 13:10)

#### 13. PROGRESSION TO THE LAKE OF FIRE

This explains the actions of the Lord Jesus Christ from the time he sat down at the right hand of the Father until the Last Judgment. Psalm 110:1 says "The Lord [God the Father] said to my Lord [God the Son], Sit thou at my right hand until I make thine enemies thy footstool."

[a] The first stage – Insurgency warfare – Pentecost - Rapture

During this time He calls out the personnel who will replace the angelic council members who have been condemned 1 Corinthians 4:8, 6:1-3, 2 Timothy 2:12, Revelation 3:21

The angelic council comprises God and all the angels as seen in 1 Kings 22:19-23 and 2 Chronicles 18:18-23

[b] The second Stage – Rapture to Second Advent - Confrontation

During this time the new members of the angelic council are evaluated in relation to their divine and human good, rewarded [1 Corinthians 3:11-15], they lose their old sin nature and have a resurrection body. The rebellious members, Satan and his followers are cast out of heaven Revelation 12:4

[c] The third stage – Second Advent – Victory Stage

Christ casts Satan and the fallen angels into hell for a thousand years and rightfully asserts His authority.

[d] The fourth stage – The Last Judgment. The Lake of Fire was created for Satan and his angels Matthew 25:41

Satan is cast into the Lake of Fire with the demons and the unbelievers. Unbelievers join them in the Lake of Fire because they have not accepted Jesus Christ as Lord and Saviour. The old creation is destroyed and a new heavens and a new earth provided by God. At that point all knees shall bow and the promise of making His enemies His footstool will have been fulfilled.

**14. THE BELIEVERS AND RESULT OF THE ANGELIC CONFLICT**

The result of the angelic conflict:

Stage 1 - Salvation - saved mankind is positionally superior to angels;

Stage 2 - Christian Walk - through suffering the believer develops his faith towards Christ to such an extent that he thereby shows the fallen angels the certainty of their doom;

Stage 3 - Heaven - In eternity the believer in his resurrection body will be physically superior to angels.

**15. CONCLUSION**

Through the fall of man Satan obtained control of the world though not necessarily control of mankind.

What makes it possible for man to live in the Devil's world and not be under his control? - free will.

By using The Word of God you can make decisions that are completely against Satan and his concepts.

Satan is the ruler of this world. (2 Corinthians 4:4, John 12:31, 14:30, 16:11, Ephesians 2:2)

However we have the Bible - the mind of Christ (1 Corinthians 2:16) We should know it and use it.

**LESSON 32 – SATAN**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
32	Satan – Personality and Power	James 4:7 Ezekiel 28:11-19 Isaiah 14:12-17 1 Corinthians 10:13	Satan Satanic Attack

**INTRODUCTION**

Believers have to recognize that Satan exists and know his personality and strategies. Many people believe in UFO's and ET's but they do not believe in Satan. Many people are foolish in this area, and foolishness can be fatal. Satan is a fallen angel and is the prince of the fallen angels. He does not like being studied, and you will discover that in the next weeks as we advance – increase prayer all of you! In military tactics it is very important to know two things, firstly to understand your own weapons and how to use them, and secondly to know your enemy, his strength and weakness. This is so that you may be able to fight him and defeat him. Thus the basis of military science is to know the enemy in order to beat the enemy, or at least avoid his strengths. That is the only reason we study evil – to keep safe.

**BELIEVER'S SPIRITUAL WEAPONS**

We have spiritual weapons in the form of the whole armour of God, which is described in **Ephesians 6:10-18**. We have to know Satan and his troops, the demons, who are his servants and our enemies. We must know our enemy, as with the days getting darker the position gets more difficult for those not walking closely to their Lord in the filling of the Holy Spirit. In quieter times of human history believers could stumble alone with nothing much bad happening to them, but not in our days. James and Peter urge us to be alert. **James 4:7-8, 1 Peter 5:6-11**.

We should distinguish carefully between the devil and demons. This distinction is quite overlooked in the KJV translation. The devil and the demons are two distinct groups – the leader of the evil forces and his followers, who are often as hate filled to each other as they are towards us. The Devil does not have an obedient crew..... as narcissists don't cooperate.

The doctrine of Satan is a practical doctrine that helps us to understand our utter dependence on the Lord and the Holy Spirit, within the Father's Plan, and it should drive us to prayer more often. Prayer is the only pathway of victory over evil in our life and environment. In **James 4:6-10** we are told to submit ourselves to the mighty hand of God, resist the Devil and he will flee from you.

If you know he is the enemy you can know his strengths and respect them, you can also know his weaknesses and exploit them. He is a coward in the face of a Bible believing, spirit filled Christian. The Christian must be Bible and prayer saturated. The Holy Spirit works through the Word, **John 14:16-26**. If we are going to face the enemy we do so knowing that he is a coward and will flee from the Spirit's presence. We need not fear Satan if we are facing him in the knowledge of God's Word and controlled by the Holy Spirit.

Note – that the armour of God's provision in Ephesians 6 is defensive armour. The Christian does not have a spear, but we have a sword. Even though the armour is defensive you are supposed to go on the offensive with it, but with the Sword of the Spirit – the Word of God. Note how many times believers are told to "Stand!" This is the military order to hold your ground – get down behind the "shield of faith", and sword drawn advance as ordered.

The Romans would receive the attacks of the enemy, and then when the enemy fired their arrows and spears at them, they would get down behind their shields. The Romans would take the attack, and when the opponents came in to finish them off the Romans would lower their shields slightly and counterattack with their short swords.

We have the shield of faith and the sword of the Word. We must know God's Word and use it in the power of the Holy Spirit. You cannot have Bible study without the filling of the Holy Spirit and you cannot have the filling of the Holy Spirit without confession of any sin, and powerful prayer. Many Christians are used to being docile, however in this area you must go on the offensive with the Word of God.

### **WHO IS SATAN?**

Satan is a person, and created as a personality. He exercises all the functions of a person; he has a will, a "disordered" (read evil) personality, spiritual life, strategies and hatreds, plans. He has a plan for you, and it is your neutralization. The strategies and plans of Satan are against the children of God; he seeks to frustrate/avoid the plan of God for your life.

There is no mention in the Scriptures about Satan attacking unbelievers because they are his already, but if he can keep them entertained and distracted he has no worry – they will walk the "broad way" to their destruction. He is a creature and therefore not equal with God. There are no equal good and bad influences as stated in the yin and yang philosophy. Satan is superior to us in himself, yet far inferior to God. As a creature he can only be in one place at one time. Too many believers believe Satan is more powerful than he truly is. In Christ you have superior power to him! **1 John 4:4**.

Although the enemy has a plan for you and I, God also has a plan for us, and God's plan is infinitely stronger. We are on the winning side. Christians are not losers. That is the power of God's Word when you know it and it is coming through you. It is very unlikely that we will see Satan however we are going to come up against demons, but may not realize it.

The Lord did not deny that Satan had power over the kingdoms of the world. He was desiring to sift Peter like wheat, Luke 22:31, he had power over Job in sickness, Job 1-3, but his power is limited by the Lord. God is in control. God does not get off His throne and share it with anyone, let alone the ex archangel. He has access to heaven to complain about us and seek permission to attack us, but he is not in a position of authority. Our life is hid with Christ in God. We are as secure in Christ as God is on his throne. Walk closely with the Lord Jesus and you are as safe as you can be.

When you are up against evil you must know in whom you dwell and where in the eternal plan you stand, and that you are secure. You need to know about eternal security, confession of sin, and the like doctrines.

While Satan has power in his own right the power will not crush the believer who is in fellowship - I Corinthians 10:13. The Holy Spirit does not leave you and is permanently in you. You can face anything if you know where you stand and remain in fellowship with God, connected to Holy Spirit power. "Greater is He that is in you than he that is in the world". **1 John 4:4**. Satan may attack important believers at crucial times, but only by the Lord's permission, and that very important believer, (Peter or Paul...) by walking close to the Lord, will gain greater victory.

### **DEMONS**

Demons implement Satan's policy at any one time but are not under very good control. The effect of the demons on Christians is evident from Ephesians 6 and 1 Timothy 4 where there is a difference of the power of demons over unsaved people and of those who are born again due to the fact that the Christian is indwelt by the Holy Spirit and has spiritual armour for protection. While the demons may possess an unsaved person they may only attack/oppress a saved person. There is therefore a difference in the duration of demonic power over those who are born again. Nowhere in Scripture is

any believer indwelt by demons. Full Demon possession is only possible for the unbeliever, as your body, as a believer, is the Temple of the Holy Spirit, but you may become paralyzed by your sin and therefore come under demonic influence and attack in your thought or actions, or in the actions of those that your sinfulness has drawn close to you.

**DEALING WITH SATAN**

If the Holy Spirit is in you, God is light and in Him is there no darkness at all. Psalm 119:105-107, 125-127, 1 John 1:1-10. You encourage your people to stand up to demonic attack, and not just throw your ink bottle at the Devil as Luther did. You pray, as it is the power of the Holy Spirit that deals with Satan. Do not wrestle with the Devil except in prayer to the Lord your God. Do not have any fellowship at all with any person who recommends that you do weird things to fight the devil – such a person is a distraction from genuine spiritual warfare.

You deal with Satan by claiming God's Word through prayer, and if he is physically in the room with you, you claim the surety of the Word of the living God, "Greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world". You tell him that if he is here it is because God has allowed him to be here and then invite him to go in the name of the one who will judge him and send him finally to the Lake Of Fire.

He is a coward - **James 4:7**, because as you turn to Revelation 20, and 21 and realise that he sees in these passages also that he is doomed, and he does not like reading that. If we trust the statement that, "we can do all things through Christ who strengthens us", then we can live like Paul lived. Philippians 4:13.

Some people are looking for instant spirituality. They are not prepared to live in God's Word, and "walk" in the filling of the Holy Spirit. Your fellowship must be real and it will always lead you to prayer. It is in fellowship through the Word in the power of the Holy Spirit that you have victory. Satan is a created being, he has power but he is limited, he has character but it is as flawed as is his personality. He has major weakness, which is pride, which is a cluster sin including such sins as jealousy and impulsivity. These flaws are fatal for him, as they are for those foolish enough to follow after him. He is doomed – remind him of that and stand fully armoured against him.

**ORIGIN OF SATAN**

Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 give good background to Satan. **Ezekiel 28:11-19** explains a lot about what we later read in Revelation 20 where Satan goes to the place called the Lake of Fire. Satan appears to actually start the fire of the Lake of Fire as he was the flaming cherub – his own fire of arrogant pride starting his eternal punishment. Satan originally had unparalleled function, covering, perfection and power, as he was in the throne room of God. He therefore fell from the highest point, and will end in the lowest, but his sole malicious thought is to draw all he can into the Lake of Fire with him.

In Ezekiel 28:13 we have the nine precious stones that make up Satan's covering, each standing for an aspect of his character.

These nine are also represented in the twelve stones on the breastplate of the High Priest. The three that are missing represent the two sons of Rachel, Joseph and Benjamin. Rachel represents Israel and thus God is seen protecting her children, the children of promise.

The origin of his sin is given in **Isaiah 14:12-17** - this notes the five "I wills". Satan's sin was pride and arrogance. He thinks he is unbeatable and in his arrogant pride he hates believers who by their very actions show that a creature with free will, even though they are lower than the angels, are able to choose for God. They therefore show that he is wrong by not accepting the Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour, and receiving the righteousness of God in the process.

Your faith in the Lord Jesus Christ demonstrates the rebellion of Satan for what it was. He knows that you are not going to spend eternity with him, and he therefore wants to make our lives as miserable as possible while we are on earth. As long as you are walking in the power of the Holy Spirit in the light of His Word you have nothing to fear from Satan. God is in control and can be trusted, but the enemy is deceitful. His power through sin and death was defeated at the Cross, and so his main tools now are distraction, distortion, deception and deceit.

Satan is also called the angel of death, but death was defeated at the Cross. God's Word states that we can do anything in the power of the Lord and that we have nothing to fear from the enemy if we continue in fellowship with the Lord. However we have to be aware of the hatred of Satan, the prowling lion who is looking for the carnal believer to devour. He can only attack the weak believer, as the strong believer will leave him for dead. As a pastor you must teach your people this. You are in a position of strength in spirituality; you must know your position, maximize it and live as winners.

**DOCTRINES**

**SATAN**

1. SCRIPTURE Genesis 3; Isaiah 14; Ezekiel 28; Matthew 4; Revelation.
2. BIOGRAPHY



Satan is the most beautiful creature ever to be created by God. He is an angel who rebelled against God before the creation of man (Isaiah 14:12-15). Originally he was the covering angel, the personal attendant of Jesus Christ in the very throne room of God. Unlike God, Satan is a created being and as such can only be in one place at any one time. He is attended by a vast number of angels (called demons) who have given him unswerving allegiance. After the creation of man, he tempted Adam and Eve to be as gods and to know good and evil by disobeying God. Satan then became the ruler of this world (Genesis 3:1-7). He attacked the human race in many ways prior to the birth of Jesus Christ. Throughout Jesus Christ's life, Satan attacked the Lord. Since Christ's victory at the cross he attacks believers. Satan still has access into heaven where he accuses the brethren. Halfway through the tribulation period Satan is thrown out of heaven (Revelation 12:7-9). This causes him to intensify his attack on the human race. During the millennium he is confined to the bottomless pit, allowing a perfect environment on the earth (Revelation 20:1-3). After a brief rebellion at the end of the millennium (Revelation 20:7-10), Satan is condemned to the eternal lake of fire which was created for the devil and his angels.

**3. EVALUATION**

Satan is called:

- a) The destroyer (Revelation 9:11).
- b) The accuser of the brethren (Revelation 12:10).
- c) The adversary (1 Peter 5:8).
- d) Beelzebub, prince of devils (Matthew 12:24).
- e) The deceiver of the whole world (Revelation 12:9).
- f) The great dragon (Revelation 12:9).
- g) An enemy (Matthew 13:28,29).
- h) The wicked one (Matthew 13:19,38).
- i) The father of lies (John 8:44).
- j) The god of this world (2 Corinthians 4:4).
- k) A murderer (John 8:44).
- l) The prince of the power of the air (Ephesians 2:2).
- m) The ruler of this world (John 12:31; 14:30).
- n) The ancient serpent (Revelation 12:9).
- o) The tempter (Matthew 4:3; 1 Thessalonians 3:5).
- p) A blinder of minds (2 Corinthians 4:4).
- q) A roaring lion (1 Peter 5:8).

**4. PRINCIPLES**

- a) Believers are in Christ and therefore in a position of supremacy over Satan (Romans 8:37).
- b) Satan was defeated at the cross once and for all (Colossians 2:14,15).
- c) He can therefore only use devices and schemes, trying to convince the believer that he can still win the battle against God.
- d) Satan, through religion, tries to get man to work independently from God.
- e) A Christian out of fellowship can promote principles proposed by Satan (Matthew 4:8-10; Mark 8:33).
- f) Satan will use Scripture slightly changed, or added to, to try and confuse believers and lead them astray (Matthew 4:3-10; cf. Psalm 91:11,12).
- g) If Satan the adversary is resisted he will flee from you (James 4:7).
- h) Knowledge and application of the Scriptures is essential in understanding the wiles of the devil (Ephesians 6:11).

**SATANIC ATTACK**

**1. Pre Adamic**

Original Creation	Genesis 1:1	Perfection and unity.
Creation of Satan	Ezekiel 28:13-15	Created the most beautiful creature, a genius.
Fall of Satan	Isaiah 14:12-15	"I will" 5 times. Satan sets himself up as God.
1/3 of Angels follow Satan	Revelation 12:4	
God's Judgment	Matthew 25:41	Lake of fire created for Satan and his angels.
Satan appeals		Man created with a free will to show the fairness of God's judgment.

Man having been created, Satan wages war firstly to get man to sin, secondly having had a Saviour promised to attack the line of Christ, thirdly an attack on the Saviour until He completed His work, fourthly to attack the Word of God and the individual believer.

**2. Stage 1 - Innocence-Sinfulness**

	<b>Scripture</b>	<b>Remarks</b>
Man created	Genesis 1:26, 27	God provides everything. One tree a test of free will.
Woman falls	Genesis 3:1-6	Through ignorance of God's Word
Man falls	1 Timothy 2:13, 14	Man chooses deliberately to go against God's provision.

Salvation promised                      Genesis 3:15

**3.            Stage 2 - Attack on the Line of the Saviour**

Object:- If Satan can prevent the Saviour being physically born he has proved that God does not keep His promise in Genesis 3:15 and is therefore not perfect.

Attack 1. Cain kills Abel (Attack on the seed of the woman)	Genesis 4:8, 9	An unbeliever kills a believer but Seth, another believer is provided for the line of Christ.
Attack 2. Infiltration of Fallen Angels. (Attack on the humanity)	Genesis 6:1-8	Infiltration until only Noah's family left as the humanity. Flood removes angel/men demons incarcerated in Tartarus (Hades)
Attack 3. Tower of Babel (Attack on nationalism)	Genesis 11:1 -7	An attempt by Satan to bring in the Millennium without God. The original U.N. God forms nations and confuses their tongues.- Tower of Babel.
Abraham promised the Saviour will be descended from him.	Genesis 12:1-3	Attack on the line of Abraham.
Attack 4. Pharaoh of Egypt.	Exodus 1:22	Using Pharaoh by ordering the slaughter of the male Jews Satan attempts to eliminate the Jews.
David promised a King descended from him will reign forever	2 Sam 7:12-16	Satan now attacks the descendants of David
Attack 5. Against the Kings of Judah	2 Kings 22:1, 2	Josiah, boy King of Judah divinely protected comes to throne at age of 8 after coup d'etat eliminates every other member of the royal line.
Attack 6. Against the Jews	Esther 3:6	Satan attempts to destroy the Jews using Haman. Haman eventually executed.
Attack 7. Against Jerusalem.	Isaiah 37:36	185,000 Assyrian troops under Sennacherib killed by God outside Jerusalem.

**4.            Stage 3 - Attack on the Person of Christ**

Attack 1. Possible stoning of Mary	Matthew 1:18-20	The nobility of Joseph defended the as yet unborn Jesus.
Attack 2. Herod the Great.	Matthew 2:16-18	Satan using Herod attempts to eliminate the Christ child by murdering all the young males in Bethlehem. Joseph takes Jesus to Egypt.
Attack 3. Temptation in Wilderness	Matthew 4:9	A sinner cannot redeem other sinners. Satan offers the crown (Millennium) before the cross. Jesus follows God's plan.
Attack 4. Temptation not to go to the Cross.	Matthew 16:21-23	Jesus follows God's plan although the cross was obnoxious to him.
Attack 5. Attempt to stone Jesus.	John 8:59	It was prophesied that the Saviour would die on wood. Stoning would have cut across this prophecy.
Attack 6. Attempt to tempt Jesus down from the cross.	Matthew 27:40	If Jesus had come down from the cross there would have been no salvation.
Attack 7. The drugged wine.	Matthew 27:34	Gall was a drug which if Jesus had accepted it would have impaired his free will and there would have been no salvation.

**5.            Stage 4 - Attacks since the Cross.**

Attack 1. Against Scripture.	Attempting to get false books accepted in the canon of Scripture. Liberalism and Moderism, Humanism and Evolution.
Attack 2. Revival of Roman Empire	Under Charlemagne in 800 and Charles V in 1500. Roman Catholic Church.
Attack 3. Massacre of Jews.	Hitler's final solution attempts to eliminate Jews. No Jews no Kingdom for Jesus to reign over. Inquisition, Crusades, Russian pogroms.
Attack 4. One World Government.	Revival of the Tower of Babel concept under the League of Nations and U.N.
Attack 5. Socialism.	Satan's millennium.
Attack 6. Persecution.	Nero, Reformation, Inquisition

**6. Strategy of Satan at the Present Satan's strategy is divided into 3 sections.**

(a) Towards unbelievers. -

To blind them regarding the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3, 4, 2 Thessalonians 2:9, 10)

(b) Towards believers.

He accuses believers. (Revelation 12-9, 10, Job 1:6-11)

He persuades the believers to ignore the will of God through disobedience (Genesis 2:17), through worry (1 Peter 5, 7-9), ignoring doctrine (1 Chronicles 21:1)

He seeks to entice the believer from the will of God. (James 4:7, 8)

He seeks to destroy the believer's focus by getting eyes on self (1 Corinthians 1:10, 11 on people (1 Corinthians 1:12) by getting eyes on things (Hebrews 13:5, 6)

To get the believer frightened of death. (Hebrews 2:14, 15)

(c) Towards the world in general.

Satan tries to deceive the nations. (Revelation 20:7-10)

Principle:- The more you know about the Word of God the more you will be able to be effective as a Christian. c/f. Jesus in Matthew 4.

**SATANIC ATTACK ON BELIEVERS**

1. As believers we battle three enemies; the Old Sin Nature (flesh) from within (Romans 7:18, 8:8, Galatians 5:16-19) and Satan and his world control system (worldliness) without. (John 8:44, 1 John 3:8)

2. We must know what Satan is up to and learn his strategies so that we might be ready and alert. (2 Corinthians 2:11)

3. Satan's most potent attack is to install false pastor teachers within the church who teach just enough false doctrine to sidetrack foolish believers. (2 Corinthians 11:13-15)

4. Satan attacks believers assurance of salvation.

5. He also accuses believers of sin both to God and to the believer in the form of guilt. (Revelation 12:9-10)

6. Satan wants us to trust our feelings; God wants us to trust His Word. (Romans 8:1)

7. Satan lures believers away from the Word (Genesis 3:4) whilst God wants believers stabilised upon His Word. (Isaiah 26:3)

8. Satan hinders believers from doing the geographical and operational will of God.

9. Satan will do all he can to hinder the believer's growth: (2 Peter 5:18)  
 a) by getting the believer's eyes off Christ and onto self, others or circumstances  
 b) by encouraging lust for material things over spiritual growth  
 c) by encouraging mental attitude sins.

10. Satan is the author of sin and the founder of fear. We are not called to fear but to faith. (2 Timothy 1:7)

**CHRISTIAN SOLDIER**

1. General Scripture Ephesians 6:11-17.  
This passage relates to the armour which the Roman soldier wore and analogises its use into the spiritual realm.

2. USE OF THE ARMOUR Ephesians 6:11  
"Put on the whole armour of God." Ephesians 6:11a. We are instructed to "put on" (ENDUO Gk) - this means "to clothe" - it is a command by God to the Christian soldier. We are to "clothe ourselves" or to "dress ourselves". "Whole armour" (PANOPLIA Gk) - the complete armour "of God" (THEOS Gk) true source of the armour is God.

The whole armour of God is given in Ephesians 6:14-17. It comprises:-

- a) The Belt of Truth Ephesians 6:14a
- b) Breastplate of Righteousness Ephesians 6:14b
- c) Boots Ephesians 6:15
- d) Shield Ephesians 6:16
- e) Helmet of Salvation Ephesians 6:17a
- f) Sword of the Spirit Ephesians 6:17b

**PRINCIPLES:**

- i) The Roman soldier wore all his armour for his own safety and protection.
- ii) When the Roman soldier was highly disciplined he ruled the world.
- iii) When the Roman soldier became degenerate the Empire declined and fell.
- iv) The Roman soldier was in the army 7 days a week.

**3. SPIRITUAL ANALOGY**

- a) As Christian soldiers we wear our armour for our own safety and protection.
- b) When we are highly disciplined in the Christian life we are very effective in our warfare.
- c) If we become degenerate or apostate our Christian witness and effectiveness declines and we become casualties in the spiritual warfare.
- d) The Christian soldier is in the battle 7 days a week. A part time soldier never amounts to an effective soldier.

"That ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil." Ephesians 6:11 b.

"to stand" (histemi (Gk) - to hold your ground. We are in a spiritual warfare and the purpose of the armour is to hold our ground against the foe. "the wiles (methodeia dia Gk) - tactics, cunning or fraud" "of the devil" (diabolos Gk). We therefore have the whole armour of God to enable us to stand firm against the devil's tactics.

**PRINCIPLE:** By learning the tactics likely to be employed by your opponent the Christian soldier is able to go on the offensive using the sword of the Spirit - the Word of God. (verse 17).

**4. THE ENEMY (Ephesians 6:12)**

"For we wrestle not against flesh and blood but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world against spiritual wickedness in high places. "

"Wrestle" - "the wrestling" (he pale estin Gk) hand to hand combat not wrestling as a sport. "not against flesh and blood" - not against other members of the human race, but against:-

- a) PRINCIPALITIES (arche Gk) Ruling demons.
- b) POWERS (exousia Gk) - Demons with authority, officers in the demon army.
- c) RULERS OF THE DARKNESS OF THIS WORLD (kosmokrator Gk) - world rulers, demons close to the seats of government such as the demons of (Daniel 10:13, 20).
- d) SPIRITUAL WICKEDNESS IN HIGH PLACES (pneu matikos poneria Gk) - the demon army.

Quite clearly our fight is against a spiritual foe. From Hebrews 2:7 we know that as human beings we are inferior to angels. Therefore in order to have success against superior forces we must have God's armour.

**5. BE PREPARED (Ephesians 6:13)**

"Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day and having done all, to stand. "

Since the resurrection ascension and session of Jesus Christ the attack of Satan has moved from the line of Christ to the

individual believer. Our dependence on the whole armour is imperative yet many believers reject part or all of the armour. There are many casualties as a consequence. We are again exhorted to put on the whole armour of God.

6. THE BELT OF TRUTH (Ephesians 6:14a, Isaiah 11:5)  
"Stand therefore having your loins girt about with truth."

The Roman belt was a wide girdle of leather worn around the waist from which hung the scabbard for the sword and loops for rations and equipment. The leather belt was supported by a cross shoulder strap studded with metal plates with thick leather strips hanging down to protect the lower body. The belt therefore was the basic armour on which the defence of the soldier was based.

PRINCIPLE: Our basic defence is the truth contained within the Word of God. The sword of the Spirit hangs securely to the believer by means of the promises contained within it. The greater our trust in the truth of God the greater our protection against the enemy.

7. THE BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS (Ephesians 6:14b, Isaiah 59:17)  
"and having on the breastplate of righteousness."

The breastplate (thorax Gk) was usually made of leather overlaid with metal strips. Shaped like a sleeveless coat it was in the higher ranks often covered with gold or silver. The belt held the breastplate firmly in place its primary function being to protect every vital area of the soldiers body.

PRINCIPLE: The righteousness of Christ protects us. We stand in his righteousness alone. He gave us his righteousness at the cross (2 Corinthians 5:21). Our continued protection through his righteousness is through the filling of the Holy Spirit (Ephesians 5:18) (See topic Holy Spirit: Filling of the Spirit).

8. THE BOOTS (Ephesians 6:15, Isaiah 52:7)  
"And your feet shod, with the preparation of the gospel of peace".

The boots (caligae Gk) were made of hobnail studded leather soles 15mm (1/2") thick secured with a leather tie over the instep and round the ankles. Good footwear is essential for the soldier with infantry still being essential even in these days of sophisticated armaments.

PRINCIPLE: In spiritual terms the feet are often analogised to service. The feet take one towards the enemy. The gospel of peace is a direct attack on the enemy. Peace in this context talks of reconciliation between God and man. (Romans 1:1 4-16, 2 Corinthians 5:18-20).

9. THE SHIELD OF FAITH (Ephesians 6:16; 1 John 5:4)  
"Above all taking the shield of faith wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked."

The Roman shield (thureos Gk) was shaped like a door being made of glued planks wrapped in canvas or calf skin, the top and bottom edges being protected by iron. The shield was the most active of the defensive armour carried by the Roman soldier. Loss of shield often meant death to the soldier.

PRINCIPLE: The Christian soldier's shield is walking actively in the promises and principles set out in the Word of God. If we do not use our faith we can become spiritual casualties. Using the shield of faith we can claim -the 7,000 promises for the Christian walk including Isaiah 41:10; 1 Corinthians 10:13; 1 John 4:4.

10. THE HELMET OF SALVATION (Ephesians 6:17a; Isaiah 59:17)  
"And take the Helmet of salvation."

With the exception of the standard bearer who wore a wolf's head, every Roman soldier wore a metal helmet (perik Gk) usually of bronze over an iron skull cap. This protected the most important part of the soldier - his head.

PRINCIPLE: Before a person can be a soldier for Christ, he has to be born again. He has to wear the helmet of salvation. One of the wiles of the devil is to make the believer feel that he has lost his salvation. If a believer loses his assurance of salvation he takes his helmet of salvation off and is totally vulnerable to the attack of the foe.

11. THE SWORD OF THE SPIRIT (Ephesians 6:17b)  
"and the sword of the Spirit which is the Word of God. The sword referred to is the machaira or Roman short sword. The sword represents the basic offensive weapon for close combat. It was only effective when out of its sheath.

PRINCIPLE: The sword in its sheath is potentially devastating but it is only effective when it is used to combat and defeat the enemy. We must therefore conquer using principles, promises and doctrines from the Word of God. Hebrews 4:1-12.

**SATAN'S "D"s**

1. He causes Despair and Desperation in people without biblical perspective. God's Plan and Purpose is our only protection against Satanic despair – that is one of his key tools to undermine the mental strength and stability of the weak unbeliever and believer. Hope in Eternal Certainties garrisons the soul against satanic doubts and despair.
2. Satanic philosophies make people passive rather than active in facing challenges to morality and ethics. He delights in paralysis in moral matters for then evil grows stealthily and is not challenged. Distress is the result of his work and further debility and mental illness as people get depressed by the things they cannot understand or dynamically face. Believers face distress with doctrine and prayer – depending on God's Plan and bible doctrine.
3. Behavioural Disorder and Personality Dysfunction develop in people without the dynamic moral compass needed to face the immoral social media and behaviours that we now face on the streets. Only bible doctrine gives stability when we face evil people, beliefs and behaviours. Holy Spirit empowered walking is all that keeps us safe.

**LESSON 33 – SATAN – HIS WORK AND DESTINY**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
33	Satan – his Work and Destiny	Revelation 20:1-10 Isaiah 14:12-17 Matthew 4:1-11	Religion The Cross and Satan Satan's Destiny

**INTRODUCTION**

Revelation 20 shows the fact that Satan's eternal and doomed destiny is certain, and is a fact that believers should know and be aware of. When you know your enemy, and that you are in a physical war, often you do not know who is going to win, yourself or the enemy, but we do know in the angelic war that God will win. In Revelation 20:1-10 the Tribulation is over and the Lord has returned. Satan has been imprisoned, and has no influence on the earth. Therefore the evil which came from him is not present during the Millennium. This is a very important passage for theology and prophecy.

The end of Satan is not that he is bound for a thousand years. It is after his release that he ends his reign of terror upon the earth. Note the sequence. At the Second Advent Satan is arrested and put under custody and placed in the bottomless pit. He is locked in Tartarus. He is released again to lead the last rebellion of mankind. In effect God uses him to sift the volition of the people of the Millennial earth, to give any who have no real love for God the alternative to select! Satan leads his last doomed rebellion and loses, and so finally is arrested and thrown into the Lake of Fire where the Antichrist and the False Prophet already are.

We can see from Revelation 20 that Satan is under God's control at all points, he is just deluded enough to think he can defeat God, and so are the people who join him down the ages. He is then in the Lake of Fire forever. He was never of equal power to God. If you are in Christ Jesus you are on the winning side. Satan is on the losing side no matter how powerful he is. Knowing his destiny gives you the right position for dealing with him in time.

**FALSE CONCEPTS ABOUT SATAN**

There are false concepts about Satan:-

[a] Some People do not believe that he exists. Some people think that his name is just a personification of evil. He however is a real creature, created by God.

[b] Others believe that Satan is the cause of all sin ("the devil made me do it" defence....) Satan is the author of sin. He is the author of pride, arrogance and rebellion. He is however more embarrassed about many sins than most people are. Satan's push is not to get Christians and unbelievers to do nasty things. His big push is polite, powerless, religion. He does not want people in the gutter. When they are in the gutter they often realise their need of a Saviour. Satan's biggest push is religion; to encourage people in their self righteousness, and so to rob them of the true reality of their sin. Satan seeks all means for people to be deceived into believing that they do not need a Saviour.

**DIVINE GOOD - HUMAN GOOD**

This policy of evil (worldliness) is Satan's major program, and is running parallel to God's plan of divine good. Satan is a great counterfeiter and is an angel of light but he is evil, and has a false philosophy/theology which he preaches as an alternative to that of God. Satan wants people to be arrogantly the same as him, to be independent of God. He does not want them in gross sin because then they come to a point in their life when they require help. He wants evil yet respectable people, who do not want God in their lives, and do not feel desperate enough yet to ask God for help.

Isaiah 14 shows the expressed purpose of Satan, which is to overthrow God, as shown in the five "I wills". To this end he will use his huge power and will weaken the nations, which will in the Great Tribulation period make the people of the

earth to tremble. He has made the earth as a wilderness and destroyed cities many times. He is absolutely overwhelmed with pride and delights in the destruction of men. He wants people to worship him and follow him instead of God. Satan is the founder of religion, and will support it anyway it pops up – anything other than real worship of God.

### **CHRISTIANITY AND RELIGION**

Christianity is not a religion but a relationship with God through Christ. Religion is us trying to impress God by doing good things, saying good things and being respectable. More people are led to hell by religion than by anything else.

Satan would prefer to have people in churches which do not believe that the Bible is the Word of God, and that do not believe you need to have faith in Christ to be saved. He would far sooner have people living in a liberal church thinking that they are far better than the fundamentalists. These people are following modern thinkers but they have pride as their god, and as such they are in Satan's camp; "by their fruit" we can identify them.

People do not realise what total power Satan has in a religious organisation. The hardest opposition that we will have to the gospel message will come from religious people not the pubs and criminal gangs. A lot of the people who wear dog collars here and now are on Satan's team. You have to realise where the enemy is. This is shown by the fact that most of the true prophets through history were resisted by the religious group of their days, the priests who were not doing their job, and there are always more numerous false prophets that preached lies than true bible believers.

Satan wants people to be like him; self centered, arrogant, and self sufficient. The liberal calls the Lord Jesus Christ, the "man Jesus", and say that they know more than He does, so did their father Satan. John 8:39-58. Satan thought he knew more than God and still does. Where is he going? - into the Lake of Fire. Where are we going, we are going to heaven. His troops and deceived mankind are going to join him. When you are being opposed by the religious crowd look at the Word of God and know where they are going. Do not be deceived by them, or be humbled by these people. Power the Word out and let the Holy Spirit loose, and get people praying for you. The enemy will then slither away.

Every group from the old, now defunct Communists, the Socialists and the WCC, which push the idea that you do not need a Saviour, indicate the source of their thoughts. Satan has a strategy. Satan's religion is a humanly acceptable one, with no salvation, no hell, no sin, no judgment. Analyze the theology of all opponents that you come across. If they are not talking about sin, judgment, and say that any Saviour will do, and there is no hell, then they are in the camp of the enemy. He is an angel of light – deception. **2 Corinthians 11:13-15.**

Many pastors in the church are helping Satan in this policy, knowingly or unknowingly. His policy towards the unbeliever is to blind the minds of them whilst to believers it is to confuse them. 2 Corinthians 4:4. There are many false issues and sidetracks, the "KJV Only" group is a side track, as it gets the focus off Christ and gets them out of churches where God has blessed them and splits believers who would have otherwise walked together in the giving of the gospel.

Anything that does that is not from God but from the enemy will distort, distract, and destroy. Satan promotes pride, separatism, legalism, and idolatry. He is a counterfeit right the way through leading people on the wide way to destruction; and he delights in making things easy for people to slide downhill. God standard is to take his yoke upon us and learn of Him. Satan's people are generally popular whereas God's people are not. However we know our destiny.

### **OTHER SATANIC STRATEGIES**

Satan has supplementary strategies. He is in power politics. The temptation of the Lord is indicative of this. Satan's push was to avoid the cross and take the crown without the Cross. Satan said that he would make the Lord the ruler of the world. The temptation of the Lord was to accept the counterfeit and become political/religious rather than spiritual.

He still wants Christian churches to be religious rather than spiritual, anything as long as they are not walking in the power of the Holy Spirit in holiness and truth. There will be great temptation from the enemy's people, for you not to teach the Word in the way that you do. They will ask you not to preach on sin because people are made nervous. Remember, you cannot have one foot in both camps. God will discipline you if you are half and half. Teach the Word and burn the apostate out of the church. Get some prayer warriors for support, and preach the word. God will replace those who have left or the Lord will lead you to a place where you are able to teach the Word without opposition within. Do not compromise with the devil or his people; either leave the apostates with their empty building, or preach them out of it.

The Charismatics are all too often being used by the liberals, who are themselves being used by Satan. I have personally known many liberal church ministers, who do not believe God's Word, but they love having Charismatics in their church as they add life to what would otherwise be dead. They try to feed them false doctrine and slowly undermine their biblical faith and so spiritually kill them, and all too often succeed. If you stay in a place which has false doctrine for long enough you will go under. You must, as a bible believing pastor rescue the Lord's sheep from the false teachers and get them to a place where they can grow, but do it by simply preaching where you are, and welcoming in "lost sheep". Do not ever go hunting for other's sheep – allow the Holy Spirit to draw in the hungry sheep – He will if you are feeding the flock.

**THE CROSS AND SATAN**

The Cross deals Satan's certain final defeat. The Cross is God's grace provision. Teach the Cross and Empty Tomb and let the spirit destroy the pride in man. Teach Bible doctrine systematically. This is the only thing that destroys Satan's lies. Cults go out on Sunday Morning, as they are looking for people who know a little bit about the Bible but not enough to tell truth from the counterfeit. Every time you teach the Word you are inoculating them against evil. You need to teach at least four times a week, an adult Bible study before church, the morning and evening church service and the mid week meeting. All of it should be systematic teaching. Saturate God's people in God's Word, or you fail to feed the sheep.

Satan hates the message of the cross and empty tomb; you teach this every time the doors open! He hates the truth, but your job is to keep on teaching the truth. Teach systematically and often. The sword of the Spirit which is the Word of God is your weapon against Satan. Let the Spirit loose through the Word and Satan will flee from you. If you find someone who loves the Lord teach them the Word. Help them on with their armour. You are going to build them up and they will stand with you.

If your church grows spiritually strong you have a whole lot of people standing with you. The fruit of the Spirit is one thing that Satan cannot counterfeit and he cannot stand against it. When meeting people who you are doubtful of always ask, what is their fruit? People may be able to do miracles, raise the dead and do other things that are amazing but may still be using the wrong power. **Matthew 7:15-23**. Do not trust people that do not walk in the power of the Spirit.

**DOCTRINES**

**RELIGION**

1. Satan's religion is a humanly acceptable one: no sin, no judgment, no Saviour and no Hell. Satan appears as an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:13-19,26)
2. Many pastors in the churches are servants of Satan's policy, knowingly or unknowingly. (Isaiah 30:12, Jeremiah 2:8, 2 Peter 2:1-10)
3. Satan's strategy towards unbelievers is to keep them blinded to the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3-4, Colossians 2:8, 2 Thessalonians 2:9-10)
4. Satan's strategy towards believers is:-
  - a) To confuse by false teaching. (Matthew 7:15, Romans 16:18)
  - b) To appeal to pride. (2 Corinthians 10:12)
  - c) To promote idolatry. (Habakkuk 2:18,19)
  - d) To promote legalism. (1 Timothy 1:7-8)
5. Satan's policy calls for counterfeit faith:-
  - a) Counterfeit gospel. (2 Corinthians 11:3-4)
  - b) Counterfeit pastors. (2 Corinthians 11:13-15)
  - c) Counterfeit communion. (1 Corinthians 10:19-21)
  - d) Counterfeit doctrine. (2 Timothy 4:1)
  - e) Counterfeit righteousness. (Matthew 19:16-28)
  - f) Counterfeit way of life. (Matthew 23)
  - g) Counterfeit power. (2 Thessalonians 2:8-10)
  - h) Counterfeit gods. (2 Thessalonians 2:3-4)

**THE CROSS AND SATAN [See page 69 above]**

**SATAN'S DESTINY**

1. Satan is called a "prince" indicating that he had his own power and followers. (John 12:31, 14:30, 16:11, Ephesians 2:2, 2 Corinthians 4:4)
2. Yet he is still a creature, and is still ultimately subject to God (Job 1:12)
3. At the cross, Christ defeated Satan, as his main power was through sin and death. (John 12:27-32, Romans 5:12, 1 Corinthians 15:54-56, Colossians 2:14-15, Hebrews 2:14-15)
4. God purpose with the world is not yet complete - therefore the enforcement of Satan's defeat will not take place until the end of the Millennium (Hebrews 1:13, Revelation 20:10)
5. Satan's final judgment is sure:-



- a) When he fell he was condemned, this was before (Genesis 1:2).
  - b) In the garden the certainty of God's judgment was announced. (Genesis 3:15)
  - c) The Cross was his final defeat. (John 12:31, Colossians 2:14-15)
  - d) In the midst of the Great Tribulation his access to heaven will be stopped. He will no longer be able to slander believers. (Revelation 12 :7-12)
  - e) At the Second Advent he is arrested and bound. (Revelation 20:1-3)
  - f) After the Millennium he is briefly released to lead the last great rebellion against God, and is finally cast into the Lake of Fire. (Revelation 20:10)
  - g) There are therefore four falls of Satan:-
    - i) from his place in eternity past to the earth with access to heaven.
    - ii) then that access is denied causing him to be restricted to the Earth.
    - iii) he is then contained in Hades for a thousand years.
    - iv) then his final fall into the Lake of Fire.
6. Satan has six abodes in his journey from the throne room of God to the Lake of Fire.
- a) The Throne of God - Ezekiel 28:12
  - b) The Mineral Garden of Eden - Ezekiel 28:13
  - c) The Atmospheric Heavens - Ephesians 2:2, 6:12
  - d) The Earth - Revelation 12:7-12
  - e) The Abyss - Revelation 20:1-3
  - f) The Lake of Fire - Revelation 20:7-10

**LESSON 34 – SATAN – HIS STRATEGIES**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
34	Satan – His Strategies	James 1:26-27 James 4:4 1John 5:4,5	Satan's strategy Satan's work

**INTRODUCTION**

Paul says that we should not be ignorant of Satan's devices. What is the main push by Satan in his strategy as far as Christians are concerned? It is to try and make sure that they remain carnal. Carnal means non-resistance to sin. Satan can have nothing to do with Christians who are walking in the Filling of the Holy Spirit. If a person is walking in the Word of God and walking close with the Lord in the power of the Holy Spirit they are in a place of strength. However if the old sin nature is running the foolish person's life, it is the basis of weakness, and like the cunning lion Satan attacks.

**SPIRITUAL OR CARNAL?**

At the cross we are entered into union with Christ and our lives are hid with Christ in God. We therefore have eternal security and we have spirituality in time. Unfortunately not many people deal with sin effectively and quickly, but rather than affecting the eternal state of the believer, the believer on earth spends most of their time in carnality with unconfessed sin in their life where they are useless in the angelic conflict.

Sin separates us from fellowship with the Lord, and if we even "regard iniquity in our heart, the Lord will not hear us!" Psalm 66:18. The carnal believer, sitting with their sin, cannot be used by the Lord, but they can be abused by Satan. A person can change from an effective person to a useless, even dangerous Christian, all they have to do is slide downhill spiritually into carnality through unconfessed sin.

As you remain Carnal (through unconfessed sin in your life) you start losing your spiritual perception, things that you knew once you no longer know, and you will finally accept false doctrine, false practice and you will be involved in Satan's policy. It can happen to great people of God. A carnal believer is a spiritually dead sitting duck for going astray.

Most of your major opponents in your ministry will not be unbelievers; they will be carnal believers who will oppose you and wear you down. Such people will go off on a false trail of dodgy theology. All Satan can do is to bring them under maximum divine discipline and use them to destroy other Christians. He is robbing those foolish believers of eternal rewards and earthly service and joy.

**WORLDLINESS**

Satan is a "spoil sport" who takes malice to extremes. His policy in the Scriptures is called "worldliness". Whenever you have worldliness referred it refers to Satan's policy of evil, which is opposed to God's policy of grace, and with malice targeted to the spirit filled bible instructed believers living within his reach of power. God has a policy for history. He has a policy for Christians, and it involves all that the Holy Spirit can do within us and through us.

Satan also has a policy that is working out in the universe, and his plan involves all that man can do, as he ignores God. This is the battle field of the mind that we operate within; what will control our mind, God's Word or human viewpoint? Will we serve the Lord and walk in his power, or will we allow satanic malice-temptation to distract us and lead us into destruction of witness and life itself?

The word translated "world" is kosmos in the Greek, and kosmos thinking is all thinking in accord with Satan's plan, and is rebellion against God and rejection of His plan. Satan's strategy is to side-track the believer into his policy which is referred to as "worldliness". Carnality is living in accord with, or in, sin/worldliness. When you get into this as a believer you think just like an unbeliever; you have become captured by the thinking system of "worldliness".

Reference to Satan's world, his "kosmos" thinking, occurs 185 times in the Greek New Testament. His viewpoint comes into churches and individual's lives by means of the false teacher or false book and gives an alternative to God's viewpoint.

Definition - the kosmos world is a system organised by Satan and headed by him, and leaves God out, but is a rival to Divine Viewpoint. There are many systems that have plans and dreams of what they want done. We need to discern the truth/falsehood when faced with every philosophical viewpoint, to be sure it is in accordance with Bible Doctrine.

There are two types of belief system; firstly those who are in accordance with God's Plan, and those who are running in opposition to God's plan. As a Christian we should be in harmony with the Eternal Plan of God.

There is a big battle going on all around you. Satan is not able to get your soul because you are already saved, but he can rob you of your ministry, your happiness, your peace of mind, your eternal rewards, and even your sanity. There are hundreds of Christians who crack up, burn out, and become ineffective in what they are supposed to do. The reason for this is because of their falling under the influence of "cosmos thinking", or worldliness, and then walking away from Bible saturated Holy Spirit filled living.

God wants you to think clearly and doctrinally in accordance with the Word of God and with an eternal life perspective. We should recognize our eternal destiny and the fact that we are to be with Him forever. We should see every person through the Cross – He died for them and cares for them and all we can do is focused on getting the message to them – opposing satanic rubbish that enslaves them. Satan wants you to lose your Biblical perspective. It is the Holy Spirit's power alone that carries you through these temptations in the Christian life and brings daily victory in the battle.

### **POLLUTED BY THE WORLD**

**James 1:26-27** - Here we have the concept of the Christian life and belief system as being characterized by being; "undefiled, holy, and unspotted" by the evil of the world system. In normal dealings with people we need to be on guard against satanic influence or thinking patterns, or we will be "defiled". This word had special significance for alertness in the ancient world.

In the ancient world they did not have many flushing toilets, the streets were the sewers, with the heavy rain acting as the cleanser, and it was quite common for the contents of chamber pots (small toilets) to be emptied from an upper window over people walking adjacent to the building after 9pm at night. Their clothes therefore became "defiled" - "spotted with uncleanness". The rich did not use to walk in the streets, they would ride chariots or horses due to the polluted environment. This is why we are told to avoid being covered in Satan's filth; we are to avoid walking in places of spiritual and physical danger. There are places not to go, and social groups not to be involved with due to their filth.

This is also why people took their sandals off when entering the home and washed their feet. What is in focus here is the contents of the chamber pot which you did not see coming. By analogy, if you are not looking where you walk you can become defiled and stink. You can be tainted by the world unless you walk carefully. However if you are alert you will be able to avoid defilement. As a believer in the devil's world you need to have your wits about you. If you surround yourself with evil and people who are thinking evil it will rub off on to you.

### **AMBASSADOR**

If you are in the devil's world, (which you are), you are an Ambassador for Christ there; you are a witness in an alien land. You are there to serve your king but you have to serve him in a way that you are not going to be contaminated. You guard yourself at the point of spirituality and carnality. It is absolutely necessary to feed on God's Word and deal with sin. You saturate yourself in God's Word so that the concepts of the Scriptures keep you from the concepts of evil that you are surrounded with.

As a pastor you should teach the Word four or five times a week so that your flock is prepared to face the things that the enemy can throw at them. If they do not concentrate on the Word of God they will suck up evil into the vacuum in their souls that ought to be filled with the Word of Life. If you watch pagan television four or five hours a day you are swimming in spiritual garbage. Too many believers are taking in the content of TV programs and internet, with their false doctrines and enticement to sinful lives, and they are in real danger. These programs are built on sin and often, if a Christian is

portrayed at all, it is as a fool or hypocrite.

But do not despair as you see Satan so active for Satan's plan is going to finish one day, and until then new preach the alternative to all who will hear. God has the only lasting and victorious plan and He is going to terminate Satan's policy. Worldliness will run its course and have its present temporary victories, but it will be over one day quite soon. We are on the winning team. Evil is not defeated **yet** but that is only because the final act is yet to occur.

It is written that Satan's policy is doomed. He knows it, he does not like it and that is why he wants to lead away the foolish believers. Please Pastor preach the truth often to help believers counter the influence of evil all around them.

### **NO COMPROMISE**

In **James 4:4-10** we see that the Christian must recognize that it is war and that he must not compromise with the enemy or the enemies' tools. We need to recognize his policies which oppose God's Word and put them out of our life. Life is too short to spend it in front of television watching programs based on anti Scriptural principles. We should advance in the Christian life. We should make our days count now. There is not a lot of time and every day counts. We need to recognize Satan's policy and avoid it. We need to recognize God's plan in relation to Satan and give thanks for it.

We are at war and we have to face that concept, the battle between the Christian and the "kosmos system". Enjoy the created world but do not love it. We should respect what the Lord has created, we can enjoy certain things in the world but we should not commit ourselves to it because it is passing away. Your car, house, possessions are all to be used and enjoyed, but as we do so remember that they are all passing away, just as we are passing away. Our love must be directed towards the things that last. Have a divine perspective daily towards things.

### **DAILY ORDERS OF THE BELIEVER**

The daily orders for the believer are as follows:-

- [a] 1 Peter 5:8 - Be sober, be vigilant, your adversary the devil walks around as a roaring lion seeing whom he can devour. James 1:26-27
- [b] Ephesians 4:27 - Never give place to the Devil
- [c] James 4:7 - Submit yourself to God, resist the Devil and he will flee from you.
- [d] Ephesians 6:11 - Put on the whole armour of God that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the Devil. Stay alert, resist; do not give into temptation or false systems of thinking.

### **PRINCIPLES**

1. Christ defeated Satan on the Cross and with it there is release from the penalty of sin.
2. Satan was strategically defeated but is still active.
3. Satan is now called the adversary of believers. He cannot destroy you but can undermine and destroy your witness if we allow him the chance.
4. When we are carnal we are re under the control of the Old Sin Nature and are therefore weak and are open to Satanic attack.
5. Testing of believers is not allowed to go beyond the dictates of the Lord - 1 Corinthians 10:13

If we do foolish worldly things we make ourselves vulnerable and then he/his demons can attack. He is not bound during the Church Age. Satan cannot indwell a believer or possess them but they can be beguiled, and so side tracked and made useless as a soldier in the Lords army. As a believer you have the Holy Spirit within you, and greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world. If you meet a person who is demon possessed you know that he/she is an unbeliever.

The solution to demon possession is the individual's acceptance of the gospel, not any casting out of the demon first. In this case you need to pray for protection and get people to pray that the Holy Spirit may convict the person involved. If the demon talks to you, then you should tell "it" to stop, because the Holy Spirit that is in you is greater than the demon and it is God's will that is to be done, not the demon's. In some cases the only way acceptance of the gospel can be shown is by the demon possessed people throwing themselves at your feet. We have not got the power to cast out demons that the Lord had, but in his name and authority we can give the gospel to the possessed person, and the Holy Spirit will release them when they express positive volition deep within their tortured possessed soul.

If you remove the demon without the personal conversion of the lost person then you have gained nothing except opening the opportunity for many more demons to indwell that person later. **Luke 11:24-26**. When the Holy Spirit enters the demon must go. It is the transforming of lives by the Holy Spirit that we want to see, for that is the work of the gospel. We are not here to cast out demons from people unwilling to accept Jesus, for then we simply clean the life out and open the door to greater evil later.

Satan is the most attractive being ever created and is seen as an angel of light and not the red skinned person with horns. We however, with the Holy Spirit, are in an invincible position if we stay close to the Lord. His most potent attack

is to get false teachers and doctrine in the church that has caused many to fall. There are today sadly very few mainline churches believing the Word of God and teaching it soundly, thoroughly and often. Satan is the founder of fear as well as sin. He will send people to oppose you, be prepared and stand in the strength and power and knowledge of the Lord.

**DOCTRINES**

**SATAN'S STRATEGY**

1. Believers are warned against him and his tactics. (Ephesians 4:27, 6:11-13, James 4:7, 1 Peter 5:8)
2. We must be ready and alert. (2 Corinthians 2:11)
3. Satan is a deceiver and a counterfeiter. He uses deception - not obviously wrong or sinful - but very subtle changes to the truth (Genesis 3:1). Remember, a counterfeit looks like the original.
4. Satan is described as an "angel of light" - often seeming attractive and "good". (2 Corinthians 11:14)
5. His tactics
  - a) Towards unbelievers.
    - i) to blind them regarding the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3, 4, 2 Thessalonians 2:9, 1 0)
  - b) Towards believers.
    - i) Satan seeks to hinder our growth and witness. (1 Peter 5:8)
    - ii) Satan will mislead into false doctrine and legalism. (1 Timothy 5:14-15)
    - iii) He persuades believers to ignore the will of God through disobedience (Genesis 2:17, James 4:7-8)
    - iv) Satan often attacks our assurance of salvation so that we doubt God.
    - v) Worry (1 Peter 5, 7-9)
    - vi) Fear of death. (Hebrews 2:14-15)
    - vii) He accuses believers of sin both to God and to the believer (using guilt). (Revelation 12:9-10, Job 1:6-11)
    - viii) He takes our focus off Christ by getting eyes on self (1 Corinthians 1:10-11), on people (1 Corinthians 1:12), on things (Hebrews 13:5-6)
    - ix) When we don't allow the Holy Spirit to control our lives, we open ourselves up to Satanic attack. (1 Corinthians 7:5, 2 Corinthians 2:11, 1 Timothy 5:14-15)
    - x) The Lord will allow Satan to attack a believer as discipline for unconfessed sin. (1 Timothy 1:20 cf 2 Corinthians 12:7)
    - xi) Satan cannot indwell or possess a believer, only beguile them. (Galatians 3:1)
  - c) Towards the world in general.
    - i) The World - Satan tries to deceive the nations. (Revelation 20:7-10)

**SATAN'S WORK**

1. Satan's sphere of operations among mankind. (Psalm 109:6-13)
  - a) Satan blinds mankind to the truth of the Word of God by means of religion. (v.7)
  - b) He has the power to shorten life. (v 8a)
  - c) He can remove persons from a place of authority (v 8b)
  - d) Satan can kill (v 9)
  - e) He can persecute children (v 10)
  - f) He can remove wealth (v 11)
  - g) Satan can turn people against each other (v. 12)
  - h) He can cut off man's posterity to the second generation (v. 13)
2. Satan as a killer
  - a) He has the power of death (Hebrews 2:14, 15)
  - b) Killed Job's children (Job 1:12, 18,19)
  - c) Motivated Cain to murder Abel (John 8:44, cf 1 John 3:12)
  - d) Often administers the sin unto death (1 Corinthians 5:5)
3. Satan as a source of disease
  - a) Was responsible for Paul's "thorn in the flesh" (2 Corinthians 12:7)
  - b) Produced illness in Job (Job 2:6-8)
  - c) Uses his demons to inflict diseases (Matthew 12:22, Luke 13:16, Acts 10:38)
  - d) Causes certain types of deafness, dumbness, paralysis and crippling effect by means of demon possession (Matthew 4:24, 12:22, Mark 9:17, 18)
  - e) When demon possession causes the affliction, the removal of the demon or demons produces an instant cure (Matthew 10:1, Mark 1:32-34, 6:13, Acts 8:7, 19:12)
4. Satan as an instrument of discipline

- a) Desired to discipline Peter (Luke 22:31, 32)
- b) Was authorised to discipline the Corinthian adulterer (1 Corinthians 5:5)
- c) Was called upon by the Apostle Paul to administer extreme discipline to Hymenaeus and Alexander (1 Timothy 1:19,20)
- d) May become involved in the discipline of ministers and deacons (1 Timothy 3:6, 7)
- e) Attacks through a believer's lack of forgiveness and orientation to grace (2 Corinthians 2:10, 11)

5. Satan as a healer

- a) Healing was a temporary spiritual gift before the completion of the Canon of Scripture (Acts 19:11, 12, cf Philippians 2:27, 2 Timothy 4:20)
- b) God still heals today ( Philippians 2:27)
- c) Since Satan possesses the power of disease he often counterfeits healing by the removal of demons (Matthew 12:24, 24:24, 2 Thessalonians 2:9, Revelation 16:14)

6. Characteristics of Demon Possession

- a) Loss of individuality: the demon-possessed person no longer has control of faculties of the soul (Mark 5:1-13, Luke 8:27, 9:39, 40)
- b) Abnormal behaviour:
  - i) Convulsions (Mark 1:26, 9:20, Luke 4:35)
  - ii) Violence (Matthew 8:28)
  - iii) Abnormal strength (Mark 5:4, Luke 8:29, Acts 19:16)
  - iv) Raving (Mark 5:5)
  - v) Foaming at the mouth (Mark 9:20)
  - vi) Nakedness (Luke 8:27)
- c) Loss of health:
  - i) Dumbness (Mark 9:17, Luke 11:14)
  - ii) Deafness and dumbness (Mark 9:25)
  - iii) Blindness and dumbness (Matthew 12:22)
  - iv) Epilepsy (Mark 1:26, 9:20, Luke 4:35)
  - v) Mental illness (Mark 5:15)

7. Demon possession explains:

- a) So called divine healing
- b) Alleged speaking in tongues
- c) Faked contact with the dead (1 Samuel 28)
- d) Success of self styled exorcists
- e) Rise of certain world leaders (2 Thessalonians 2.9, Revelation 16:13, 14)
- f) Cause of some wars (Revelation 20:8)
- g) Reincarnation
- h) Fortune telling (Acts 16:16)

**LESSON 35 – DEMONOLOGY – SATAN’S TROOPS**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
35	Demonology – Satan’s Troops	1 Corinthian 10:19-24 2 Peter 2:4-5 Galatians 6:2-4 Luke 8:26-40 Acts 19:11-20 Ephesians 6:10-18	Demons

**INTRODUCTION**

As active Christians we have to recognize that Satan does not like us being active. It is important to disagree with people if the Lord shows you that they are not right, and in relation to demons this is now important in the church. In the late 20th century we saw the complete turn around in relation to the theology of demonism. We should be strong for truth but also polite in argument – fruitfulness is important – we care for the confused!

In the first part of the 20<sup>th</sup> century most people believed in God but few in the West took any notice of demons while now many do not believe in God but there is a resurgence of belief in angels and in active demonism in the West. People will go and watch films portraying demonism but will not come to church and hear the truth. Satan is very busy forming an alternative to the true church and sending out misinformation. This is typical of the climate in which we live today.

Today we are moving closer and closer to the situation that the early church first encountered, being surrounded by paganism, the occult, and demonism. It is not that there are actually vastly different philosophies; the real enemy is

Satan and his army. As in the ancient world the demons were very involved with false religion and so they are also today.

Many people are looking for dramatic or soothing experiences, and the enemy will offer them to them. We need to know what the wiles of Satan are, so that we can warn the Lord's flock against them. Satan's attack is very subtle with him being portrayed as a serpent; the creature that slithers past our defences if we are not alert.

Satan sees the believer who does not know what they should know and zeroes in on them. It is essential that we recognize that demons exist. You will find that this is mocked in some churches. Some will say Satan is a nebulous force or representative ancient figure of evil, but the Bible says he is a real creature. Stick to the bible – it is safer!

**THE CHRISTIAN LIFE – case study – dealing with the demonic in food offered to idols.**

**1 Corinthians 10:19-24** talks about religion in the ancient world, especially eating meat offered to idols. Paul talks about the laws of the Christian life; the law of liberty, the law of love, the law of supreme sacrifice. These laws inter react so that you refrain from doing some things, even though through the law of liberty you could. Refer to the EBCWA studies on Corinthians on CD/flash-drive or website.

In the ancient world the vast majority of meat had been offered to an idol. This is not unlike the Moslem's offering sheep that they are slaughtering to Allah. All the abattoirs in the city of Corinth were dedicated to different gods. That god was not Almighty God, it was the demons who were behind every idol. The gods of the nations are Satan's demons. They have power to deceive. Many believers felt they couldn't eat meat then or they would be compromising their faith.

Paul answers their concerns and says "no, you can eat the meat even if it is offered to the idols(or demons), for they are in fact "nothings" in relation to the believer, and eating the meat offered to them is in fact demonstrating our superiority to them, for in Christ they have no power over us".

Paul says, from the law of liberty, he can eat a T bone steak offered to Apollo, for the demon behind the "god" is a big nobody, but he is not going to do so at this point, because he does not want weaker or younger brothers in Christ to be confused about the relation of the believer and evil. He was going to follow the principle of grace, love and self sacrifice. It is not a spiritual issue until you understand what it might do to another brother. If you eat, then she/he might come under the influence of those demons again. Once the new believers were secure in their faith however Paul would quite happily eat meat offered to idols as it is not an issue for him as he is in Christ and superior to them. The Christian's real concern is not first for what they can do, but for the impact of all done on other more vulnerable believer's spiritual life.

The principle is that Satan is involved in pagan and cultic religion. Where there is a contrast between the truth and compromise the believer should pick the truth every time. The right path is always the one as far away from Satan's people and philosophy as possible. Religion is evil and defiling because Satan is the author of it and Satan is the author of sin. This is where believers have to be discerning as to where you pull back from. The Christian must learn what and where to avoid. At a later point we will cover the principles of Love, Liberty and Supreme Sacrifice as they are taught in this passage in Corinthians (refer to the studies on the web site or CD).

**DEMONS**

Satan's system is very powerful when faced by people without the Holy Spirit to protect them. Behind every false god there is a demon, and behind pagan religions is Satan. With reference to the origin of demons there are many ideas.

Four possible origins are referred to in the belief systems of the world system;

- [a] They are the spirits of wicked deceased people,
- [b] They are the disembodied spirits of a pre Adamic race,
- [c] They are the offspring of the union described in Genesis 6:1-6,
- [d] They are called by some "aliens",
- [e] They are fallen angels.

The only one that is biblically correct is the last; that they are fallen angels. You will come across people with the wildest ideas about demons, but they have all occurred before. Satan has not had an original idea for the last six thousand years. Again and again you will see the devices and guises that he comes out with. In theology and Church History we have the devices and strategies of Satan set out for understanding.

Some fallen angels are confined, but most are free. In **2 Peter 2:4-5** we have the record relating to the confined demons. They are fallen angels. The context of this is that some of the demons were confined at the time of Noah's flood.

Some theologians say that Genesis 6 shows sexual relations between angels and human women causing mighty men of renown (these are the great heroes of the myths of the ancient peoples). This seems the most logical, for some of Satan's group to try and thwart the Lord's virgin birth by contaminating the gene pool of mankind by sexual habitation with the human race. In any case God thwarted their plan and judged these angels and locked them in a place called Tartarus, the pit. They are held in chains of darkness in the lower parts of hell.

Demons were involved with sexual immorality. Immorality is nearly always a sign of demonism even if it is behind a facade which is very respectable. Mediums are almost always apparently respectable, but can be wildly promiscuous or

sexually powerful/deviant. All the religions of the ancient world had demonic activity producing gross and significant sexual deviance. Often the sexual behaviours of celebrities is bizarre and baffling, but if drugs and occult issues are involved then the demonic influence may explain things.

The final destination of all the fallen angels is the lake of fire. We are involved in the judgment of demons in some way. There is biblical evidence in **1 Corinthians 6:2-5**, that church age believers will judge demons and throw them into the lake of fire. Fallen angels have free will which they express negatively; and they have personality and names and are individually identifiable.

Physically they are more powerful than we are. However in Christ with the filling of the Holy Spirit we are superior to them. It is your position in Christ which gives you the superiority, and this is the reason why spirituality and the armour of the spirit is so important. "Greater is he that is in you than he that is in the world". (This text has been repeated often for a reason; it is our strength and a reminder of who we are, and our destiny – "he" is no longer "prince of this world", he is just a "he" – a defeated narcissistic creature who will never accept his defeat and remains malice filled.)

Many people are today classified as mentally ill but may in fact be simply experiencing collapse of their personality/cognition due to satanic influences. There is evidence that many are not psychologically sick but rather they have been dabbling in drugs and are either brain damaged or demon possessed. It is necessary to be discerning here, for there is mental dysfunction, and chemical, physical illness, but sin and the impact of satanic teachings can play a big part in both.

In **Luke 8:26-40** - here we see a demon possessed man. In verse 27-33 we have the picture of the Lord talking with this man and the demons within and they wished to go to another living being, in this case a herd of pigs. It is of interest that the swine did not want to be demon possessed and so ran into the lake. The swine were smarter than a lot of people, who for the power that Satan promises will accept a spirit guide (demon) into their body.

A Roman Legion was 6,000, so there were six thousand demons in this man. Forget about demons taking up space. They are spiritual beings. The Gadarene demoniac comes running out and expresses his desire for salvation as he throws himself at the Lord's feet. He is not speaking, the demons are speaking through him. Demons can control a person's life but there is still the ability for the person to demonstrate their free will by means of bodily action as demonstrated by this man by him throwing himself at the feet of the Lord.

The demons knew who Jesus was and feared the Lord. They had personality and together they had given themselves a collective name. They had will and desired to go into the pigs. They wish to be embodied. If you see a witch or witch doctor who is nearing death you will be seeing a panic stricken person, because the demons stir them up as they are wanting to indwell someone else. You will find that when the demon goes the person dies quite quickly.

This is not psychology; this involves the will of the person. No one becomes demon possessed accidentally, you become in that state because you allow it to happen. Having received it the only way to get rid of it is by passing the demon to someone else, or by it being driven out by the Holy Spirit.

There is no hope without Christ for the demon possessed person. It is very common for the demons to control the voice box. You may find demon possessed people speaking normally and then suddenly their voice changes. A voice comes out and talks about life in ancient Greece and will be absolutely accurate because it is the demon speaking and it was there. They have observed mankind since Adam. This is what all the "previous lives" business of the mediums is all about.

People without Christ are easily fooled by the demons. Note - Little children cannot be demon possessed as it requires an act of will, so a young person who is possessed has really broken barriers to get to that place, and the gospel is still always to be given. Jesus said that little children are special, and loved, and they make up the kingdom of God. **Matthew 10:13-14**.

Demon possession can only take place by a person opening themselves up to demons, or being in a place where there are demons and being culpably foolish. Most demonism has been associated through time with drug taking or the occult.

The word witchcraft is "pharmakeia" in the Greek. Drugs are as old as people seeking to feel good rather than being good. Nothing is new under the sun, says the preacher. The explosion of occultism in the western world coincided with the explosion of drug taking in the 1970's. Many people do not know why they got involved with demonism. It is because they were involved with drugs.

In **Acts 19:13-20** Paul was in Corinth. Here we have a Jewish exorcist. Most religions have these people called exorcists – who are often fake magician-illusionists. Satan plays with them and uses them from time to time when it suits him, but most are just human con men – nothing spiritual at all. The Jewish exorcist tried to cast out demons in the name of Jesus, but all the fakes do things for a price – but Satan hates his own crew.

The demon said, "Jesus and Paul I know but who are you", and beat the fake up. Demon possessed people often have super human power. The demon possessed person jumped on these fake exorcists, ripped all their clothes off and they

ran out of the house naked and wounded. This demonstrates that this area is one to confront only in the Lord's power, with the prayers of the whole church behind you, and with his Word as your guide.

**GOD DEALS WITH THE PROBLEM OF DEMONS**

There are no magic formulae/spells in Christianity. It is not a good luck charm to have a cross or a large Bible in your hand when you confront evil. Satan is not impressed by lucky charms! The power that defeats demons is the power of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Word of God must be real in your life, not heavy in your hands. The Sword of the Spirit is the Word of God. You need to have it in your heart/mind. If you have the Holy Word in your hand without the Spirit in your life, you are naked. The Holy Spirit works through God's Word in the life.

The believer has to deal with sin in their life and keep short accounts with God. Do not walk one step unprotected in the Devil's world. Unless you are armed as per **Ephesians 6:10-18**, you are not dangerous to the enemy, you are in danger. The Spirit must be controlling you through the doctrines of the Word.

The Lord can even use the demons for his purposes. If you come across demonism when filled with the Spirit you know you are safe, and the encounter is allowed by the Lord to assist you in your spiritual growth. You have a number of promises and principles to claim in the indwelling power of the Holy Spirit.

You have to recognize first what the demons are up to. They promote idolatry and are behind all idol worship. They promote false religion, teaching that you do not need a Saviour, or that you can be your own Saviour. They teach works salvation rather than grace, they teach immorality rather than morality, they stir up rage in the nations - Daniel 10:13.

Satan is involved with most wars. After World War 1 there was a massive increase in demonic activity world wide. In the 1920's it was almost as if an army of demons had been released from the trenches and were trying to stir up trouble elsewhere. The influence of demons on/in politics cannot be overstated, but we are on the winning side, and our job is to keep giving the gospel, not entering politics to stop Satan's plan unless specifically called. Prayerfulness is vital!!!!

**DOCTRINES**

**DEMONS**

1. Occult practices such as astrology, divination and spiritism are condemned by the scriptures (Leviticus 19:31; Deuteronomy 18:9-12). This was punishable by death in Israel. (Leviticus 20:27)
2. Demonism has exercised much influence in history (Ezekiel 21:21, Daniel 10:13). Evil is associated with the rule of demon possessed kings. (2 Kings 21:1-17)
3. The judgment of demons involved the destruction of demon possessed people and religious systems associated with idolatry (Isaiah 19:1-3, cf Deuteronomy 7:5)
4. Many nations have been destroyed for demon practices.
  - a) Canaanites (Deuteronomy 18:9-12)
  - b) Babylonians (Isaiah 46:1-7, 47:1-15)
  - c) The judgment of Egypt's first born included the judgment of demons (Exodus 12:12)
5. The return of nations to the battle of Armageddon is by demon influence (Revelation 16:13-16).
6. Satan and the occult forces will be imprisoned during the Millennium (Isaiah 24:21-23; Revelation 20:1-3).
7. Demons are called "hairy ones" (Leviticus 17:7), destroyers (Deuteronomy 32:17) and demons.
8. Demonic Attack
  - a) seek to possess men or animals (Mark 5:1-13).
  - b) deceive man into false doctrines (1 Timothy 4:1).
  - c) believe and tremble (James 2:19).
  - d) speak both truth and lies (2 Chronicles 18:21; Acts 16:17-18).
9. Satan rules the demon world (Matthew 12:24-28). Demons have a hierarchy (Daniel 10:12,13,20; Ephesians 6:12).
10. Sacrificing to idols is worship of demons (Deuteronomy 32:17, Psalm 106:36-38, 1 Corinthians 10:19-21).
11. The following activities can lead to demon possession (for the unbeliever) or demon influence (for the believer):
  - a) Submission to demons through idolatry (1 Corinthians 10:19-21) and occult practices such as mental telepathy, clairvoyance and spiritism (Deuteronomy 18:9-12).
  - b) Specific dedication of one's body to demons, such as the Hindu soma and shamanism.



- c) Any practice in which you "lose control" of your mind and senses, such as drugs and alcohol (Galatians 5:20, the Greek word for "sorcery" is "pharmakeia"), meditation and trances, hypnotic rhythms in music and dance.
- d) Sexual cults, such as the asherah (Judges 6:25-28, 2 Kings 21:3)

- 12. When people reject God, He may allow Satan and demons to administer discipline, even death (John 8:44, 1 Corinthians 5:5, 1 Timothy 3:6-7).
- 13. Demon influence can cause abnormal psychological behaviour, physical strength, sickness, etc (Mark 5:1-5, Job 2:6-8)
- 14. Jesus Christ has conquered all demon power (Matthew 10:8).

**SECTION G – ANTHROPOLOGY – THE STUDY OF MAN**

**LESSON 36 – MAN - HIS ORIGINS AND CREATION**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
36	Man His Origins and Creation	Genesis 1:1-3 John 1:1 2 Peter 3:12	Science and the Bible Science and Creation Creation

**INTRODUCTION**

The first verses in the Bible **Genesis 1: 1-3** are very profound. "In the beginning". The Hebrew scholars today marvel at this. It brings you face to face with eternity. In the beginning God created. No matter how far you go back in time God is there, coming out of eternity past to meet you. This is saying more than God was there in the beginning, God created the beginning, God already was. The first creation is space and time – this universe is "made" – there is a moment of creation, and in 2014 that was "discovered" through the background radiation in the universe going back to the start.

Here we have the unity of God, the triune God, three persons with unity, one essence, one character creating the entire present space-time universe. Both the concept of the trinity and that of the creation are things far beyond our senses. God created this entire space-time universe and is beyond both space and time..... **2 Peter 3:9-18**.

**CREATION**

"Bara" means to create something out of nothing, not to use anything that was there. Matter is not eternal! What you have in Genesis is Einstein's formula. This is what happened that energy created material, the power of God created matter. In the Hebrew it says that God created the heavens and the earth. What we have here is the mystery of mankind, creation and the smallness of us. The mystery of our own nature and our own being confronts us here; the smallness of ourselves and the fact that our mind cannot comprehend it.

There was a point before there was any space-time "thing", but God was there. You look at the stars and you think they go on forever but there is a limit to space and time. There is a limit to time itself. What is beyond it? This is where we are confronted like the Old Testament writer who asked, "What is man that you are mindful of him?" **Psalms 8:3-9, Revelation 21-22**.

As a creature we must be aware that creation occurred and also the companion fact that all that was created will go out of existence. God is beyond space and time; we are within it. Our brains cannot handle a thought other than in terms of space and time. Heaven for instance is beyond space and time. It is a different realm, a different category of thought. Paul caught a glimpse of this in 1 Corinthians 13 where he said that now we see in a glass darkly and then face to face.

When we pass through to this new dimension we will realise new knowledge and understand. We have to have new resurrection bodies because our existing bodies cannot handle it. We should start this study, as with all study of God and his work with absolute humility. There are certain things that are discussed in theology which cannot be fully understood this side of eternity, but we can understand enough to be obedient to the Lord's commands.

This is one of the fatal flaws in Calvin's work, when as a young man of 26, he thought he could understand the Sovereignty of God. You will find that people who say that they can understand everything are arrogant, pig headed people, or just too enthusiastic, and often have Obsessive Compulsive Disorder. Calvin realized his errors later in life but too late to be allowed to change his system. Beware in this area, as in others in theology, of all who claim to have a system that answers all questions; we are but dust, we often do not even know the right questions to ask. All theology can "work" if you leave enough facts out of it!

With the study of theology, at the end of each session, you should be able to give thanks for everything you have understood and leave with the Lord those things which you still do not understand, but giving thanks for the plan as a whole. There will be certain things that you will not understand until you see Him face to face. We must be dependent on the Holy Spirit and rely on the Bible and the Bible alone. We need to walk out of all classes in the spirit of humility and then God can use us. The fruit of humility is a hallmark indicator of the Holy Spirit's presence; arrogance is the opposite.

We have to recognise that we are limited and do not know the answer to every question. We need to recognise that no human being was there at creation. God has told us what happened but did so in a limited way. We have to be careful when we speculate beyond what the Bible tells us and stick with the revelation of God.

## EVOLUTION

The basis of evolution is pride and not God. Man's philosophy is that man can understand all things. Genesis 1:1 says that you cannot understand all things, for you are a creature in a creation. You are not like God. Satan's big lie is that man could be like God. This is what is behind all pagan philosophy and the theory of evolution. If you trust God it is not a leap in the dark by faith, without reason, for what God says makes sense, and what evolutionists say does not.

What is your soul and spirit, what is your nature, who are you? As the Holy Spirit teaches you from the Bible, you have to think about these things so that you can shortcut all the long arguments that the unbeliever will use to distract you. In all issues we want to get to the Biblical solution.

The Bible is full of the most profound statements in any literature in any language. It begins with the right assessment as to where we are, and where God is, and how the whole world came into being.

**John 1:1** – "En arche" - in the beginning, in the status quo of the beginning God always "was". Go back as far as you can go with history and you find God coming out of history and pre-history to meet you. It is the Lord Jesus Christ who is coming out of history. We are here faced with our limits as human beings. We are creatures of space and time of matter and spirit. Coming out of eternity is the Creator who is Spirit not matter. **John 6:63**.

## WHO IS GOD?

God is not an old fellow with a beard who lives in the sky. When we as human beings try and capture the concept of God and his plan in eternity for time we have to be careful. We cannot make God to be like us, but we in Christ are made like Him. We talk about the essence or character of God. When you talk about His essence your words are not going to fully match the reality. The best we can do is to try not to confuse.

Many people make God far too small by anthropopathism and anthropomorphism. We talk about God as if He is a creature, talking about Him as a human being. God is not angry as you are angry though the Bible talks about the anger of the Lord. It is not your type of anger. It talks about the love of God, but it is not your type of love. Only by the Word becoming flesh can we ever talk about God. All our talk about God must be rooted and grounded in the person and work of the Lord Jesus, for in him we see the best view of the character of God that we will have this side of eternity. What we must guard against is the so called **category mistake**. That is to speak of God, who is in a different category to man, as if he was man. This is all right as long as we recognize the anthropopathism, and are guarded with our language. We are limited by space and time. God is not limited that way. He is the creator of space and time.

The question will often come from a careless theologian as to whether sovereignty or election come first. This foolish person has committed a category mistake, as they have taken God's decisions in the way that you as a space-time creature make decisions, in terms of, limited by space and time. God is the creator of "before and after". When you get a resurrection body you are released from time but until then we must remember God does not think as we think. "My thoughts are not your thoughts nor my ways your ways", says the Lord. **Isaiah 55:7-9**. He entered our category in the form of Christ then he returned to His own category. Calvin and Arminius both failed in this area, in their discussions of election and free will. They spoke of categories of God's actions as if they were categories of man's actions!

About 90% of the evangelical Christians are confused on this difficult area of man and God and the difference in our viewpoints. Most do not study systematic theology and do not study anthropology and so do not know their own limits. If you are humble you recognise you hold the concepts of election and free will in balance and go on your way rejoicing.

The great tragedy is that good men like Calvin burnt people at the stake, and Zwingli drowned Baptist people who did not agree with him. They did not realise their limitations and therefore lost their humbleness and started to think they knew

more than they could know. If you start with the wrong base your superstructure will be wrong even though you may say a lot of things that are right. We will learn a great deal both positive and negative from these men when we look at church history.

Evolution is another example which has as its basic premise that there is no God. Evolutionists for example deify evolutionary process, saying that evolution created us, thereby making a process into a person/god. They do not explain how this occurred, or why, but they speak worshipful words about the process. People follow it because they do not want a personal God who may tell you what to do. God may call you a sinner in need of a Saviour – they can't have that.....

Evolution starts from the basis that matter is all there is. The Bible starts from energy, the mighty God who created space, matter, and time. Scientists speculate and do not know the origin of matter nor how it is held together. They talk about chemical reactions but do not know what starts them in the human body so that we can function. What happens at death? How was it that language developed? How did thought develop from matter? What is life? Most of these people worship Mother Nature rather than Father God; but it's not a matter of sexual politics, its avoiding being told what to do.

The Satanic lie from the beginning was that we can replace God. What you know about God is what God has given you. The universe which looks so solid will one day go. **2 Peter 3:10-18**. Even as you look at it now it is composed of energy in dynamic movement; what is solid is just energy organized in shape and form. The entire matter of the universe could be fitted into a suitcase, but it would be of infinite weight! Pause, reflect and then fall on your knees and worship.

**DOCTRINES**

**SCIENCE AND THE BIBLE**

1. The fall of Satan and the resultant angelic conflict apparently led to the destruction of planet earth. (Genesis 1:2)
2. The earth was covered for a time by an ice pack. The ice pack was the result of freezing waters by darkness (the complete absence of heat).
3. With regard to the antiquity of the earth, neither science nor the Bible gives us a clear picture. We have some methods of measuring age, such as carbon dating and carbon 14, but these are not accurate in determining the antiquity of the earth.
4. There is never a conflict between what the Bible says in the original languages and the TRUE OBSERVATIONS of such sciences as cosmology, geology, astronomy, chemistry, anatomy, anthropology and psychology.
5. However, actual scientific data and information in the Bible is extremely limited. The Bible is NOT a scientific text book, nor was it designed to be one.
6. Being a Book of God's doctrines and filled with spiritual phenomena, it is obvious that the Bible will occasionally allude to or comment on what we classify as scientific subjects.
7. Wherever the Bible comments on scientific subjects, the Bible is always accurate in the original languages. God is the origin of all the laws and all the phenomena which science is based upon.
8. Therefore, science does not confirm the Bible but occasionally the Bible confirms scientific data or some scientific classification.
9. If scientific speculation does not line up with the Bible then such speculation is inaccurate. If there is a true conflict between scientific speculation and what the Bible says, the Bible is right. Just as when there is a conflict between some historical interpretation and what the Bible says, the Bible is right. In other words where the Bible comments on science, science must agree with the Bible, the Bible is not required to agree with science.
10. The continuation of the universe and the earth, including man, animal life, plant life, the stable state of the atmosphere with its various components all depends on the all powerful and unchangeable characteristics of Jesus Christ. (Colossians 1:17, Hebrews 1:3)
11. 'Scientific laws' is a misnomer. Scientific laws as such, do not exist because science did not develop these laws and science cannot enforce them. For example in chemistry God promises that when certain elements are combined, certain results will follow. This is a DIVINE LAW, not a scientific law.
12. So-called scientific laws are based on the assumption that the universe, which operates according to a fixed norm, will continue to do so. Science can observe and classify certain divine laws and then apply them productively, but only God in His sovereignty can guarantee the continuation of these laws.

13. The universe, with its function of matter and energy will not always exist as it does at the present time. (2 Peter 3:10-12, Revelation 20:11 )
14. Known scientific laws and phenomena, which man has been able to observe, classify and apply depend entirely on the faithfulness of God. (Colossians 1:17)
15. The reason for preserving the universe is to resolve the perpetual conflict in human history, and to bring many sons into glory. (Hebrews 2:10)
16. The Word of God will survive the destruction of the universe for the Word of God and Bible doctrine will exist forever. (Psalm 119:89)
17. Regenerate man in resurrection body will live forever and survive the changes in the universe, even surviving the destruction of the present universe.
18. It is Jesus Christ who holds the universe together by the power of His Word. (Hebrews 1:3). At the same time He is holding back eternity in order for the human race to have the opportunity to believe in Jesus Christ.
19. Many scientific phenomena are elucidated in the Bible.
  - a) The Movement of Planets (Job 38:31,32) In the 19th century M. Medler discovered that Aleyone the brightest star in the Pleides is the centre of gravity of the solar system. The Hebrew word for Pleides is KIMAH which means hinge, pivot or axle.
  - b) Static Electricity (Jeremiah 10:13) This states that static electricity may be formed by the condensation of vapour.
  - c) The Earth is Spherical (Isaiah 40:22, Proverbs 8:27) The words translated circle in Isaiah and compass in Proverbs should be translated spherical.
  - d) The Earth rotates on its Axis ( Luke 17:24 )
  - e) Air has weight (Job 28:25) - "discovered" in 1630 by Galileo.
  - f) Winds have circuits (evaporation and precipitation). (Ecclesiastes 1:6) "Discovered" in 1630 by Galileo.
  - g) Radiation and Polarisation of Lights. (Psalm 65:8)
  - h) Messages are sent by Lightning. (Job 38:35) - Who invented telegraphy? - God did.
  - i) The Circulation of the Blood. (Ecclesiastes 12:6) - "discovered" by Englishman Dr. Harvey.
  - j) Quarantine for Communicable Diseases (Leviticus 13:45-46) "discovered" in recent years by medical research.

**SCIENCE AND CREATION**

1. The following are brief comments which support the creationist view of life and confirm the Biblical statements on science. Science supports creation rather than the theory of evolution.
2. Genesis 1 and 2 tell the correct sequence of created matter and life.
3. Atmosphere
  - a) Carbon 14. Scientists say that the production of Carbon 14 should reach equilibrium with Carbon 12 when the atmosphere is 40,000 years old. Modern calculations show that Carbon 14 is being produced at 3 1 greater rate than it is decaying. This indicates the atmosphere is less than 10,000 years old. Carbon dating is based on the speed of light which has been found not to be constant but gradually reducing in speed.
  - b) Helium. Produced by the action of cosmic rays on the atmosphere the amount of helium present in the atmosphere indicates an approximate age of 10,000 years. No atmosphere 10,000 years ago - no life thus fossils and men are contemporaries.
4. Oceans
 

Cosmic dust enters the atmosphere at 14.3 million tons per annum. If the earth was 4.5 billion years old the earth should have a dust blanket in excess of 100 feet in depth. This doesn't allow for the greater rate of dust deposit which most scientists believe occurred in ancient times. The dust is not evident. This dust has been subject to rain translating the dust from the land via the new system to the oceans.

  - a) Nickel. Assuming that the oceans were initially of absolutely pure water we would expect a certain amount of nickel deposits in the ocean as though somewhat rare on earth nickel is common in cosmic dust. There should be 950 pounds of nickel per square foot of ocean floor if the earth is 4.5 billion years old. The amount of nickel present in the ocean indicates an age of 9,000 years for the ocean.
  - b) Uranium and Silicon. Similar readings with uranium and silicon give ocean ages of approximately 10,000 years only.
5. The Earth's Crust
  - a) Magnetic Field
 

The magnetic field of the earth has a half life of 1,400 years. This means that 1,400 years ago the magnetic field was twice as strong, 2,800 years ago four times as strong , etc.

By continuing this process back into history by 8000 BC it has been calculated that the magnetic field would be the same as a magnetic star precluding life on the planet. A magnetic star maintains its field by thermo-nuclear reaction.

Projecting forward by 3100 AD the magnetic field decaying at its present rate will collapse causing the Van Allan belt to disintegrate allowing massive radiation of the earth which will end life on this planet. (This excludes divine intervention in the Millennium). The magnetic field is less than 10,000 years old.

**b) Earth's Molten Core**

The famous scientist Lord Kelvin calculated the heat loss from the molten core of the earth through the earth's crust and showed that the earth was far younger than its estimated 4500 million years. He also estimated the age of the sun as being young.

**6. Biology**

a) Mules. Mules are formed by crossing horses and donkeys. Whilst male mules are always infertile, occasionally a female mule can produce offspring. By crossing a male horse with the mule a horse will always result. Similarly a male donkey will produce a donkey. Nature will revert back to its own kind.

b) Cereals. Hybrid grains can be grown but are generally infertile. With the recrossing of wheat or oats with the hybrid wheat or oats are formed, never the hybrid.

**7. Geology**

a) The Geological Column according to evolutionary theory ranges from Pleistocene in the Age of Mammals to Pre Cambrian of 570 million years or more. There are 15 subdivisions in this column. Nowhere in the world does the geological column exist in its correct order in nature.

b) In the column Trilobites are in the Cambrian period of 500 to 570 million years. In recent years a fossil of a trilobite has been found with a human sandal print superimposed over it showing trilobites and man coexisted on the earth at the same time.

c) In the Paluxy River, Texas, along the river bed are lines of dinosaur foot prints, foot prints of man and children together with giant foot prints 18" long. (Genesis 6:1-6). Giants in the land.

d) In the Appalachian Mountains from Maine to Georgia are human foot prints in granite.

e) Supposed "missing links" in humanity.

i) Neanderthal Man is now considered to be modern man. The famous French general Lafayette had a perfect Neanderthal skull.

ii) Cro-Magnon Man had a brain capacity of 1450 cc towards the upper limit of human craniums nowadays which range from 900 cc to 1500 cc. Cro-Magnon had a skull exactly like Charles Darwin.

iii) Piltdown Man, found in East Sussex was found to be an elaborate hoax which fooled the scientific community for over 40 years.

iv) Nebraska Man was created from a tooth. The tooth was eventually identified as a pig's tooth.

v) Java Man was constructed from a cranium and jaw found many metres apart in a gravel bed in Java.

**8. Astronomy**

a) Jupiter and Saturn both give out 21/2 times the heat received from the sun showing they are young bodies.

b) Io, one of the moons of Jupiter, not only has an atmosphere but has active volcanoes.

c) Titan, the largest moon of Saturn also has an atmosphere. This indicated that the moon is less than 10,000 years old.

d) The rings of Saturn are undulating not smooth. By the gravitational pull of Saturn it is estimated that the rings would have smoothed out completely between 10,000 and 100,000 years.

e) Astronomers agree that comets have a life of no more than 10,000 years. Assuming that comets are not being created this shows a solar system of less than 10,000 years.

f) When the first space ships landed on the moon NASA expected that there would be a 28 mile thick layer of dust of the consistency of icing sugar. NASA spent \$1,000 million experimenting for a successful soft landing. When Neil Armstrong stepped on the moon he found the dust on the surface averaged 3" in thickness indicating some 8,000 years in age.

g) Space probes were sent to Mars and Venus to try to find life. Both were unsuccessful.

**9. Thermodynamics**

a) 1st Law - Energy is neither created nor destroyed. It changes from one state to another - this supports creation.

b) 2nd Law - When changes take place, the structure always becomes less organized, never more complex. Creation confirms this. Evolution is based on the opposite stance of simple systems becoming more organized or complex.

c) This very brief topic shows clearly how science supports the fact of creation rather than the theory of evolution with a likely date of original creation less than 10,000 years ago.

**CREATION**

1. The first verse in the Bible is one of the most attacked portions of scripture as many forms of false doctrine are refuted by this verse. There are 8 factors which disprove humanistic philosophy. Scripture Genesis 1:1 "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth."

"In the beginning God" - shows the existence of God - this opposes atheism, the concept that no God exists.

"God created" - shows the eternal creator. The creator we know from other passages is Jesus Christ (Colossians 1:16) – this opposes polytheism, the concept of many gods.

"created the heavens and the earth" – describes the creation of matter which opposes evolution.

"God created" – describes the omnipotence or all-powerful nature of God which opposes pantheism, the worship of many gods.

"God created" - describes the freedom of God and God's will, which opposes fatalism.

This verse requires supernatural revelation which opposes naturalism which states that natural or physical laws are sufficient to explain the universe without divine revelation.

This verse appeals to faith which has no human merit and opposes rationalism and empiricism.

This verse shows the utter helplessness of man which opposes human works or legalism.

2. How long did Creation take?

The original creation of the earth did not occur over a long period of time. Creation occurred at an instant in time (Psalm 33:6, Hebrews 11:3, 2 Peter 3:5).

3. Time of Creation

From the genealogies in the Bible, Adam was created about 4000 BC. The earth may have been originally created prior to Adam.

4. Words for creation in the Hebrew:-

a) Bara means to create something out of nothing.

v.1 God created the universe out of nothing.

v.21 God created the souls of animals out of nothing,

v.27 God created the soul and spirit of man out of nothing.

b) Asah means to create something out of existing material.

v.7 God created the firmament out of existing material.

v.16 The two great lights were made out of material already in existence.

v.26 The body of man was constructed out of the dust of the ground.

c) Yatsar means to mould, as a potter moulds clay.

(Genesis 2:7) The body of man is shaped, head at one end, feet at the other.

d) Examples:

i) All three words for create are used in Isaiah 43:7, a verse on the creation of man. I have Baraed him (soul and spirit), I have Yatsared him (the shape of the body) I have Asahed him (out of earth).

ii) Isaiah 45:18 talks about the creation of the earth using all three words. Thus saith the Lord which Baraed the heavens; God Himself which Yatsared the earth (mountains, valleys, ridges, canyons etc.) and Asahed it out of material already in existence, He has created it not a waste (Tohu).

5. What happened after Creation?

Genesis 1:2 It was created originally perfect because God is perfect. It was changed after it was in existence (Hebrew) Tohu - without form - a waste or a dump. It became (Hebrew) Bohu, void or barren. How did the world become void or barren, a rubbish dump?

Isaiah 14:17 talks of Satan who made the world as a wilderness, a rubbish dump. One concludes that the formation of the world as a waste was a result of Satan's rebellion.

6. Genesis 1:2b - Re-creation or Restoration

In order to have a perfect test for man's free will, man has to be created in innocence, he has to have perfect environment so that only his free will is tested. The author of restoration - The Holy Spirit. "and the Spirit of God moved upon the waters." Man is created and placed on the earth on day 6, therefore there must be 6 days of restoration.

Restoration in 6 days must be distinguished from initial creation in Genesis 1:1.

Ministry of the Holy Spirit is to restore life. (Psalm 104:30)

Regeneration - restoration of spiritual life.

Resurrection - restoration of spiritual - physical life.

Restoration - restoration of fellowship.

Convicting ministry - can attempt to restore fellowship.

Psalm 104:30 "Thou (God the Father) sendest forth thy Spirit (Holy Spirit) they are created because thou (Holy Spirit) restoreth the face of the earth.

Principle of Reconstruction (Exodus 20:11): For in six (literal) days the Lord (Holy Spirit) Asah(ed) (made out of existing material) heaven and earth, the sea and all that is in them and rested, the seventh day.

The Holy Spirit restored it out of the waste, the barrenness, the waters.

7. In Summary therefore the Bible indicates that:-  
 the earth was created, not originally a ruin.  
 the earth was created to be inhabited (Isaiah 45:18)  
 the ruin of the earth was the result of Satan's fall and the angelic conflict (Isaiah 14:17)  
 the earth was then in ruin (Genesis 1:2)  
 the Holy Spirit moves upon the face of the waters to restore the earth (Genesis 1:2).

8. Were the days of restoration literal 24-hour days?

The word day is used 3 ways in Scripture:

a) For less than 24 hours (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)

The day of Christ (2 Thessalonians 2:2, 1 Corinthians 15)

The day of Christ is an instant of time and is related to the rapture of the Church.

b) For more than 24 hours

The day of the Lord - 1007 years or part thereof. In the Hebrew if you have the word day with a modifying phrase "of Christ", "of the Lord", it is the only time when the word is used for other than a 24 hour day. Where an ordinal or cardinal number is used it is invariably a solar 24-hour day.

c) For 24 hours (Genesis 1)

Each day is divided into night and day with night coming first and morning after a typical Jewish format. Solar days are always so divided. Vegetation was restored on the 3rd day and it could not have survived in total darkness - the chlorophyll cycle - the light bearers being brought into order on day 4. Clearly the days of restoration are literal 24-hour days.

9. Genesis 1:3-5 - 1st day of Restoration

Day and night are appointed, light is taken out of darkness. v.3 "And God (the Father) said 'Let there be light and there was light.'" v.4 "And God (the Holy Spirit) divided the light from the darkness".

Two words are used in two passages relating to LIGHT:

a) OR (Hebrew) essence or substance or fundamental light. The light which is restored on the first day is fundamental light.

b) NEOR (Hebrew) light in a container or light bearer (day 4). The purpose of the light is to solve the problem of darkness. The light does not absorb the darkness but is separated from the darkness. Light is good because it came from God. Light in the scripture has the connotation of good (1 John 1:5). Darkness in the scripture has the connotation of evil (John 3:19). Having formed the light God now names light day and darkness night.

God also distinguishes between Good and Evil and Divine Good and Human Good.

Darkness - unbeliever (2 Corinthians 4:3,4) Light - believer (John 8:12).

It should be noted that if concentrated light of day was not dispersed we would all be dead.

By application - concentration of power is bad for men. Nationalism cannot allow itself to be taken over by Internationalism because no ruler can cope with that amount of power except for Jesus Christ.

10. Genesis 1:6-8 2nd Day of Restoration

Covering the earth is a tremendous amount of water of unknown depth. This great mass of water is going to be divided into two sections by gas (firmament), Nitrogen, Oxygen, Hydrogen, etc. The whole earth is covered by water which is covered by an area of atmosphere with a further canopy of water above it. This will eventually be used in the judgment of the flood.

v.6 God (the Father) said let there be atmosphere (firmament). Firmament is described in four passages.

Psalm 104:2 - a carpet spread out over the earth.

Isaiah 40:22 - a curtain made of gauze - it has weight but is light and you cannot see it.

Exodus 24:10 - a transparent work of sapphire - the blue sky.

Job 37:18 - as a molten looking glass

Genesis 1:6b - and let the atmosphere, divide waters (below) from waters (above)

Genesis 1:7 - and God (Holy Spirit) ASAHED the atmosphere.

Genesis 1:8 - and God called the atmosphere HEAVEN (singular) - this is the 1st heaven, God is in the third heaven. - evening and morning - day 2.

By application just as the atmosphere divides the waters so the cross divides the human race canopy - believers - cross - unbelievers (John 3:36)

11. Genesis 1:9-13 3rd Day of Restoration

The earth is covered with water - much of the water is withdrawn under the earth with the exception of seas and oceans which are a small portion of the water only. The water from Noah's flood came from below and from above. Prior to the flood the ground was watered from below (Genesis 2:5,6). On the 3rd day the land appeared, the vegetation was restored.

Genesis 1:9 "And God (the Father) said ... Let dry land appear" (Psalm 104:5-10). Dryness - earth, waters - seas. "And He saw that it was good" - means the plan of God was working towards perfect environment for man.

Genesis 1:11,12 - Vegetation appears in grass, herbs yielding toward seed - vegetables, and trees and shrubs.

"whose seed is inside itself" - No transmutation of species. Progression or retrogression but no transmutation. Dogs never produce cats, roses never produce tulips.

12. Genesis 1:14-19 4th Day of Restoration

v.14 And God (the Father) said let there be light (NEORIM) light containers in the firmament (atmosphere - first heaven) - to divide the day from the night. Decentralising light it becomes beneficial to man. The NEORIM are divided into containers - (stars), reflectors - (planets and the moon).

The five fold reason for light containers:-

a) Divide day from night - in the fallen state the darkness of the earth had no light in it at all - at night there is light, whilst a lot of the light containers are brighter than the sun they are many light years away. God the Holy Spirit therefore arranged things so that there would be a difference between day and night. By application, believers are (NEORIM) they bear the gospel light.

b) Signs - a miraculous activity which designates something as coming from God.

Signs had a two fold purpose:-

i) To announce unusual events - e.g. birth of Christ (Matthew 2:2)

ii) To show changes in weather (Matthew 16:1-4)

c) Seasons - the establishment of seasons for agriculture - dependent on weather (Matthew 13:37-39). Agriculture is based upon seasons - a planting season, growing season, harvesting season.

d) Days and Years - calculation of calendars. We not only orient ourselves to day and night and summer and winter, but also to years.

e) Light in the Atmosphere (v.15) - these are absolutely essential for life, health and growth in the human race. The sun is light in the atmosphere, so are the stars.

v.16 - Threefold classification of these light containers: the greater light (sun), the lesser light (moon), and the stars.

v.17,18 - The Restoration of the Light Bearers. God placed them in the firmament to give light upon the earth, God saw that it was good, end day 4.

13. Genesis 1:20-23 5th Day of Restoration

The creation of aquatic and aerial life v.20 (Erroneous translation in King James Version). Correction: "and God (the Father) said let the waters swarm with "swarms" (mammals, reptiles, and fish), let the birds fly above the earth in the atmosphere." (v 21). God created whales - long stretched creatures (Hebrew), which the water brought forth abundantly after its kind.

Principle: Science did not make laws - they discovered them. Scientific laws are the portrayal of God's unchangeability.

There is variation and change through all species but no change from one species to another.

God blessed them and said - be fruitful and multiply - the birds to multiply on the earth.

14. Genesis 1:24-31: 6th Day of Restoration

a) Creation of animal life (v. 24,25). Let the earth bring forth living creatures after its kind, cattle, creeping things (reptiles) and God saw that it was good.

b) Now we come to Homo Sapiens (v 26,27); "And God said Let us make (bara, asah) man out of the chemicals of the soil, make man in Our image".

c) The Seed of the Woman

v.27 So God (Jesus Christ) created (bara) man in his own image - the real you lives inside of you and is immaterial - soul and spirit - the image of God cannot be seen. "Male and female created He them". God divided male and female. Before God divided male and female they were originally one. When they were divided they had certain characteristics the male being characterised by the SUN - an initiator - JACOB; the female by the MOON - reflector or responder - RACHEL, and complemented one another (Genesis 37:9-10).

d) v.28 Man's domination over the animals.



When man came from the hand of God he was given dominion over the earth. Now when man sinned Satan was given that dominion. When Jesus Christ comes at the Second Advent, He will rule the earth as man - the God man Christ Jesus. Man is told to be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth.

15. Food

God said that the herbs of the earth and fruit of the trees had been provided for man for food. (Man originally was a vegetarian). After the flood man was commanded to eat flesh (Genesis 9:3) (Man became omnivorous). At the Second Advent the lion and the ox will eat straw together and it would appear that Man will become a vegetarian again (Romans 8:19-22; Isaiah 65:25; 11:6-9).

16. Genesis 2 The 7th Day

This chapter begins with rest, the Sabbath, and ends with marriage.

Genesis 2:1-3 The Sabbath "Thus the heavens and the earth were finished and all the host of them and on the seventh day God ended his work which He had made and rested on the seventh day from all the work He had made. And God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it because that in it He had rested from all His work which God created and made. "

**LESSON 37 – OUR ORIGINS AND CREATION [CONTINUED]**

NO	STUDY	TEXTS	TOPIC BOOK
37	Man Our Origins and Creation [continued]	Genesis 1:26-28	Adam

**THE PLAN OF GOD**

God created the universe, He has a plan for it and a plan for us His creatures. There is no meeting point between evolution and the Bible. The Bible is committed to a creationist view. The only point they have in common is the raw material in the form of rock and fossils which we both use. There is an intelligence behind the world and not just an impersonal force. God created, He has a plan, you are in the plan, you are part of it, and in relationship with Christ you have a unique part to play. It is this that stops the unbeliever from accepting the creationist view; a plan indicates a purpose, and a purpose must be responded to! God's Plan = accountability and judgment!

Jesus came to the cross and dealt with the cause of the separation between God and man. Paul uses this in his argument at Mars Hill in **Acts 17:22-35**. He started at creation, then the resurrection and then the gospel. Many ask the question "What does it all mean"? Many will run from this question to tranquilize themselves with sex, drugs, alcohol, money, and power. This question is something that often exercises the minds of those at funerals. At many funerals people drink alcohol until they are so drunk that they do not have to think about where they are going.

The creator is a personal God not an impersonal force. Your creator became your redeemer.

The doctrine of mankind's creation is clearly taught in the Word of God. In **Genesis 1 God is said to be a creator 17 times**. Some teach creation directly, some imply it. It says that God made the world out of nothing. If God created then there is a purpose to it and a destiny. What began with purpose must end with summation of that purpose!

According to the testimony of Scripture man was created as the consummation of His creation. This means that there is a purpose to everything, to your life and to your death. Creation is not ticking over like a clock. There is nothing mechanical about the creation; it is personal and purposive, and it is "for a limited time". It began - it ends.

There is a mind behind it. It is not random selection or chance. There is a purpose behind the plan and a conclusion to the matter as well. God is working His purposes out. "My thoughts are not your thoughts, nor my ways your ways, says the Lord". **Isaiah 55:7-9, Jeremiah 29:11-14**.

**GOD BECAME MAN**

John in his Gospel moves from creation to the incarnation; God became Man(Adam). God is involved in the world. He stepped into history. He is not a force such as in Star Wars. God intervenes in your life as a personal God. The unbeliever wants to reject/ignore God and not have Him in their life. You cannot get away from it or around it. If there is no creation there is no significance to the Cross, but if the creator stepped into the creation as a creature, you have the universe altering event.

If evolution is true then the Cross is a lie, and God is not involved in the world. You cannot have Emmanuel and have God solve sins on the Cross, unless this is his created universe. God has been involved since the plan for creation was made, he was involved through prophets and miracles, right the way through the Old Testament. He is involved in the incarnation, the Cross, the Resurrection and Ascension, and in the giving of the Holy Spirit.

Evangelicals who accept evolution lack understanding, for by doing this, they provide an opening to the liberals to enter in. The logic is that if God was not involved in the beginning He is not involved in the end. If you find any Bible College that teaches theistic evolution, you will find one that eventually rejects the virgin birth, the miracles of Christ, the efficacious death of Christ on the Cross, the Second Coming, and the other "fundamentals" of the Christian life.

In **Genesis 1:26-28** - God says, "Let us make man in our own image".

- [a] Man (Adam's) body is included in the image of God. Psalm 139:14.
- [b] To be created in the image of God you have to be a living being.
- [c] Man is able to make decisions so that he can have dominion over the animals of the world
- [d] He was also to have fellowship with God. He is living, determinant, intelligent and moral.

This is another area where you must get it correct. This area is especially important in the free will and Calvinist approach. It is important to understand the implication of the fall. It shows that everything was soured by sin. We are not born an animal, we are still in the image of God but fallen. This is the true doctrine of what God calls the total depravity of man. This does not imply that you are just a depraved animal. If you say that there is nothing good in man you are blaspheming your creator, as there is a lot of good things in us, because God made us.

One of the early heresies of Gnosticism, where they said that your body was totally evil and depraved and that only the spirit you got from God was any good. This is not true, your body-mind is wonderfully made. It speaks of the creator's hand at every part. There is nothing evil about your body, for it was designed by God.

**OLD SIN NATURE**

You received your Old Sin Nature [O.S.N.], courtesy of your ancestor Adam, and you give it strength to rule and abuse you by the bad choices you make. You can use your body for evil but there is nothing evil about your body. The total depravity of man is to show that it is totally impossible for you to save yourself. Your body is wonderfully made. The problem with man is sin.

Adam, when he was created, had capacity for fellowship with God. When he and Eve ate of the fruit in the garden they lost the ability to have fellowship with God. This is why they hid in the garden. In contrast, everybody today is born spiritually dead but physically alive. It is impossible for us to have fellowship with God, as we are born with a sinful nature. We have an Old Sin Nature that comes between us and God, for it is inherited through Adam and is a direct result of the Fall.

Before we were saved we were dead in trespasses and sins. **Ephesians 2:4-16**. This is why the convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit is so important. The Holy Spirit works on the unbeliever and works on the believer convicting them of sin and enables them to respond to it. However, even when the Holy Spirit challenges a person, they can still resist.

Conversion and salvation is getting back what Adam was given at first in the garden. The Second Adam came to win back what the first Adam had lost. If you remove the first three chapters of Genesis you have lost everything, for that is where the scene is set, the sin problem defined, and through the sacrifice provided, salvation is introduced.

**HOW DO PEOPLE GET THEIR SOULS?**

There are three main explanations given through history, [a] the pre-existence of souls [b] the giving of the souls at birth, [c] that the foetus has a soul.

Type [a] is the belief of the Mormons and requires them to have large families so that the pool of souls is absorbed into "believers", rather than the available souls being born into unbelieving households.

Type [b] is proposed by the theologian Hodge, which talks about the creation of a soul, which is given to the child at birth. This allows for Christians to accept abortion.

Type [c] is proposed by theologian Shedd, and is called Traducianism, which states that the human soul is transmitted at the time of conception when the genes come together from the parents.

Type [a] has no biblical basis, but there is no clear definition of which of type [b] or [c] is correct. Where there is no clear position we must be cautious, for good men differ, but there are consequences flowing from these views. For example, If [c] is correct abortion is murder.

The Bible differentiates between the body, soul, and spirit. You are not divided into three things but you are tri-unity; a type of trinity. The body is what the soul moves around in, the soul is the part of you which responds to other members of the human race whilst the spirit relates to God and is only active in the believer. **Hebrews 4:12**.

Man comprises two areas, material and immaterial. As believers we have a new nature, a sinful nature and a body and we are all in the image of God.

The soul can mean the whole person, the immaterial part of a person, either in life or after death. It is nephesh in the Hebrew and psuche in the Greek.

The spirit is ruach in the Hebrew and pneuma in the Greek. This relates it to the air or spirit. It is something that does not belong to this world yet is in it. It does not relate to a whole person.

It is of great importance that the difference between these features are understood and brought out consistently in your teaching.

Other synonyms given for the soul are the heart, the mind, the conscience, the will and flesh. This allows for the analysis of the structure of the soul as the Biblical revelation reveals it. The Bible has a lot to teach on the subject of psychology. Paul uses the words heart and mind when dealing with the soul. Most ministers never touch this area.

## **DOCTRINES**

### **ADAM**

1. SCRIPTURE - Genesis 2:19 - 5:5.

#### **2. BIOGRAPHY**

Adam ("red earth"), the first man, was created about 4000 BC, in the image of God. As the first man, he was created on the sixth day out of the earth from which he received his name. He was placed in the Garden of Eden where food was provided for him without heavy toil. He named all the animals. Finding no companionship in the animal kingdom God formed woman out of a rib of Adam. They lived for an indeterminate period in innocence in the garden where there was only one test of their free will - the tree of the knowledge of 'good and evil'. Eventually the woman, beguiled by the devil utilising the serpent, ate of the fruit of the tree. Adam, having to choose between God and the woman, chose the fallen woman causing sin to enter into mankind. Adam, the woman and the serpent were all judged with penalties being applied to them all.

3. EVALUATION: Genesis 3:1-21.

- a) Satan indwells a beautiful serpent (3:1).
- b) He attempts to show that God is unfair (3:1).
- c) The woman is confused and misconstrues the command of God (3:2-3).
- d) Satan lies to the woman (3:4).
- e) Satan appeals to the woman's pride (3:5).
- f) The woman sins, and having tempted Adam, he disobeys God. (3:6-7).
- g) Their nakedness immediately becomes apparent and they attempt to cover it with fig leaf clothes (3:7).
- h) They attempt to hide from God (3:8).
- i) God makes the first approach of seeking out fallen man (3:9-10).
- j) Man and woman each try to blame others for their sin (3:11-13).
- k) The serpent is judged (3:14).
- l) The first gospel message (3:15).
- m) The woman's penalty (3:16).
- n) The man's penalty (3:17-19).
- o) The man is told he will eventually die (3:19).
- p) God provides man with a coat of skins (3:21).

#### **4. PRINCIPLES**

- a) Satan can use many devices to deceive man (Genesis 3:1; Revelation 20:7-10)
- b) Knowledge of the Bible is essential to combat the wiles of the devil.
- c) Lies and pride are two of the greatest sins (Proverbs 6:16-19).
- d) Other believers who are out of fellowship can cause us to fall into sin (1 Corinthians 5:6).
- e) Human good (using our own works - fig leaves - to cover up sins) is not acceptable to God. The appearance of respectability does not necessarily reflect fellowship with God (Matthew 7:21-23).
- f) God always seeks out those who are lost (Luke 19:10).
- g) Sinful man will blame others or his environment for his condition rather than face his sin (1 Kings 18:17-18).

- h) God always provides grace before judgment (Romans 6:14).
- i) The gospel message is given. Salvation is for mankind, not for animals or Satan (Psalm 49:12; Revelation 20:10).
- j) The penalties on individuals are tailored for the individual. The woman who tried to rule over the man is herself ruled over (Proverbs 24:12).
- k) God provides a blood sacrifice to provide clothes of skin. Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sins (Hebrews 9:22).

**LESSON 38 – MAN – THE FALL**

<b>NO</b>	<b>STUDY</b>	<b>TEXTS</b>	<b>TOPIC BOOK</b>
38	Man – His Fall	1 Corinthians 15:21,22 Romans 5:12-21 1 Timothy 2:14 Genesis 3:1-6, 7-13 Genesis 3:14-24 Ephesians 5:21-29	Human condition Spirituality Old Sin Nature

**INTRODUCTION**

**1 Corinthians 15:21-22** comments on Genesis 1. This is one of the most attacked passages in Scripture almost on a par with the resurrection passages. Genesis 1-3 is being attacked not only in the liberal camp but also in evangelical circles. Many do not consider Genesis 1-11 as history. Some dismiss both Genesis and Exodus as well. We stand by the historicity of the Torah as Moses received it and recorded things from the tablets given to him. The later “editor” was likely Ezra, and any changes he made to the Accadian origin text that Moses forms into early Hebrew, was made into classical Hebrew by Ezra, and we would see as inspired.

**IN THE BEGINNING**

The first verse in the Bible is one of the most attacked portions of Scripture as many forms of false doctrine are refuted by this verse. There are 8 facts stated by this verse which directly rebuke humanistic philosophy.

Scripture Genesis 1: 1, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth..."

1. "In the beginning God" - shows the existence of God - this opposes atheism, the concept that no God exists.
2. "God created" - shows the eternal creator. The creator we know from other passages is Jesus Christ. (Colossians 1: 1 6). - this opposes polytheism, the concept of many gods.
3. He "created the heavens and the earth " - describes the creation of matter from energy which opposes evolution.
4. "God created" - describes the omnipotence or all powerful nature of God which opposes pantheism, the worship of many gods.
5. "God created" - describes the freedom of God and God's will, which opposes fatalism.
6. This verse requires supernatural revelation, for no man was there, which opposes naturalism which states that natural or physical laws are sufficient to explain the universe without divine revelation.

7. This verse appeals to faith which has no human merit and opposes rationalism and empiricism.
8. This verse shows the utter helplessness of man which opposes human works or legalism, and reminds man that he is a limited creature in a temporary space-time creation.

The liberals classify it as a "myth" which is a glimpse of the truth. We however view it as absolutely trustworthy as God the Holy Spirit, the author of Scripture, is totally trustworthy and accurate.

**I Corinthians 15:21** - as in Adam all die so in Christ shall all be made alive. It should be noted here that Paul is referring to Adam as a real person and not a mythical character. He refers to it as an historical event in a similar way to the Cross being such an event. The God of the Bible is the Creator. He created Adam and Eve. He created male and female. The Bible does not accept any "transgender" identity as anything other than confusion, or genetic abnormality that flows from the Fall. We are either "captive to the Book" here, or open to anything. Make your choices clearly and seriously here.

#### **Did God Create Sin?**

1. No. God is not the author of sin or the author of temptation. **James 1:13-15**. It is incompatible with the nature of God for God to create sin which is an application of divine character of God. When man came from God he did not have a sin nature.
2. Man was a free moral agent, he had absolute free will in order to resolve the angelic conflict. The only sin that man could commit originally was negative volition to God's commands.
3. So far as man is concerned, sin came from the outside of man. It originated with Satan who passed it onto man through the one thing they had in common - free will.
4. Just as Satan was a free moral agent, so man was a free moral agent created in innocence. He was neither holy nor sinful.
5. There were two co-existent forces which started civilisation, God and the original man with his free will. They still exist; the sovereignty of God on one hand and the free will of man on the other. The ideal situation is where the sovereignty of God and the free will of man meet - this is at the cross where man bows and accepts God's plan for them.
6. The sovereignty of God bestowed the free will on man to resolve the angelic conflict. Each of us can choose for our self even in contradiction to the will of God.
7. Such a choice which Adam made was contrary to God's will. The emphasis in Genesis 2 is to present from verse 4 to the end of the chapter, the essence of man, the environment, the test of man, and why God rested.

#### **Genesis Chapter 3:1-24**

The first six verses of this chapter deal with a debate about God's Word. This shows that before sin is able to occur the Word of God needs to be stated. Without the Word of God there can be no sin, as sin by definition is a rejection of God's Word.

God is going to judge every man and every woman. By implication every man and every woman will know some of the Word of God in order to be legitimately judged.

In Genesis it is clear that God wanted his creatures to obey Him voluntarily and not be robots. What would man decide to do, what would he choose? The moral character of the man is under test. God allows him to choose.

Speaking to the animals was apparently not unusual in the Garden of Eden. Animals have nowadays the ability to communicate but they cannot speak. However this passage indicates that at some time the animals could speak and it would appear in the Millennial Kingdom when Christ reigns on earth, the animals speak again.

It is noted here that the husband was the one in authority and instructed his wife on the significance of the fruit. This pattern goes right the way through Scripture, **God holding each man responsible** for instructing his right woman.

When God judges, the man receives the greatest judgment because he has the major responsibility. The man is responsible for his wife, and biblically no man can ever blame his wife for any issue, for the Lord holds him responsible for obedience. He, in this case, may not have done his job of teaching fully enough.

We do not know how long Adam and Eve had been in the garden before the fall occurred. They may have been in there many years. It probably had been some time because of their need to name the plants and animals.

The form of the temptation was that they questioned God's Word. Satan's attack was to portray God as being unfair. The basic premise was, that regulations, rules and restrictions are wrong, and isn't God awful for saying "thou shalt not". This is a major push even today by liberals and the like. They do not want to be told by God what they ought to do.

God's motives were also criticized here. Satan says that God is worried about what you might discover if you disobey Him. That is a lie, but to be expected, for Satan is the father of lies. Satan says that, "God is worried that you are going to learn as much as He knows".

This passage under girds all Bible teaching on sin. Sin is disobedience; it is rebellion against God's will. It is man saying to God that man knows best, that he does not need God. Eve rationalizes the situation whereas Adam deliberately chooses. Adam had a choice after Eve fell, knowing God's will he still had to obey God, and that would have meant to pray and intercede for the woman rather than joining her. He should have refused to take the fruit. He however chose to be with her, rather than lead her to God for forgiveness/judgment. Adam didn't want to take the risk of God killing the woman for disobedience, he choose to join her in whatever punishment came. He choose love over obedience to God.

## STAGES IN THE FALL

The attack of Satan is in ten increments.

The **first stage** deals with the Word of God. Sin by definition is violation of the Word. The Word of God was given in verses 15-17 of Chapter 2. In the first eight verses six deal with an argument over a piece of Scripture.

You must have the Word of God declared and known so that you can be held responsible. What about those who have apparently never heard? God is going to judge all men, so they apparently have all heard/seen enough.

Every man and woman must hear sufficient of the Creation itself, or the Word of God so that they can be judged. Sin cannot operate in a revelational vacuum; they know the truth at some level and rebel against it. Satan challenges the woman about what God has said. Satan's claim is an insinuation against the moral character of God. The temptation with sin is to become the absolute moral arbiter rather than obey and cast yourself before God alone. The test was to trust in the moral goodness/forgiveness of God rather than the love of the woman.

The **second stage** involves Eve having to decide if she is going to obey God's Word or not. Eve becomes her own absolute judge. If God's Word meets her specification she will accept it.

In verses 2 and 3 the **third stage** is that of deception. If someone asks you a question you have to ask yourself if this is a question that they should be asking. In this stage Satan says, Has God said this?

The implication is, surely God has not said that, and that there is level of surprise about God doing a thing like that. It is an insinuation against the moral character of God.

In addition the inference is that Eve has the final say as to what is right or not. Man therefore becomes the ultimate judge/arbiter of right/wrong. You do what you want to do, and obey God only when He does what you want Him to do.

The Biblical view is that whatever you do you must be in submission to God. When we think God's standards are not good enough we add our own standards to the Word of God.

Here Satan is speaking with both of them but speaking directly to the woman, showing that he is bypassing the spiritual leadership-responsibility of the man. In verse 3 the woman calls God by the name God rather than Lord God.

It is noted that Satan calls the Lord God by the name God alone. From Genesis 2:4 we have the name Lord God continually mentioned and yet here Eve mirrors the reduction from Lord God to God. It is the removal of the personal relationship that only comes through obedience.

The word Lord means, "I am, I am your true Lord". It was God's way of saying that He with you in the fiery furnace, in the stresses of life. If you can get someone to use your vocabulary you have infiltrated their way of thinking with your own, and that is Satan's trick. Here we have Eve using Satan's vocabulary.

**Stage four** involves the phrase, 'Neither shall ye eat of it lest ye die'. Eve is concentrating on the negative aspect of the law of the Lord. Satan now says that she certainly shall not die. This is a direct denial of Genesis 2:16-17 which represents the only written Scripture at the time.

"You will be as God". This is a proper noun and says that you will be as wise as God. Satan is implying that God does not have your best interest at heart.

**Stage five** is the acquisition of evil wisdom. This is always addressed towards all aspects of our being – for perception is changed by satanic/worldly viewpoint, and that means perception of everything.

From the point of view of the body it is good for food. It is pleasing to the soul being delightful to the eyes, it is tasteful, it is culturally pleasing. Desire to make you wise, it appeals to the arrogant spirit – opposed to humility.

In **Matthew 4:1-10** we have the three temptations of Christ which are also split up into body - stones into bread, soul - the glamour of the world's kingdoms and spirit - doing something spectacular like testing the angels as you cast yourself off the Temple.

In **James 3:13-18**, in speaking of evil wisdom, James says, this is earthly - body, sensual - soul, and Satanic - spirit.

In **1 John 2:15-17** we have the lust of the flesh - body, lust of the eyes - soul, the pride of life - spirit. We should therefore be expected to be tested as a whole person.

**Stage 6** is when the mental attitude sins become overt. Sins become overt only after mental attitude sins have been present for a long time

In **Stage 7**, Eve gives the fruit to her husband who was with her. A study of the writing style of the author of Genesis has shown that he does not use extra words. Here however the man is said to be with her. From the text it is apparent that Adam was standing beside Eve all along, and watched her talk to the serpent. He failed to act early enough to counter the slide into evil/satanic viewpoint (called in the Bible "worldliness"). He is responsible for his actions and failure to act.

This is the gaining of social acceptance. To make it socially acceptable you try and get everyone else to do it. Homosexuals used to have to do their acts in secret. Now that they are able to practice this openly they are trying to get everyone else to do it, or at least accept it as "normal". They are trying to make it socially acceptable, and deny others the right to say it is "biblically wrong". Evil loves to share itself and speak only of positive aspects of their behaviour hiding the nasty and evil nature under pleasant words.

**Stage 8** - They learn that they are naked. This is shame rather than guilt. Shame is orientated to your concerns about the opinions of other people. It appears that at this time there may have been a change in their body metabolism. For the first time there is said to be the cool of the day. Their bodies felt different.

**Stage 9** - They try and cover the problem by means of fig leaves. Cover up is the start of insanity. When one becomes aware of evil one has either to deny it and cover it up, or deal with it by getting back to obedience to the Scriptures. Here they try to create reality according to their own perception, rather than change their perception by facing reality, and so their sin goes deeper within.

**Stage 10** - They heard the noise of the Lord walking in the garden and they hid themselves. This is guilt which is as a result of God consciousness. **Romans 5:12-20** - the cause of death is sin.

In **Romans 7:5-11** we have the doctrine of the Old Sin nature. It is a fruit unto death which comprises human good and personal sins. This is a work of death and apart from the work of the Holy Spirit.

Evil has corrupted the genetic structure from which we are constructed. It is only by means of regeneration that we can be changed. This is done by the Creator through regeneration, for it was He who did the first creation.

Most people have made that choice of Adam and Eve over the centuries. To stand apart from the sin of a loved one is a real test of the strength of character. What are you going to do when the person who is dearest to you is doing something which is opposite to God's will for us? We must be sensitive to what the Lord wants us to do, and we are called to pray for our marriage partner and friends.

As an example we have Moses and the Exodus. Moses stuck with God's will even though it cost him everything that many in the world hold dear. He lost the throne of Egypt, a woman who loved him, wealth beyond measure, and absolute power, yet he found his true destiny. So will we, but only with the Lord's plan for our lives.

The results of the fall were three in number:-

- [a] They lost their ability to have fellowship with God which is shown when they hid from the Lord.
- [b] They lost the joy they had both in Christ and with one another, they lost the innocence and the wonderful peace of mind of a soul which had never known sin or rebellion. They lost it not only for themselves but for future generations.
- [c] From that time on mankind was born in sin. It was transferred biologically and genetically. Every child is born physically alive but spiritually dead with an Old Sin Nature built into his genetic nature. Every one is born now in need of a Saviour.

The Lord asked them why they were hiding and what they had done. No one would accept responsibility for what had happened. God holds you personally responsible. In **1 John 1:9** it says "If we confess our sins", third class condition, we

may or we may not confess our sins. This indicates responsibility and also accountability. This verse also gives certainty – for we certainly will be saved, forgiven, and delivered if we repent and confess our sins.

### **THE JUDGMENTS OF GENESIS 3**

Genesis 3 gives the judgments.

[a] Firstly Satan is told that he will be defeated by the seed of the woman. He was defeated at the temptation and defeated strategically at the Cross/Resurrection as we see in John 12:23-48.

[b] The woman would be in subjection to her own body, yet out of her pain will come joy and will also be under the rulership of the man. Also through the child bearing will come the Saviour - God will become man.

If she is in the right relationship with the Lord and her partner there will be great blessing and joy in that as well. She will have a deeper joy and fulfillment than even the husband will know. There was also the great joy of knowing that the seed of the woman would in due course defeat Satan and solve the sin problem that she started all those years before.

It should be remembered that subjection of the woman begins with **Ephesians 5:18-21** where both partners are subject to the Lord by being filled with the Spirit and thereby being mutually submissive.

The wife can then productively respond to the love of the husband. A woman who enters into a relationship with a man who she cannot respect in every possible way is a foolish woman. If you want to teach marriage in its true perspective you need to anchor the whole thing in the first three chapters of Genesis. If you remove them as myth you have nothing to anchor the rest of the Bible on. The liberals are on shaky foundations because they have thrown their anchor in the first chapters of Genesis away. True Christianity revolves around the historicity of the Scriptures.

[c] The man would have to work for his food and the ground would be less productive. Due to sin all people descended from Adam would eventually die. Death enters the world due to sin – Man/Adam was not made to die. He and his wife are driven out of the garden, losing the joy that was there.

### **IMPUTATION AND THE FALL**

There are three imputations; the sin of Adam, the righteousness of God, and the sin of man. Imputation is where something is taken, “as if you have done it”. The sin of man was given or imputed to Christ and he paid the price for it. He did not earn or deserve the sin. We did not earn or deserve the sin of Adam but we got it. Those who believe in Him will have the righteousness of Christ imputed to them, which is not deserved either.

In the case of Adam and Eve they received the coats of skins which represented the sacrifice of an innocent victim. At the east end of Eden there were Cherubim with flaming swords who protected the way into the garden. It was here that they sacrificed. Adam and Eve were therefore covered by the blood shed for them which is a picture of the Cross which will come later. The shape of the later Ark of the Covenant, with the two cherubim over the mercy seat would refer back to this time in the garden where the two angels overlooked the first altar of mankind.

You cannot have a mythical figure imputing anything. God has done something in history and that is seen to be real. It is also significant in the case of the sacrifice for Adam and Eve, that it was the Lord Jesus Christ who killed the animal. He in due course is going to go to the Cross and shed His own blood.

Although unsaved people contend that they are not responsible for Adam's sin the Divine revelation stands, that because of the far reaching effect of the representation of Adam as the head of the human race, Adam's original sin is immediately and directly imputed to each member of the human race with the unvarying sentence of death resting upon them.

Likewise by the fall of Adam the effect of one initial sin is transmitted in the sinful nature (OSN) immediately by inheritance from father to son in all generations. The imputation of sin is universal as is the offer of salvation.

If Adam did not exist you could not say that Jesus died for the sins of the whole world. The Bible says we need a Saviour because of what happened back there. He was put under the curse so that you and I could be put under blessing in grace. The Bible indicates that the OSN is inherited from the father not the mother.

### **DOCTRINES**

#### **HUMAN CONDITION: NATURAL, CARNAL, SPIRITUAL**

In the Bible the Human Race is divided in three Categories:-

1. Natural Man



A person born physically alive, but not regenerated. He may be highly sophisticated, civilised, gentle and kind, but is completely ignorant of any spiritual phenomena. (1 Corinthians 2:14) Equivalent to the cold person in the church in Laodicea.

**2. Carnal Man**

A person regenerated or born again but living his life under the power of his old sin nature. Prolonged activity in this area produces a Christian who is still a baby. (1 Corinthians 3:1-4) Equivalent to the lukewarm person in the church of Laodicea.

**3. Spiritual Man**

A person regenerated and living generally in the power of the Holy Spirit. He discerns the difference between the things of God and man. (1 Corinthians 2:11-13) He has fellowship with God in his daily life. (Ephesians 5:18-20) Equivalent to the hot person in the church of Laodicea.

**SPIRITUALITY [See page 31 above]**

**OLD SIN NATURE**

1. We are born with a nature, inherited from Adam, which is against God and prone to sin (Ephesians 2:1, Romans 5:12).
2. The old sin nature is perpetuated in the human race by physical birth (Psalm 51:5, 1 Timothy 2:13, 14).
3. We are therefore considered spiritually dead at the point of physical birth (Romans 5:12).
4. Names for the old sin nature:
  - a) Flesh - Galatians 5:16
  - b) Old Man - Ephesians 4:22, Colossians 3:9
  - c) Carnal - Romans 7:14
  - d) Sin - Romans 5:12
  - e) Heart - Jeremiah 17:9
  - f) Member - Colossians 3:5.
5. The believer continues to have an old sin nature after salvation (1 John 1:8, 1 Corinthians 3:1).
6. The believer under the control of the old sin nature is called carnal (Romans 7:14, 1 Corinthians 3:1-3).
7. The old sin nature frustrates true production of the Christian life (Romans 7:15).
8. The old sin nature has two tendencies (Romans 6:6)
  - a) Area of weakness - pushes us towards lawlessness and sins (Hebrews 12:1)
  - b) Area of strength - pushes us towards asceticism and self-righteousness (Isaiah 64:6).
9. The old sin nature is not found in the resurrection body (1 Corinthians 15:56, Philippians 3:21, 1 Thessalonians 5:23).
10. Victory over the old sin nature is by achieved by considering your old life dead, surrendering to God, confessing sin and relying upon the filling of the Spirit (Romans 6:6,11, Colossians 3:9-10).

**THE FRUIT OF THE OLD SIN NATURE**

1. The fruit of the old sin nature falls under four categories:

- a) Sensual
- b) Religious
- c) Social
- d) Personal

**2. SENSUAL**

- a) fornication – porneia – illicit sexual activity or any sexual activity other than with your partner.
- b) uncleanness - akatharsia - all acts of indecency and uncleanness that shock people, this includes abnormal sexual acts

c) lasciviousness - aselgeia - unrestrained lust - people who are having sex for their own personal gratification, treating other people as sexual objects for their pleasure. Paul recognises that we are tempted in all these areas. Matthew points out that it is not only the doing of these acts but the thinking of these acts which are sins.

### 3. RELIGIOUS

a) idolatry - eidoltria - worship of things other than God

b) witchcraft - pharmakeia - this involved magic, astrology, séances and sorcery.

c) hatred - echtros - this is unrestrained rage without a reason. You get so angry that no one can talk to you at all.

iv) strife - eris - contentiousness - this is argumentation in regard to Bible teaching and spiritual matters.

### 4. SOCIAL

a) jealousy - zelos - a bitter hatred towards another person who has something that you want. This is the father of all the other sins.

b) wrath - thermos - this is getting hot headed or flaring up. If the person does not control the power of a hot temper they are under the power of the old sin nature and not the Holy Spirit. If you get this type of trouble at a church meeting you turn to the Word of God.

c) seditions - - this is faction forming

d) heresies - this is one step forward from seditions and is a person who wishes to build on the factions. An example would be the KJV group. By separating on the basis of the KJV alone you have fallen into far more evil than is present in variations in the versions.

e) evil - this is tied into jealousy eating away at the souls of people who harbour resentment.

### 5. PERSONAL

a) drunkenness - methai - drinking alcohol to excess is not a sickness it is a sin. It is an inherited weakness, if your father is an alcoholic you should not touch alcohol at all because it is a weakness in the family. Avoid places where you could be tempted. If you have a weakness towards alcoholism you must deal with it.

b) revellings - jomoi - which means hell raising, a person who cannot bear silence but has to be drowned in noise all the time. Their life is empty and has no purpose but as long as they party vigorously and run from function to function they do not have to worry about their sin and the pointlessness of their life. When you are tempted to sin think about the Lord. Paul now adds and such like which means that if he has not hit their particular weakness they should fill in the blanks.

6. We all have weaknesses and unless you are on guard you fall every time. You have to ascertain your weakness and set your guard against it. God's way is to walk in the Spirit that is the way to deal with it.

**DOCTRINE INDEX**

<b>DOCTRINE</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
ADAM	160
ANGELS	124
ANGEL OF JEHOVAH	43
ANGELIC CONFLICT	130
ATONEMENT – UNLIMITED ATONEMENT	68
BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT	103
BLOOD SACRIFICE	65
BIBLE: CANONICITY	28
BIBLE AND BELIEVER	6
CHARACTER OF GOD	46
CHRIST – ASCENSION AND SESSION	78
CHRIST – DEITY	55
CHRIST – FIRSTBORN	59
CHRIST – FIRST AND SECOND ADVENT	85
CHRIST – PROPHET, PRIEST, KING	66
CHRIST – THE ROCK	78
CHRIST – TESTIMONIES ABOUT JESUS CHRIST	59
CHRISTIAN SOLDIER	138
CONSECRATION	25
COVENANTS	120
CREATION	155
CROSS AND SATAN	69
CRUCIFIED WITH CHRIST	69
DEMONS	150
DISPENSATIONS	113
FATHERHOOD OF GOD	51
FUNDAMENTALISM	39
GIFTS – SPIRITUAL GIFTS	111
GOD CARES FOR YOU	49
GREEK GRAMMAR	30
GUIDANCE: THE WILL OF GOD	110
HEATHENISM AND GOD CONSCIOUSNESS	37
HEBREW GRAMMAR	30
HOLY SPIRIT – COMFORTER	111
HOLY SPIRIT – DEITY	89
HOLY SPIRIT – FILLING	107
HOLY SPIRIT – MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT	89
HOLY SPIRIT MINISTRY TO CHRIST	91
HOLY SPIRIT – MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT	95
HOLY SPIRIT – SINS AGAINST	92
HOLY SPIRIT – SYMBOLS OF	90
HOLY SPIRIT – TEACHER	10
HUMAN CONDITION: NATURAL, CARNAL, SPIRITUAL	166
HUMILITY	33
HYPOSTATIC UNION OF CHRIST	54
I AM	54
IGNORANCE	31
IMMORTALITY	74

IN CHRIST	103
INDWELLING OF CHRIST	101
INERRANCY	19
INSPIRATION	15
INSPIRATION: FULFILLED PROPHECY PROOF OF INSPIRATION	21
INTERPRETATION	25
JUDGMENT GREAT WHITE THRONE	86
JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST	86
KENOSIS OF CHRIST	65
KNOWLEDGE OF GOD'S WORD	15
LAMB	9
LIFE OF CHRIST	64
MATURITY	10
MATURITY – CROSS TO THE CROWN	10
MEDIATORSHIP	73
MIRACLES AND GOD'S CHARACTER	48
NAMES AND TITLES OF GOD	42
OLD SIN NATURE	167
PHILOSOPHY	5
POWER	34
RAPTURE	82
REGENERATION – BORN AGAIN	97
RELIGION	142
RESURRECTION	73
REVELATION	38
SATAN	134
SATAN'S DESTINY	142
SATAN'S STRATEGY	145
SATAN'S WORK	146
SATANIC ATTACK	135
SCIENCE AND THE BIBLE	152
SCIENCE AND CREATION	154
SEAL	101
SECOND ADVENT	87
SHEKINAH GLORY	51
SPIRITUALITY	33
TRIBULATION OR TIME OF JACOB'S TROUBLE	86
TRINITY	43
TRINITY IN THE NAMES OF GOD	40
VIRGIN BIRTH	58